INTRODUCTION

ABOUT DESTINY

Our destiny lies above us, in the stars.

From beyond our tiny pale blue dot in the night sky, the Traveler came to us, lifted us. We reached out across the solar system and beyond.

We built cities on Venus, Mars, and beyond; we explored the depths of the planets and the edges of our solar horizon. The brightest Golden Age of our species' history, we learned so much, we saw so much. But we were not alone. The Traveler did not come to us unnoticed.

Something pursued the Traveler, a vast and terrible Darkness. It found the Traveler. It found us.

Our civilization was ruined, cast down. Humanity was nearly extinguished. The Traveler gave everything to stop the Darkness, to cast it back into the yawning black spaces between the stars. We did not perish. But we lost so much. And the Traveler fell silent, floating above our last city.

Fragments of the Traveler's Light, Ghosts of its former glory awakened, sought out those among us who could protect us, defend us, and give us hope for the future.

They are Guardians. You are a Guardian.

Rise, Guardian, and look up. To the stars.

Our destiny awaits.

FIELD MANUAL

WELCOME TO DESTINY

Welcome to Destiny.

This guide is meant to be a companion, so you can dig a little deeper into the universe of Destiny. We prepared this book working alongside Bungie. We asked, and asked, and asked, and they answered (and then some).

The volume you hold provides advice on every facet of the game, whether PvE or PvP. We go through every mission on every planet, we cover all of the foes of humanity you will encounter, and we examine all the weapons, powers, and abilities that make up the Classes. If you simply want a broad overview of the game and its systems, read through this chapter, the Field Manual. This is also the place to look for information on each of the three Classes and all of their abilities.

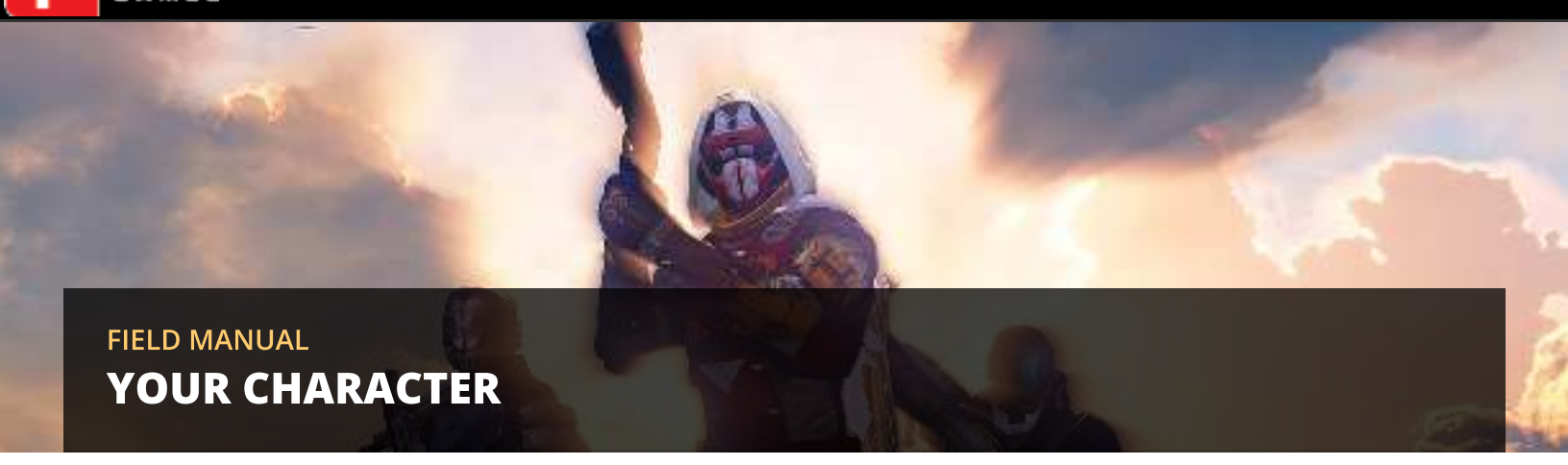
The walkthroughs were written as spoiler-free guided tours of the solar system and its PvE content, but if you really don't want to know anything before you see it with your own eyes for the first time, skip the walkthroughs and the Codex chapters and come back when you're ready.

The Codex contains information about all of the foes you encounter in the missions across the planets.

The Armory is where to go when you're ready to really dig into the systems behind Destiny's weapons. This guide shows how every gun in the entire game is built from scratch, and all of the possible combinations of weapons you can find out there are discussed.

Finally, the Crucible is where to head for information about battling and training with your fellow Guardians in PvP.

Enjoy Destiny, explore it, talk about it. And look to the future, because this is just the beginning…



FIELD MANUAL

YOUR CHARACTER

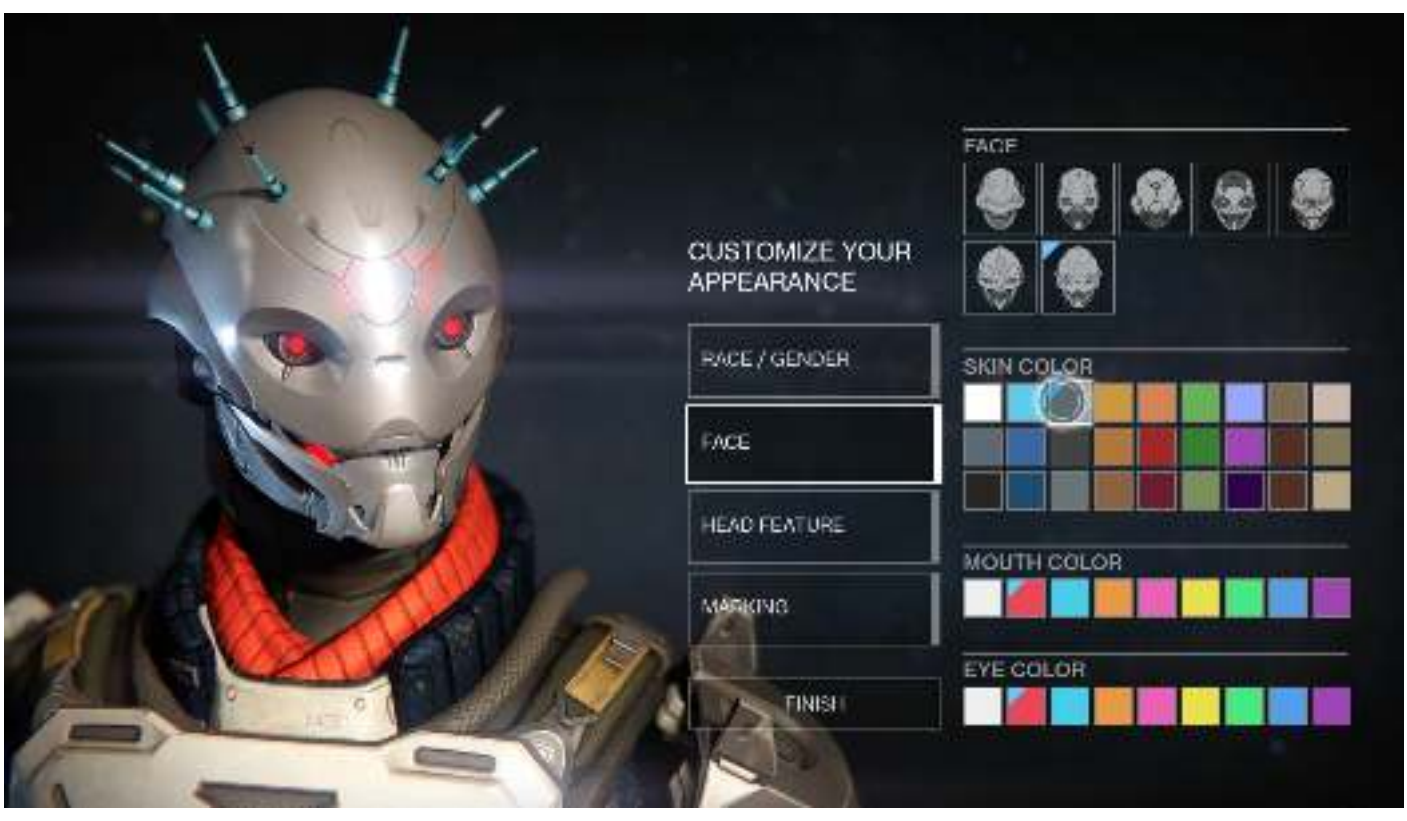
In Destiny, you will forge a legend, the tale of your deeds. You will explore the solar system, finding lost and forgotten secrets.

You are not alone, because other Guardians fight beside you. In the Tower, at the edge of the City, the Vanguard seeks to reclaim what was lost, to protect the City, and to push back the Darkness that remains on the planets.

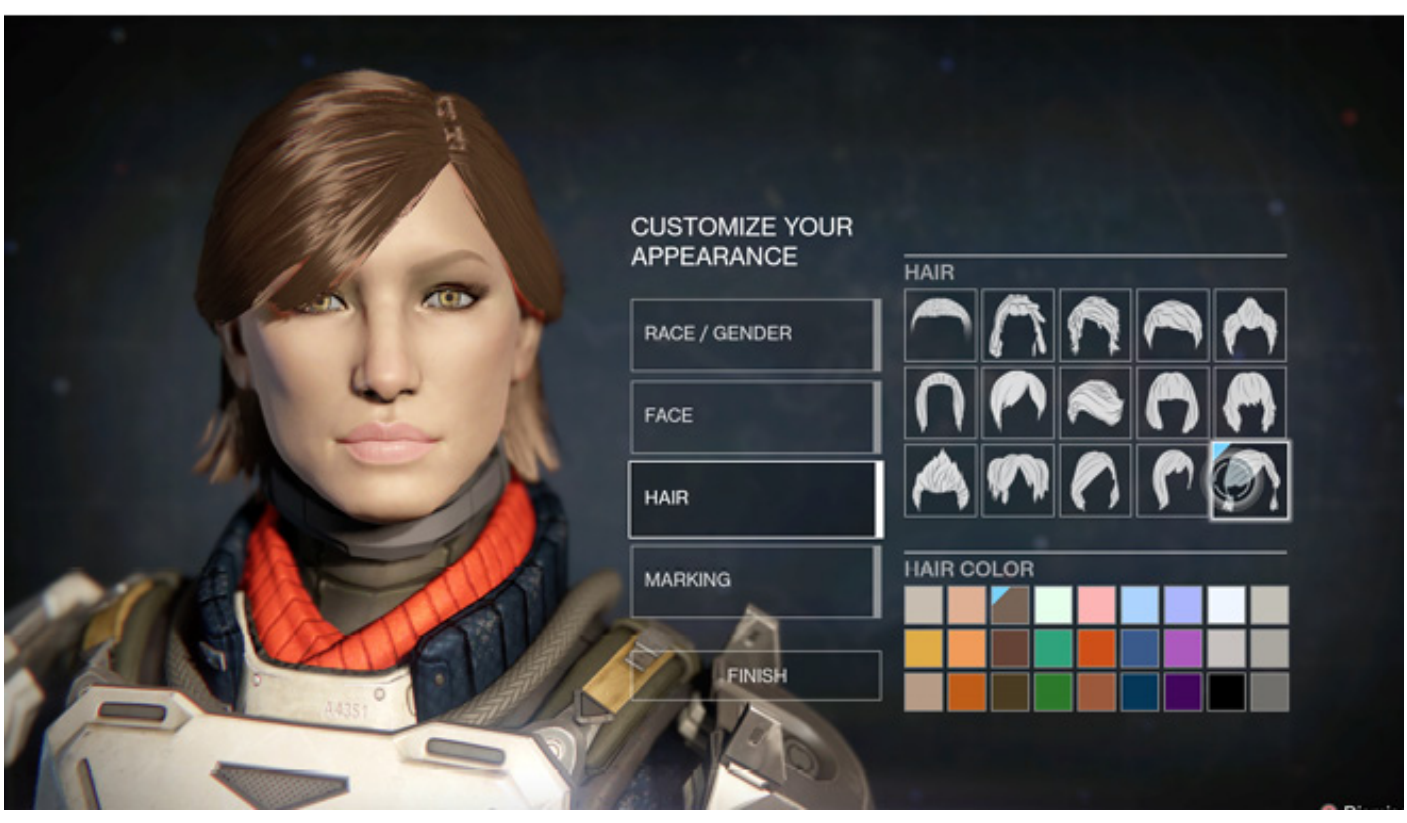
However, before you go anywhere, you must decide who and what you are. Are you a mighty Titan, the foremost bastions of humanity's defense? Are you a wise Warlock, the brightest, sharpest among us? Or are you a nimble Hunter, a roamer, a seeker, a trailblazer?

Your **Class** defines what you can do in Destiny, the armor you wear, and the abilities you can use.

RACES

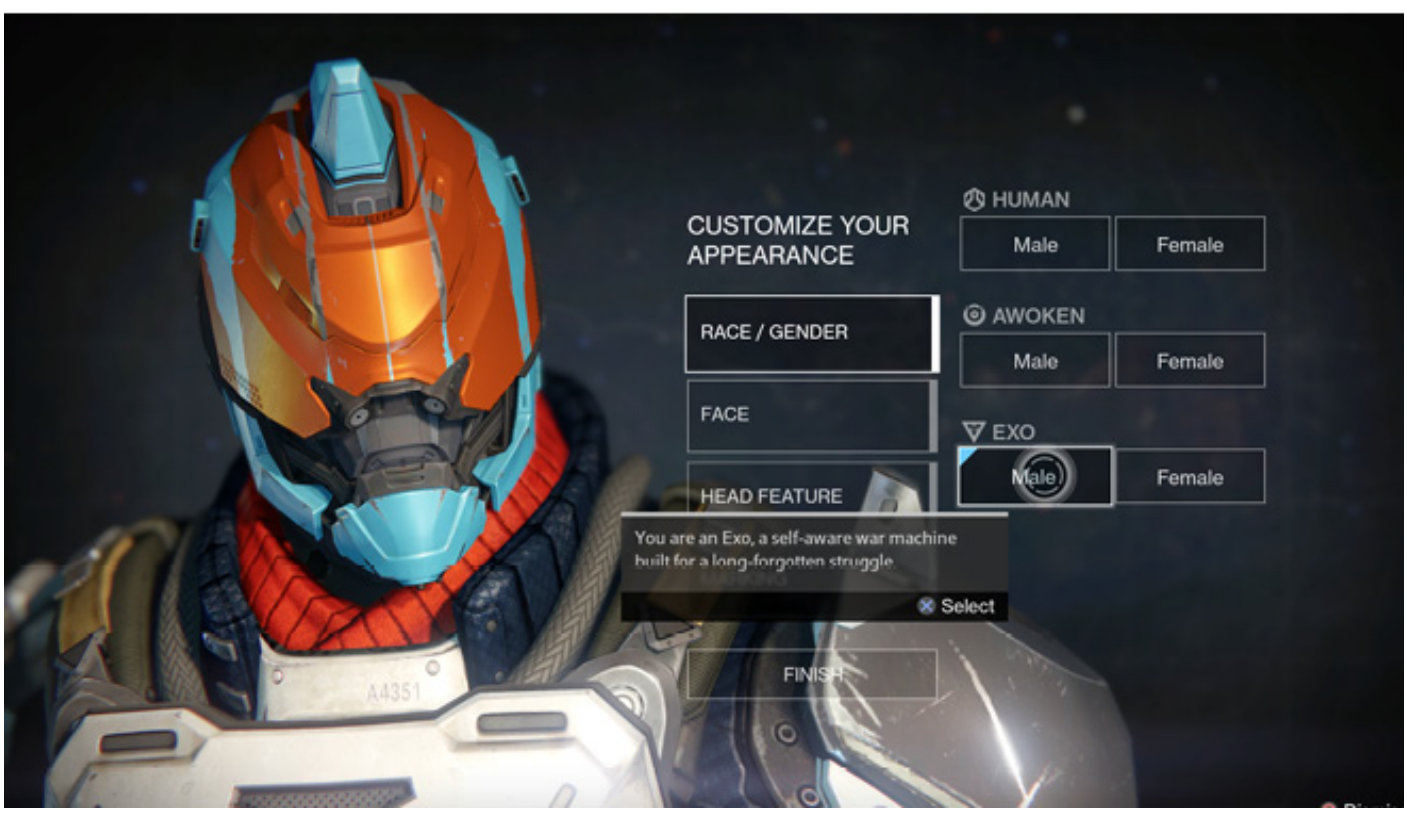


Your race (and your gender) have no impact on your performance, so choose who you want to be in the online world of Destiny.



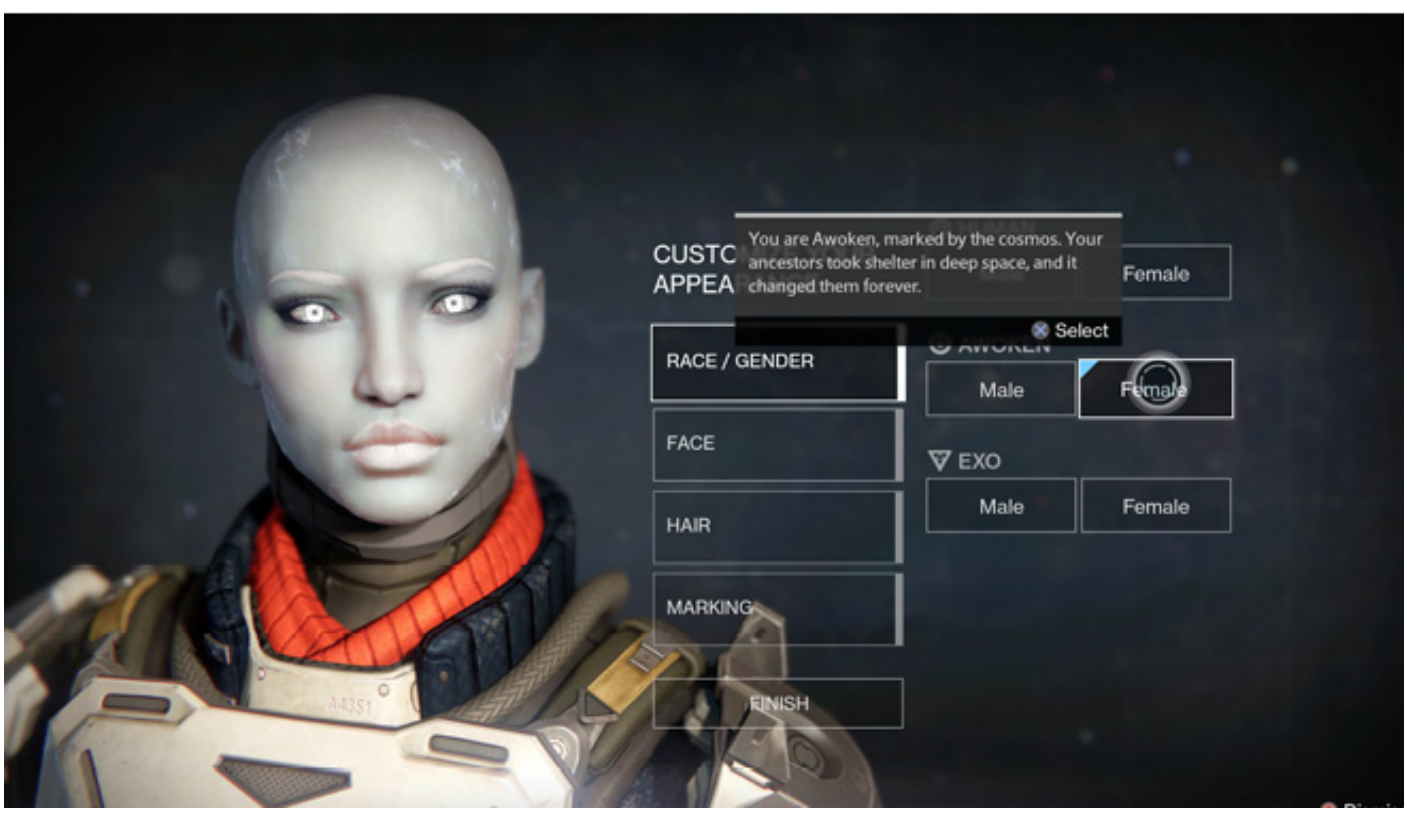
HUMAN

Survivors of the dark ages after the collapse, the remaining humans are tough and resilient, determined to retake the solar system from the enemies of humanity.



EXO

War machines from another age, the Exos were built in humanity's image. These synthetic intelligences are each as individual as the humans who created them.



AWOKEN

Not all of humanity remained on Earth during the collapse. Some fled out into deep black space. And something changed them. Now, many live in the distant Reef, but others call the Earth their home again.

Titan

Titan is a Strength hero introduced in Crystal Clash.

Titan is a big, slow, tanky Strength hero who can use his own body as a weapon to crush his enemies. He can also summon Titan Fists to help him fight.

Titan has a Strength gain of 3.5 and a base armor of 2.

Strength

Titan Fist

Titan summons a Titan Fist to the target location, dealing damage to enemies in the area. Titan can control the Titan Fist to move it around and attack enemies.

Titan Fist has 1000 health and 20 armor. It deals 100 damage per attack and has an attack range of 150. It can move at 300 speed.

Titan Fist lasts for 10 seconds.

Titan Fist has a cooldown of 15 seconds.

Titan Fist costs 100 mana.

Titan Fist can be upgraded with Titan Fist Upgrade.

Titan Fist Upgrade

Titan Fist gains 500 health and 10 armor.

Titan Fist deals 50 more damage per attack.

Titan Fist lasts for 5 more seconds.

Titan Fist has a cooldown of 10 seconds.

Titan Fist costs 50 more mana.

Agility

Titan Fist Slam

Titan Fist slams the ground, dealing damage to enemies in the area.

Titan Fist Slam has a cooldown of 10 seconds.

Titan Fist Slam costs 50 mana.

Titan Fist Slam can be upgraded with Titan Fist Slam Upgrade.

Titan Fist Slam Upgrade

Titan Fist Slam deals 50 more damage.

Titan Fist Slam has a cooldown of 5 seconds.

Titan Fist Slam costs 25 more mana.

Intelligence

Titan Fist Shield

Titan Fist gains a shield that blocks damage.

Titan Fist Shield has a cooldown of 15 seconds.

Titan Fist Shield costs 75 mana.

Titan Fist Shield can be upgraded with Titan Fist Shield Upgrade.

Titan Fist Shield Upgrade

Titan Fist Shield blocks more damage.

Titan Fist Shield has a cooldown of 10 seconds.

Titan Fist Shield costs 50 more mana.

Ability Modifiers

Titan

Hardening

Titan gains 10 armor.

Strength Gain

Titan gains 0.5 more Strength.

Damage

Titan deals 10 more damage.

Titan Fist

Titan Fist gains 100 health and 5 armor.

Titan Fist deals 10 more damage per attack.

Titan Fist lasts for 2 more seconds.

Titan Fist has a cooldown of 2 seconds.

Titan Fist costs 10 more mana.

Titan Fist Upgrade

Titan Fist Upgrade gains 100 more health and 5 more armor.

Titan Fist Upgrade deals 10 more damage per attack.

Titan Fist Upgrade lasts for 2 more seconds.

Titan Fist Upgrade has a cooldown of 2 seconds.

Titan Fist Upgrade costs 10 more mana.

Titan Fist Slam

Titan Fist Slam deals 10 more damage.

Titan Fist Slam has a cooldown of 2 seconds.

Titan Fist Slam costs 10 more mana.

Titan Fist Slam Upgrade

Titan Fist Slam Upgrade deals 10 more damage.

Titan Fist Slam Upgrade has a cooldown of 2 seconds.

Titan Fist Slam Upgrade costs 10 more mana.

Titan Fist Shield

Titan Fist Shield blocks more damage.

Titan Fist Shield has a cooldown of 2 seconds.

Titan Fist Shield costs 10 more mana.

Titan Fist Shield Upgrade

Titan Fist Shield Upgrade blocks more damage.

Titan Fist Shield Upgrade has a cooldown of 2 seconds.

Titan Fist Shield Upgrade costs 10 more mana.

Passives

Titan Tier 1

Titan gains 1 more Strength.

Titan Tier 2

Titan gains 2 more Strength.

Titan Tier 3

Titan gains 3 more Strength.

Titan Tier 4

Titan gains 4 more Strength.

Titan Tier

Author: Kaiser

Hello and welcome to my Guide on Ironclad Warfare. This is my first guide, and I will attempt to make it as informative as possible.

Ironclad Warfare is a game that I have been playing for a while now. I have always had an interest in Ironclads and naval warfare, and this game has been a great way to learn about them.

I will be going over all the basics, but please feel free to ask me if you have any questions.

Table of Contents

Introduction
Basic Controls
Movement
Weapons
Ammunition
Damage
Repairs
Crew
Upgrades
Tactics
Conclusion

Introduction

Ironclad Warfare is a naval warfare game developed by Fat Dragon. It was released on Steam Early Access on 15th December 2017, and is currently in version 1.0.0.1.

The game is set in the late 19th century, during the height of the Ironclad era. You will be able to command a variety of historical ships, from small gunboats to massive battleships.

The game features both single-player and multiplayer modes. In single-player, you can play through a campaign or a series of historical battles. In multiplayer, you can compete against other players in a variety of game modes.

Ironclad Warfare is a challenging game, but it is also very rewarding. There is a lot to learn, but once you get the hang of it, it is very satisfying to command your own fleet of Ironclads.

Basic Controls

Ironclad Warfare can be played with a keyboard and mouse, or with a gamepad. The default controls are as follows:

- **Movement:** WASD or left analog stick
- **Camera:** Mouse or right analog stick
- **Zoom:** Mouse wheel or left and right triggers
- **Select:** Left mouse button or A button
- **Deselect:** Right mouse button or B button
- **Fire:** Left mouse button or right trigger
- **Change ammunition:** Q and E or left and right bumpers
- **Repair:** R or X button
- **Pause:** Escape or Start button

You can also customize the controls to your liking in the options menu.

Movement

Your ship can be moved by using the movement controls. You can also use the mouse to click on the map to set a destination for your ship.

The speed of your ship will depend on its size and weight. Smaller ships will be faster than larger ships.

You can also use the rudder to turn your ship. The rudder will be more effective at higher speeds.

Weapons

Your ship will be armed with a variety of weapons. These weapons can be used to attack enemy ships.

The most common weapons are guns. Guns can be loaded with different types of ammunition, which will be discussed in the next section.

You can also use torpedoes to attack enemy ships. Torpedoes are launched from torpedo tubes and will travel underwater until they reach their target.

Ammunition

There are a variety of different types of ammunition that you can use in your guns. The most common types are:

- **Shot:** Shot is a solid projectile that is used to damage the hull of enemy ships.
- **Shell:** Shell is a hollow projectile that is filled with explosives. It is used to damage the hull and superstructure of enemy ships.
- **Chain shot:** Chain shot is two projectiles connected by a chain. It is used to damage the rigging of enemy ships.
- **Grape shot:** Grape shot is a cluster of small projectiles. It is used to damage the crew of enemy ships.

You can switch between different types of ammunition by using the Q and E keys or the left and right bumpers on your gamepad.

Damage

Your ship can be damaged by enemy fire. The amount of damage that your ship takes will depend on the type of weapon that is used and the distance between the two ships.

If your ship takes too much damage, it will start to sink. You can repair your ship by using the repair controls.

Repairs

You can repair your ship by using the repair controls. You will need to have a repair crew on board your ship in order to do this.

The repair crew will automatically repair any damage that your ship takes. You can also manually repair your ship by clicking on the damaged areas.

Crew

Your ship will be crewed by a number of sailors. The crew is responsible for operating the ship and its weapons.

You can assign crew members to different tasks, such as gunnery, repair, and navigation. You can also promote crew members to improve their skills.

Upgrades

You can upgrade your ship by using the upgrade controls. You will need to have enough money in order to do this.

There are a variety of different upgrades that you can purchase, such as new guns, armor, and engines.

Tactics

There are a number of different tactics that you can use in Ironclad Warfare. Some of the most common tactics are:

- **Broadside:** This is the most common tactic. It involves sailing your ship parallel to the enemy ship and firing all of your guns at once.
- **Crossing the T:** This tactic involves sailing your ship in front of the enemy ship and firing your guns as they pass by.
- **Ramming:** This tactic involves sailing your ship directly into the enemy ship. It is a risky tactic, but it can be very effective.

You can also use a combination of different tactics to create your own unique strategy.

Conclusion

Ironclad Warfare is a challenging but rewarding game. There is a lot to learn, but once you get the hang of it, it is very satisfying to command your own fleet of Ironclads.

I hope that this guide has been helpful. If you have any questions, please feel free to ask me.

Thank you for reading!

Ship Classes

Ironclads

Ironclads are the most powerful ships in the game. They are heavily armored and armed with large guns. They are also very slow and expensive to build.

Ironclads are best used in fleet battles, where their firepower can be used to its full potential. They can also be used to bombard enemy coastal fortifications.

Armored Steam Frigate

Armored steam frigates are a cheaper alternative to ironclads. They are not as heavily armored or armed, but they are faster and more maneuverable.

Armored steam frigates are best used for scouting and raiding. They can also be used to escort ironclads in fleet battles.

Steam Sloop

Steam sloops are small, fast ships that are armed with a few guns. They are not very powerful, but they are very cheap to build.

Steam sloops are best used for scouting and raiding. They can also be used to patrol coastal waters.

Paddle Steamer

Paddle steamers are a type of steam sloop that is powered by paddle wheels instead of propellers. They are slower than propeller-driven steam sloops, but they are more maneuverable in shallow water.

Paddle steamers are best used for scouting and raiding in shallow water. They can also be used to patrol coastal waters.

Torpedo Boat

Torpedo boats are small, fast ships that are armed with torpedoes. They are very dangerous to larger ships, but they are very vulnerable to gunfire.

Torpedo boats are best used for attacking enemy ships in harbor or in narrow waterways. They can also be used to defend coastal waters from enemy torpedo boats.

Submarine

Submarines are the stealthiest ships in the game. They can submerge and travel underwater, making them very difficult to detect.

Submarines are best used for scouting and raiding. They can also be used to attack enemy ships from ambush.

Coastal Battleship

Coastal battleships are the most powerful ships in the game. They are heavily armored and armed with large guns. They are also very slow and expensive to build.

Coastal battleships are best used in fleet battles, where their firepower can be used to its full potential. They can also be used to bombard enemy coastal fortifications.

Armored Cruiser

Armored cruisers are a cheaper alternative to coastal battleships. They are not as heavily armored or armed, but they are faster and more maneuverable.

Armored cruisers are best used for scouting and raiding. They can also be used to escort coastal battleships in fleet battles.

Unarmored Cruiser

Unarmored cruisers are small, fast ships that are armed with a few guns. They are not very powerful, but they are very cheap to build.

Unarmored cruisers are best used for scouting and raiding. They can also be used to patrol coastal waters.

Gunboat

Gunboats are small, shallow-draft ships that are armed with a few guns. They are not very powerful, but they are very cheap to build.

Gunboats are best used for patrolling coastal waters and rivers. They can also be used to escort larger ships in fleet battles.

Monitor

Monitors are small, shallow-draft ships that are armed with a few guns. They are not very powerful, but they are very cheap to build.

Monitors are best used for patrolling coastal waters and rivers. They can also be used to escort larger ships in fleet battles.

Armored Gunboat

Armored gunboats are a cheaper alternative to monitors. They are not as heavily armored or armed, but they are faster and more maneuverable.

Armored gunboats are best used for patrolling coastal waters and rivers. They can also be used to escort larger ships in fleet battles.

Unarmored Gunboat

Unarmored gunboats are small, shallow-draft ships that are armed with a few guns. They are not very powerful, but they are very cheap to build.

Unarmored gunboats are best used for patrolling coastal waters and rivers. They can also be used to escort larger ships in fleet battles.

Weapons

Guns

Guns are the most common weapon in the game. They are used to fire projectiles at enemy ships.

There are a variety of different guns in the game, each with its own strengths and weaknesses. Some guns are more powerful than others, but they are also more expensive to build.

Cannon

Cannons are the most powerful guns in the game. They are heavy and slow to reload, but they can deal a lot of damage.

Cannons are best used against large ships. They can also be used to bombard enemy coastal fortifications.

Howitzer

Howitzers are a type of cannon that is designed to fire shells at a high angle. They are not very accurate, but they can deal a lot of damage.

Howitzers are best used against large ships. They can also be used to bombard enemy coastal fortifications.

Rifled Gun

Rifled guns are a type of gun that has spiral grooves in the barrel. These grooves cause the projectile to spin, which makes it more accurate.

Rifled guns are best used against small ships. They can also be used to attack enemy ships from a distance.

Smoothbore Gun

Smoothbore guns are a type of gun that does not have spiral grooves in the barrel. This makes them less accurate than rifled guns, but they can fire more projectiles in a shorter amount of time.

Smoothbore guns are best used against large ships. They can also be used to attack enemy ships from a distance.

Carronade

Carronades are a type of gun that is designed to fire shells at a low angle. They are very accurate, but they can only fire a few projectiles before they need to be reloaded.

Carronades are best used against small ships. They can also be used to attack enemy ships from a distance.

Torpedo

Torpedoes are underwater projectiles that are launched from torpedo tubes. They are very dangerous to larger ships, but they are very vulnerable to gunfire.

Torpedoes are best used for attacking enemy ships in harbor or in narrow waterways. They can also be used to defend coastal waters from enemy torpedo boats.

Torpedo Tube

Torpedo tubes are the launchers for torpedoes. They are mounted on the deck of ships and can be aimed in different directions.

Torpedo tubes are best used for attacking enemy ships in harbor or in narrow waterways. They can also be used to defend coastal waters from enemy torpedo boats.

Anti-Torpedo Net

Anti-torpedo nets are a defensive weapon that can be used to protect ships from torpedoes. They are deployed in the water around the ship and can stop torpedoes from reaching their target.

Anti-torpedo nets are best used for protecting ships in harbor or in narrow waterways. They can also be used to defend coastal waters from enemy torpedo boats.

Ammunition

There are a variety of different types of ammunition that you can use in your guns. The most common types are:

- **Shot:** Shot is a solid projectile that is used to damage the hull of enemy ships.
- **Shell:** Shell is a hollow projectile that is filled with explosives. It is used to damage the hull and superstructure of enemy ships.
- **Chain shot:** Chain shot is two projectiles connected by a chain. It is used to damage the rigging of enemy ships.
- **Grape shot:** Grape shot is a cluster of small projectiles. It is used to damage the crew of enemy ships.

You can switch between different types of ammunition by using the Q and E keys or the left and right bumpers on your gamepad.

Solid Shot

Solid shot is the most common type of ammunition. It is used to damage the hull of enemy ships.

Solid shot is best used against large ships. It can also be used to bombard enemy coastal fortifications.

Explosive Shell

Explosive shell is a type of ammunition that is filled with explosives. It is used to damage the hull and superstructure of enemy ships.

Explosive shell is best used against large ships. It can also be used to bombard enemy coastal fortifications.

Chain Shot

Chain shot is two projectiles connected by a chain. It is used to damage the rigging of enemy ships.

Chain shot is best used against small ships. It can also be used to attack enemy ships from a distance.

Grape Shot

Grape shot is a cluster of small projectiles. It is used to damage the crew of enemy ships.

Grape shot is best used against small ships. It can also be used to attack enemy ships from a distance.

Canister Shot

Canister shot is a type of ammunition that is filled with small projectiles. It is used to damage the crew of enemy ships.

Canister shot is best used against small ships. It can also be used to attack enemy ships from a distance.

Incendiary Shell

Incendiary shell is a type of ammunition that is filled with flammable liquid. It is used to set fire to enemy ships.

Incendiary shell is best used against wooden ships. It can also be used to bombard enemy coastal fortifications.

Damage

Your ship can be damaged by enemy fire. The amount of damage that your ship takes will depend on the type of weapon that is used and the distance between the two ships.

If your ship takes too much damage, it will start to sink. You can repair your ship by using the repair controls.

Hull Damage

Hull damage is the most common type of damage. It is caused by enemy projectiles hitting the hull of your ship.

Hull damage can be repaired by using the repair controls. You will need to have a repair crew on board your ship in order to do this.

Fire

Fire is a type of damage that is caused by incendiary ammunition. It can spread quickly and can cause a lot of damage.

Fire can be extinguished by using the repair controls. You will need to have a repair crew on board your ship in order to do this.

Flooding

Flooding is a type of damage that is caused by enemy projectiles hitting the hull of your ship below the waterline.

Flooding can be repaired by using the repair controls. You will need to have a repair crew on board your ship in order to do this.

Rigging Damage

Rigging damage is a type of damage that is caused by enemy projectiles hitting the rigging of your ship.

Rigging damage can be repaired by using the repair controls. You will need to have a repair crew on board your ship in order to do this.

Crew Casualties

Crew casualties are a type of damage that is caused by enemy projectiles hitting the crew of your ship.

Crew casualties can be reduced by using the repair controls. You will need to have a repair crew on board your ship in order to do this.

Repairs

You can repair your ship by using the repair controls. You will need to have a repair crew on board your ship in order to do this.

The repair crew will automatically repair any damage that your ship takes. You can also manually repair your ship by clicking on the damaged areas.

Repair Crew

The repair crew is responsible for repairing your ship. They will automatically repair any damage that your ship takes.

You can assign crew members to the repair crew by using the crew management screen.

Repair Kits

Repair kits are a consumable item that can be used to repair your ship. They can be purchased from the shop or found in crates.

Repair kits can be used by clicking on the damaged areas of your ship.

Repair Time

Repair time is the amount of time it takes for your repair crew to repair your ship. It is affected by the amount of damage that your ship has taken and the skill of your repair crew.

You can reduce repair time by upgrading your repair crew.

Repair Cost

Repair cost is the amount of money it costs to repair your ship. It is affected by the amount of damage that your ship has taken and the skill of your repair crew.

You can reduce repair cost by upgrading your repair crew.

Crew

Your ship will be crewed by a number of sailors. The crew is responsible for operating the ship and its weapons.

You can assign crew members to different tasks, such as gunnery, repair, and navigation. You can also promote crew members to improve their skills.

Crew Roles

There are a number of different crew roles that you can assign to your crew members. Each role has its own unique benefits.

- **Gunner:** Gunners are responsible for operating the ship's guns. They can be promoted to improve their accuracy and reload speed.
- **Repair Crew:** The repair crew is responsible for repairing your ship. They can be promoted to improve their repair speed.
- **Navigator:** The navigator is responsible for plotting your course. They can be promoted to improve your ship's speed and maneuverability.
- **Officer:** Officers are responsible for leading your crew. They can be promoted to improve the morale of your crew.

Crew Morale

Crew morale is a measure of how happy your crew is. It is affected by a number of factors, such as the amount of damage that your ship has taken, the amount of food and water that your crew has, and the amount of money that you have.

You can improve crew morale by upgrading your ship's living quarters, providing your crew with food and water, and paying your crew their wages.

Crew Training

Crew training is a way to improve the skills of your crew members. You can train your crew members in a variety of different skills, such as gunnery, repair, and navigation.

You can train your crew members by assigning them to the training crew. The training crew will automatically train your crew members in the skills that you have assigned them to.

Crew Promotion

Crew promotion is a way to improve the skills of your crew members. You can promote your crew members to a higher rank, which will give them access to more powerful skills.

You can promote your crew members by assigning them to the promotion crew. The promotion crew will automatically promote your crew members to the next rank when they have enough experience.

Crew Casualties

Crew casualties are a type of damage that is caused by enemy projectiles hitting the crew of your ship.

Crew casualties can be reduced by using the repair controls. You will need to have a repair crew on board your ship in order to do this.

Crew Replacement

Crew replacement is a way to replace crew members who have been killed or injured. You can replace crew members by assigning them to the replacement crew.

The replacement crew will automatically replace crew members who have been killed or injured with new crew members.

Crew Management

Crew management is a way to manage your crew members. You can assign crew members to different tasks, such as gunnery, repair, and navigation. You can also promote crew members to improve their skills.

You can manage your crew members by using the crew management screen.

Upgrades

Ship Upgrades

Ship upgrades are a way to improve the performance of your ship. They can be purchased from the shop or found in crates.

There are a variety of different ship upgrades, each with its own unique benefits.

Armor Upgrades

Armor upgrades are a way to improve the protection of your ship. They can be purchased from the shop or found in crates.

There are a variety of different armor upgrades, each with its own unique benefits.

Engine Upgrades

Engine upgrades are a way to improve the speed and maneuverability of your ship. They can be purchased from the shop or found in crates.

There are a variety of different engine upgrades, each with its own unique benefits.

Gun Upgrades

Gun upgrades are a way to improve the accuracy and reload speed of your guns. They can be purchased from the shop or found in crates.

There are a variety of different gun upgrades, each with its own unique benefits.

Crew Upgrades

Crew upgrades are a way to improve the skills of your crew members. They can be purchased from the shop or found in crates.

There are a variety of different crew upgrades, each with its own unique benefits.

Repair Upgrades

Repair upgrades are a way to improve the repair speed of your repair crew. They can be purchased from the shop or found in crates.

There are a variety of different repair upgrades, each with its own unique benefits.

Navigation Upgrades

Navigation upgrades are a way to improve the speed and maneuverability of your ship. They can be purchased from the shop or found in crates.

There are a variety of different navigation upgrades, each with its own unique benefits.

Officer Upgrades

Officer upgrades are a way to improve the morale of your crew. They can be purchased from the shop or found in crates.

There are a variety of different officer upgrades, each with its own unique benefits.

Tactics

There are a number of different tactics that you can use in Ironclad Warfare. Some of the most common tactics are:

- **Broadside:** This is the most common tactic. It involves sailing your ship parallel to the enemy ship and firing all of your guns at once.
- **Crossing the T:** This tactic involves sailing your ship in front of the enemy ship and firing your guns as they pass by.
- **Ramming:** This tactic involves sailing your ship directly into the enemy ship. It is a risky tactic, but it can be very effective.

You can also use a combination of different tactics to create your own unique strategy.

Broadside

Broadside is the most common tactic in Ironclad Warfare. It involves sailing your ship parallel to the enemy ship and firing all of your guns at once.

Broadside is best used against large ships. It can also be used to bombard enemy coastal fortifications.

Crossing the T

Crossing the T is a tactic that involves sailing your ship in front of the enemy ship and firing your guns as they pass by.

Crossing the T is best used against small ships. It can also be used to attack enemy ships from a distance.

Ramming

Ramming is a tactic that involves sailing your ship directly into the enemy ship. It is a risky tactic, but it can be very effective.

Ramming is best used against small ships. It can also be used to attack enemy ships from a distance.

Flanking

Flanking is a tactic that involves sailing your ship around the enemy ship and attacking from the side or rear.

Flanking is best used against large ships. It can also be used to attack enemy ships from a distance.

Crossing the T

Crossing the T is a tactic that involves sailing your ship in front of the enemy ship and firing your guns as they pass by.

Crossing the T is best used against small ships. It can also be used to attack enemy ships from a distance.

Ramming

Ramming is a tactic that involves sailing your ship directly into the enemy ship. It is a risky tactic, but it can be very effective.

Ramming is best used against small ships. It can also be used to attack enemy ships from a distance.

Flanking

Flanking is a tactic that involves sailing your ship around the enemy ship and attacking from the side or rear.

Flanking is best used against large ships. It can also be used to attack enemy ships from a distance.

Crossing the T

Crossing the T is a tactic that involves sailing your ship in front of the enemy ship and firing your guns as they pass by.

Crossing the T is best used against small ships. It can also be used to attack enemy ships from a distance.

Ramming

Ramming is a tactic that involves sailing your ship directly into the enemy ship. It is a risky tactic, but it can be very effective.

Ramming is best used against small ships. It can also be used to attack enemy ships from a distance.

Flanking

Flanking is a tactic that involves sailing your ship around the enemy ship and attacking from the side or rear.

Flanking is best used against large ships. It can also be used to attack enemy ships from a distance.

Conclusion

Ironclad Warfare is a challenging but rewarding game. There is a lot to learn, but once you get the hang of it, it is very satisfying to command your own fleet of Ironclads.

I hope that this guide has been helpful. If you have any questions, please feel free to ask me.

Thank you for reading!

WARLOCK

Unchained

Unchained gains [Unstoppable](#) and [Overpower](#) for 3 seconds when they activate their Ultimate Ability. Unchained's Ultimate Ability can be activated 3 times before it goes on cooldown.

Unchained's Ultimate Ability can be activated 3 times before it goes on cooldown.

Activating any Ultimate Ability while [Unstoppable](#) ends Unchained's Ultimate Ability cooldown.

ABILITY MODIFIERS

Tier 1

Fortified Ultimate
Unchained's Ultimate Ability gains [Fortify](#) for 3 seconds when activated.

Tier 2

Overpowered Ultimate
Unchained's Ultimate Ability gains [Overpower](#) for 3 seconds when activated.

Tier 3

Unstoppable Ultimate
Unchained's Ultimate Ability gains [Unstoppable](#) for 3 seconds when activated.

Tier 4

Ultimate Cooldown
Unchained's Ultimate Ability cooldown is reduced by 3 seconds.

Tier 5

Ultimate Duration
Unchained's Ultimate Ability duration is increased by 3 seconds.

Kane Bard

A sword of light spins from his hands while he moves, slicing and impaling enemies.

Kane Bard's Ultimate Ability can be activated 3 times before it goes on cooldown. Activating any Ultimate Ability while [Unstoppable](#) ends Kane Bard's Ultimate Ability cooldown.

Scarlet Grenade

A grenade that bursts into a blood explosion, then leaves a lingering pool of blood.

Crimson Cyclone

Opponents hit by the blast are knocked back and spin in place, dizzied and disoriented.

Focused Barrel

Gain a bonus effect on Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

ABILITIES

Glide

Double-tap Jump to glide and move for a controlled descent.

Focused Barrel

Gain a bonus effect on Ultimate Ability activation.

Dive

Dive forward and down from the air.

Burst Bomb

Throw a bomb that explodes after a short delay, dealing damage and knocking back enemies caught in the blast.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

Dive

Dive forward and down from the air.

Burst Bomb

Throw a bomb that explodes after a short delay, dealing damage and knocking back enemies caught in the blast.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

Melee

Attack with a melee weapon.

Melee Mastery

Gain a bonus effect when melee attacks land.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

Leech

Gain health based on how much damage you deal.

Energy Burst

Activating your Ultimate Ability instantly recharges your melee and can be used a few additional times.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

Life Steal

Gain health based on how much damage you deal.

Iron Fist

Strikes with your fists deal increased damage.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

ABILITY MODIFIERS

Tier 1

Overcharge
Increases the rate of recharge for the Burst Bomb ammunition. Cooldown.

Tier 2

Fragmentation Bomb
Burst Bomb explodes into shrapnel, dealing damage to enemies caught in the blast.

Tier 3

Magic Magnet
Gain Magic and Ammo Magnet while activated.

Gain Magic and Ammo Magnet while activated. Activating your Ultimate Ability ends Magic Magnet.

Tier 4

Ultimate Cooldown
Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation. Time to next Ultimate.

Tier 5

Ultimate Duration
Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

PASSIVES

Tier 1

Passive Weapon
Gain a bonus effect when Passive Ability activates.

Tier 2

Increased Cooldown
Increases the cooldown of Passive Ability activation.

Tier 3

Increased Duration
Increases the duration of Passive Ability activation.

Tier 4

Passive Cooldown
Reduces the cooldown of Passive Ability activation.

Tier 5

Passive Duration
Increases the duration of Passive Ability activation.

Kane Grenade

A grenade that bursts into a blood explosion, then leaves a lingering pool of blood.

Crimson Cyclone

Opponents hit by the blast are knocked back and spin in place, dizzied and disoriented.

Focused Barrel

Gain a bonus effect on Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

ABILITIES

Glide

Double-tap Jump to glide and move for a controlled descent.

Focused Barrel

Gain a bonus effect on Ultimate Ability activation.

Ballistic Shield

Deploy a shield that protects you from enemy fire. Shield can be destroyed.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

Melee

Attack with a melee weapon.

Melee Mastery

Gain a bonus effect when melee attacks land.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

Leech

Gain health based on how much damage you deal.

Energy Burst

Activating your Ultimate Ability instantly recharges your melee and can be used a few additional times.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

Life Steal

Gain health based on how much damage you deal.

Iron Fist

Strikes with your fists deal increased damage.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

ABILITY MODIFIERS

Tier 1

Overcharge
Increases the rate of recharge for the Ballistic Shield ammunition. Cooldown.

Tier 2

Reinforced Shield
Ballistic Shield has more health before it breaks.

Tier 3

Magic Magnet
Gain Magic and Ammo Magnet while activated. Activating your Ultimate Ability ends Magic Magnet.

Tier 4

Ultimate Cooldown
Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation. Time to next Ultimate.

Tier 5

Ultimate Duration
Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

PASSIVES

Tier 1

Passive Weapon
Gain a bonus effect when Passive Ability activates.

Tier 2

Increased Cooldown
Increases the cooldown of Passive Ability activation.

Tier 3

Increased Duration
Increases the duration of Passive Ability activation.

Tier 4

Passive Cooldown
Reduces the cooldown of Passive Ability activation.

Tier 5

Passive Duration
Increases the duration of Passive Ability activation.

Kane Grenade

A grenade that bursts into a blood explosion, then leaves a lingering pool of blood.

Crimson Cyclone

Opponents hit by the blast are knocked back and spin in place, dizzied and disoriented.

Focused Barrel

Gain a bonus effect on Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

ABILITIES

Glide

Double-tap Jump to glide and move for a controlled descent.

Focused Barrel

Gain a bonus effect on Ultimate Ability activation.

Ballistic Shield

Deploy a shield that protects you from enemy fire. Shield can be destroyed.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

Melee

Attack with a melee weapon.

Melee Mastery

Gain a bonus effect when melee attacks land.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

Leech

Gain health based on how much damage you deal.

Energy Burst

Activating your Ultimate Ability instantly recharges your melee and can be used a few additional times.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

Life Steal

Gain health based on how much damage you deal.

Iron Fist

Strikes with your fists deal increased damage.

Ultimate Duration

Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

Ultimate Cooldown

Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation.

ABILITY MODIFIERS

Tier 1

Overcharge
Increases the rate of recharge for the Ballistic Shield ammunition. Cooldown.

Tier 2

Reinforced Shield
Ballistic Shield has more health before it breaks.

Tier 3

Magic Magnet
Gain Magic and Ammo Magnet while activated. Activating your Ultimate Ability ends Magic Magnet.

Tier 4

Ultimate Cooldown
Reduces the cooldown of Ultimate Ability activation. Time to next Ultimate.

Tier 5

Ultimate Duration
Increases the duration of Ultimate Ability activation.

PASSIVES

Tier 1

Passive Weapon
Gain a bonus effect when Passive Ability activates.

Tier 2

Increased Cooldown
Increases the cooldown of Passive Ability activation.

Tier 3

Increased Duration
Increases the duration of Passive Ability activation.

Tier 4

Passive Cooldown
Reduces the cooldown of Passive Ability activation.

Tier 5

Passive Duration
Increases the duration of Passive Ability activation.

CAMPAIGN

Halo Infinite's campaign is the first to feature an open world, and it's a big one. Unlike previous entries in the series, the campaign doesn't have a linear progression system. Instead, you'll find upgrades and weapons scattered throughout the world.

WEAPONRY

PRIMARY WEAPONS

The Master Chief has many weapons at his disposal.

Assault Rifle

The Assault Rifle is a versatile weapon that can be used in a variety of situations. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Pulse Rifle

The Pulse Rifle is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Sniper Rifle

The Sniper Rifle is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies from a distance. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Shotgun

The Shotgun is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Carbine

The Carbine is a versatile weapon that can be used in a variety of situations. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Magnum

The Magnum is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Needler

The Needler is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Plasma Rifle

The Plasma Rifle is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Plasma Pistol

The Plasma Pistol is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Plasma Repeater

The Plasma Repeater is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Plasma Launcher

The Plasma Launcher is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Fuel Rod Gun

The Fuel Rod Gun is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Rocket Launcher

The Rocket Launcher is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Gravity Hammer

The Gravity Hammer is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Energy Sword

The Energy Sword is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Oddball

The Oddball is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Flag

The Flag is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Bomb

The Bomb is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Territories

The Territories is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Koth

The Koth is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Strongholds

The Strongholds is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Juggernaut

The Juggernaut is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Infection

The Infection is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Race

The Race is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Vip

The Vip is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Total Control

The Total Control is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Land Grab

The Land Grab is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Pro

The Pro is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Classic

The Classic is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Custom

The Custom is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Training

The Training is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Tutorial

The Tutorial is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Test

The Test is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Debug

The Debug is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Development

The Development is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Beta

The Beta is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Alpha

The Alpha is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Gamma

The Gamma is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Omega

The Omega is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Final

The Final is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Ultimate

The Ultimate is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Legendary

The Legendary is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Epic

The Epic is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Rare

The Rare is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Uncommon

The Uncommon is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Common

The Common is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Basic

The Basic is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Starter

The Starter is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Default

The Default is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Random

The Random is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Custom Weapon

The Custom Weapon is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Weapon Pack

The Weapon Pack is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Weapon Set

The Weapon Set is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Weapon Collection

The Weapon Collection is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Weapon Arsenal

The Weapon Arsenal is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Weapon Armory

The Weapon Armory is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Weapon Vault

The Weapon Vault is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Weapon Locker

The Weapon Locker is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Weapon Rack

The Weapon Rack is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Weapon Stand

The Weapon Stand is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Weapon Display

The Weapon Display is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Weapon Showcase

The Weapon Showcase is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Weapon Museum

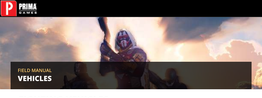
The Weapon Museum is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Weapon Gallery

The Weapon Gallery is a powerful weapon that can be used to take down enemies with ease. It has a high rate of fire and a large magazine, making it effective at both close and long range.

Weapon Exhibition

The Weapon Exhibition



FIGHTING VEHICLES

In no particular order, heavy weapons, grenades, and super moves are all powerful weapons against vehicles. Sniper rifles can also instantly dispatch a driver, and this is a powerful method of securing an Interceptor in PvP.

However, turrets are custom-made to destroy other vehicles. Primary Weapons can deal meaningful damage to vehicles, particularly if multiple players focus fire, but try to avoid situations where you are fighting a vehicle in the open with a Primary Weapon.

If you spot a vehicle at long range and you have a clear shot, or if a vehicle is involved in a firefight with someone else, go ahead and open fire. Otherwise, seek cover, and avoid them. A vehicle can kill you only if you let it get you in its sights in the first place. In both PvP and PvE, about 10% of the damage that a vehicle takes bleeds through to the driver. Although it's possible to kill a driver by shooting the vehicle, if you specifically want the driver dead, it's a better idea to target them with a sniper rifle or other precision weapon.

VEHICLE HEALTH

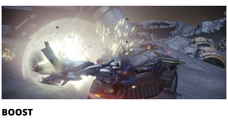
Vehicle health is split up into thirds similar to how your health meter is, but unlike your health, vehicles only regenerate to the nearest third. This means that once a vehicle is heavily damaged and on fire, you know it's going to blow soon no matter what you do. In these cases, getting out before it explodes is usually the wise course of action. If you don't want to leave a vehicle for hostiles to pick up, jump out and destroy it yourself. When a Sparrow blows up, you are simply knocked off, but all other vehicles kill you when they explode! Vehicles deal blast damage when they explode, and it is possible to kill other nearby enemies by destroying a vehicle in their midst.

Sparrow Detonation

If a Sparrow takes critical damage and is unmanned, it goes into an uncontrolled forward boost and detonates on impact with any target or obstacle. This is tricky to engineer; but you can indeed kill adversaries with your Sparrow.

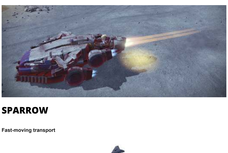
RAMMING SPEED

You can kill your opponents by ramming them. With your Sparrow, you must hit them directly and press Boost just before you impact. With the Pike, sideswipes or using a boost will do the trick. Sideswipes in particular are fairly easy to land if an enemy gets close to you. The Interceptor's boost is sluggish, but it is very powerful—an Interceptor will destroy any Sparrow or Pike in a head-on collision. Two Interceptors boosting destroy each other, along with their pilots.



BOOST

While on a Sparrow, Pike, or Interceptor, pressing and holding the Aim button allows you to use the vehicle's boosters, speeding you up considerably. The Interceptor can boost for only a short time, but the Sparrow and Pike can cruise indefinitely at a higher speed after performing a boost.

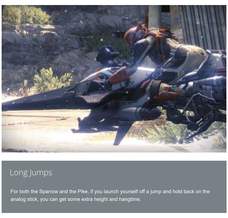


SPARROW

Fast-moving transport

Your Sparrow is unlocked early in the Story missions, and it is your primary means of fast travel around the planets (and on some larger PvP maps). Unlike other vehicles, Sparrows are equipment that is personal to you, so you can find and buy new Sparrows that have superior stats (and cooler paint jobs). Upgraded Sparrows have increased health, speed, and better air brake maneuverability. Legendary-quality Sparrows can outpace a Pike. With some hunting, you may even be able to find new colors for your engine contrails.

You can perform an air brake turn on the Sparrow by holding the trigger, aiming the camera where you want to go, and then releasing the trigger.



Long Jumps

For both the Sparrow and the Pike, if you launch yourself off a jump and hold back on the analog stick, you can get some extra height and hangtime.

PIKE

An agile Fallen combat craft

The Pike is a hover vehicle like the Sparrow, but it is armed with rapid-fire Arc cannons and has a built-in sideswipe ability. While on the Pike, hold the trigger to fire the cannons. They overheat after a moment, firing slowly. However, they can be recharged to full speed very quickly. Simply releasing and pressing the trigger is enough of a delay to get full speed barrages back. You can tap the Melee or Grenade buttons to strafe right or left. Use this maneuver to dodge incoming fire or smash nearby enemies on the ground.

In the air, strafing causes you to perform a barrel roll. Instead of air braking, you can perform a hard turn by turning in one direction and then using a strafe to kick the Pike around in a curving arc. The Pike has a small glass shield at the front that can occasionally protect you from a few incoming shots, but enemies can destroy it. Don't expect it to save you from an accurate sniper in PvP.

INTERCEPTOR

A brutish Cabal war machine

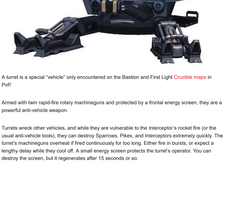
The Interceptor is a rocket-armed hover vehicle. Sluggish and slow-moving compared to the Sparrow or Pike, it nonetheless has a powerful boost that you can use to ram and destroy lighter vehicles or enemies.

The Interceptor is armed with twin rocket launchers, and as they have no ammo limitations or cooldowns to worry about, you can bombard an area with them continuously. When you obtain an Interceptor, use it carefully, and you can go on long sprees in both PvE and PvP.

The Interceptor's rockets fire in a left/right pattern from its twin mounts at the front. This is important because you can damage yourself with the blast from the rockets, and because shooting around cover is possible if you keep track of which rocket is loaded. There is no on-screen indicator of which rocket is loaded. Pay attention when you're firing, and you can strafe in and out of cover to launch them around the edges.

The Interceptor has better frontal protection from snipers than the Pike, and it generally provides its rider with a bit more protection. When facing an Interceptor yourself, if you can't snipe the driver, break out your super moves, heavy ammo, and grenades to take it down as quickly as possible.

TURRET



A turret is a special "vehicle" only encountered on the Bastion and First Light Crucible maps in PvP.

Armed with twin rapid-fire rotary machineguns and protected by a frontal energy screen, they are a powerful anti-vehicle weapon.

Turrets wreck other vehicles, and while they are vulnerable to the Interceptor's rocket fire (or the usual anti-vehicle tools), they can destroy Sparrows, Pikes, and Interceptors extremely quickly. The turret's machineguns overheat if fired continuously for too long. Either fire in bursts, or expect a lengthy delay while they cool off. A small energy screen protects the turret's operator. You can destroy the screen, but it regenerates after 15 seconds or so.

While we were on-site with Bungie, we took the time to ask around the studio for some of their favorite builds. They answered!

FAVORITE PVE BUILDS

Cameron Pinard—Bladedancer

"Momma's Bite Strike combined with Fast Twitch, and maximize Strength on your armor. With Hungering Blade, stab through for a refreshing restoration of health, or use your super with skill and abandon as you cut through your enemies with ease, recharging with each kill."

Daniel Hanson—Nightstalker

"The Actor Bolt has always been my favorite grenade for the Voidwalker subclass in Story missions and Strikes.

While the other Voidwalker grenades have the potential to hit more targets, Actor Bolt seekers will continue to move, dealing damage to two targets, making them very reliable at dispatching troublesome enemies.

Remember to pick up the Vortex Mastery perk to increase the range of your seekers. And if you manage to earn the Exotic Voidwalker helmet chest armor, you can make Actor Bolt spawn a third seeker!"

Ian Cox, Jon Weisnewski—Sunsinger

Ian Cox has a bit to say, clearly he loves his Warlock.

"Radiance's ability to spawn grenades means that Sunsingers are more reliant on having a good grenade than other builds. With that in mind, the Solar grenade is not a good general purpose grenade. Scorch is fine for PvE, but it's not going to help you much in PvP. Incendiary, Fusion, and Radiance active. Firebolt grenades provide a fabulous amount of wave-clearing potential and can routinely provide as many orbs as there are enemies to kill. Sunspot grenades has a reputation as a support build, but frankly, what it does best is help teammates to kill everyone in the room and give them a ton of free super energy from orbs.

"The Solar grenade can be useful in encounters when enemies come through predictable chokepoints but really shines in encounters with bosses that have multiple points that can be damaged simultaneously, as many get caught in the AOE. It's great against Gorel-Skitterer."

"The shiny Fusion grenade does a ton of damage and can be very useful against single-target bosses like Sepiks Prime. Depending on the specific encounter, beam composition, and Strike boss, Fusion, Arc, or Void grenades can be a good choice for burning down bosses or Fireteam grenades to wipe out adds.

"Oh, and be careful about attacking Crota's Sunspots or Thralls in teleporting enemies. They will happily detonate your own grenade right next to you…

"Other than proper grenade usage, the big talent choice is whether you take Viking Funeral and Touch of Flame to make your Fireball grenades hit tough enemies much harder, or if you take Radiant Will and Off the Cuff to make Radiance even better.

"Stack Discipline in the rare to get access to your powerful grenades more often, and to maximize grenade spam during Radiance. Fire, stack Intellect to get those supers more often. Generally speaking, Strength is the dump stat, but you can't go wrong with a couple of Dim Tagger scores from your grenades as Touch of Flame.

"Angel of Light is a fantastic mobility talent, the third really great talent in a column full of great talents. Everyone should play around with it.

"Finally, the more super energy from grenade kills I roll that can sometimes be found on helmets is really great for first build, so you can frequently come out of Radiance with two grenades, poised to begin refilling your super meter immediately.

Something about the Sunsinger seems to generate passionate and lengthy responses. Perhaps it's all that Solar energy in their bones… Here are Jon's thoughts:

"Sunsingers are an extremely flexible class. They can be both really offensive and a huge support class as well. They don't have a always signature super nuke like most of the other classes, but they compensate for it with a wide array of class abilities that make them very effective.

"The sheer amount of fire you can throw with Radiance is awesome, but the real cherry on top is the healing effect, one that allows you to self-revive with Radiance active. In PvE, this ability can be crucial in turning around waves of the tougher enemies and keeping your Fireteam from a wipe, or just re-energizing your fireteam when you die in a big way.

"In PvP, there are few things as satisfying to me as the surprise self-rez after an unfortunate death. You can't get killed cover-ranging for a shotgun peek or a ninja flank, and you know that person is vomiting on the other end, and for the enemy to turn their attention away, and then, like a demonic undead inferno, come back to life and kill them is just awful.

"Crafty players can also maximize their ability to turn the world to ash with the combination of Wells Forecast and Touch of Flame. These passives mean that any Solar-based attack will set enemies on fire for an extended period.

"All this greatness aside, my absolute favorite ability is Angel of Light, which allows a player to briefly hover in an air-strafe. It's also not a long-term ability. This affords you brief moments of unexpected energy superiority, and can also seriously throw off aggressive in PvP. Fusion rifles, rocket launchers… Sunsingers can use all of the heavy weapons, and they're all good. Sniper rifles are the only ones I don't. It provides the moment of confusion you need to turn a flailing attack into a defensive pin in the face."

Ben Wommack and Anastasia Tex Mercer, James Haywood—Gunslinger

"Three words: Infinite. Thrusting. Knives.

Provided you're good enough, of course… With the Knife Juggler talent, whenever you make a melee kill, you get a knife back. Knife kills are the quickest way to get your melee meter charged and dry with just thrusting knives.

"As self-respecting Hunter will ever admit that they aren't up to the task, so if you want a little reassurance that you're not the worst player in the game, it's Gambler's Dagger. This gives you a second knife to store at all times, which of course you'll never lose to one because Hunters never miss.

Anastasia has similar opinions:

"Throwing knife + Knife Juggler = pure happiness. If you're a pro with precision kills, you'll never run out of knives. Not to mention the ultimately satisfying feeling from strategically throwing a knife from the map that lands dead center on top of your enemy's head.

"When playing on higher difficulties, the Golden Gun is an awesome ally against higher-level enemies with more health, shields, and increased aggression."

And James Haywood, with a name seemingly meant to be a gunslinger…

"Golden Gun never lets me down. If you want to feel like the new sheriff in town, blowing through to make the gallery safe for law-abiding citizens, this is the class to choose. Of course, picking a melee handgun as your primary is a must. Just crank up the magazine and reload time every way you can.

"Nothing beats the adrenaline rush of being shanghaied by a horde of enemies, taking down the first one with a single knife throw, and then shredding the rest in quick succession."

FAVORITE PVP BUILDS

Thomas Wiley—Sunsinger

"The one force that truly makes me feel like a space wizard.

With the Touch of Flame perk combined with Viking Funeral, I am able to cover the battlefield with fire.

"Combine this with the cooldown reduction and the damage resistance of Radiance, and the Touch of Flame Warlock becomes enemies to fear."

Daniel Auchenpaugh, Eric Carter, and John Favaro—Voidwalker

"Vortex grenade is great area denial. grab it for PvP.

"The Focused Beat talent for Glide gets you across the map faster, while the Vortex augment for Nova Bomb ensures the room stays clear after you space-magic everyone in it.

"The Soul Rip talent for Energy Drain gets you more Nova Bombs, and who doesn't like that? Quick Draw for Golden Gun is also a great choice, as it makes the Golden Gun a more effective battle rifle. Wrap that up with Embrace the Void, and you'll be the unstoppable space wizard you've always dreamed of.

"When gearing the build, focus on Discipline first, then Intellect. That extra grenade cooldown can really help you control nodes."

"Golden Gun for it… wait for it… wait for it… Nova Bomb the control point! Double down! Triple down! Pentuple Down! Wombeat! Space magic! Everything control point…

John chimes in with some final thoughts on Nova Bomb augmented with the Vortex talent:

"The ability to land a Nova Bomb that goes through the Titans' Ward of Dawn is great. Keeping enemy Titans suppressed makes it much easier to kill them.

"It is also great as a capture point denial weapon. Dropping one on a point means the other team has to choose to either stay out of it, allowing your team to counter-attack, or sacrifice themselves to capture the point."

Peter Hood, Victor Anderson—Defender

Peter has a dissenting opinion on the Voidwalker…

"The Ward of Dawn bubble is an excellent team support super. It can save lives and provide great cover when you need it.

"Blessing of Light gives a shield on entry and exit, so popping in and out of the Ward keeps your shield high.

"It's great for zone control when defending or if you're offense while trying to gain ground, and it also keeps those pesky Warlocks in their place at the bottom of the scoreboard."

While Victor shares the love of the Defender:

"Rather than using Defender as area denial and map control, I prefer using it offensively. Grabbing the Weapons of Light talent with the Illuminated talent to increase your weapons' damage and ensuring that with Focused Beat, Defender is the ultimate tool for PvP."

"I do not suggest a shotgun or fusion rifle for Weapons of Light. That would be better suited to one of the more defensive talent choices. It's important to remember that the Ward of Dawn with Weapons of Light is not meant to be used as a camping tool. The important part is using the damage boost to help control the Point of Light or a central location and maximize the kills you get from it for the duration. Remember that Weapons of Light cannot save you from something like the burning effect from solar weapons, so Titans' effect can't stand up."

"I suggest the Magnetic grenade, as you can use it to trade with supers. It will often detonate after the enemy activates their ultimate and kill them anyway. It also counters any type of shield you may remember that you cannot kill someone with Radiance, Arc Blade, or some of the other defensive Titan talent choices in the fashion.

"Using the Magnetic grenade intelligently and stacking discipline to support it can land you many kills in quick succession. It's also awesome in shenanigans positions, such as when multiple foes are standing on a point, a Magnetic grenade can easily attach to someone far on mainet kill."

Alex Velicky, Ian Flower—Striker

"The Striker focus has two of the coolest abilities in the entire game. Fist of Havoc with the Dash Punch makes quick work of Knockout Charges. There is nothing more satisfying in PvP than leaping on high ahrive your enemies only to superhero-slam into the ground, unleashing a deadly blast of Arc energy, and then punching them in the face. It's dramatic, it's flashy, and most important, it's terrifying to the victim on the receiving end.

"I suggest the Magnetic grenade, as you can use it to trade with supers. It will often detonate after the enemy activates their ultimate and kill them anyway. It also counters any type of shield you may remember that you cannot kill someone with Radiance, Arc Blade, or some of the other defensive Titan talent choices in the fashion.

"Using the Magnetic grenade intelligently and stacking discipline to support it can land you many kills in quick succession. It's also awesome in shenanigans positions, such as when multiple foes are standing on a point, a Magnetic grenade can easily attach to someone far on mainet kill."

Alex Velicky, Ian Flower—Striker

"The Striker focus has two of the coolest abilities in the entire game. Fist of Havoc with the Dash Punch makes quick work of Knockout Charges. There is nothing more satisfying in PvP than leaping on high ahrive your enemies only to superhero-slam into the ground, unleashing a deadly blast of Arc energy, and then punching them in the face. It's dramatic, it's flashy, and most important, it's terrifying to the victim on the receiving end.

"I suggest the Magnetic grenade, as you can use it to trade with supers. It will often detonate after the enemy activates their ultimate and kill them anyway. It also counters any type of shield you may remember that you cannot kill someone with Radiance, Arc Blade, or some of the other defensive Titan talent choices in the fashion.

"Using the Magnetic grenade intelligently and stacking discipline to support it can land you many kills in quick succession. It's also awesome in shenanigans positions, such as when multiple foes are standing on a point, a Magnetic grenade can easily attach to someone far on mainet kill."

Anastasia Tex Mercer—Bladedancer

"While some people like going out guns blazing, I prefer the sneaky approach. Creeping around, out of sight with blends and striking down one foes a wee so satisfying.

"Come on, who doesn't love being a ninja?

FAVORITE STRIKE AND RAID BUILDS

Brendan Thorne—Cloak-Focused Bladedancer

"The ability to disappear and make an enemy combatant kill for your buddy instead of you should not be underestimated.

"But in all seriousness, this build has great survivability to get you out of a tight spot. Remember, head hunters do no DPS."

John Shaffstall—Sunsinger

"The respawn penalty makes Strikes and Raids very difficult. Resurrecting yourself can mean the difference between a successful encounter and a wipe.

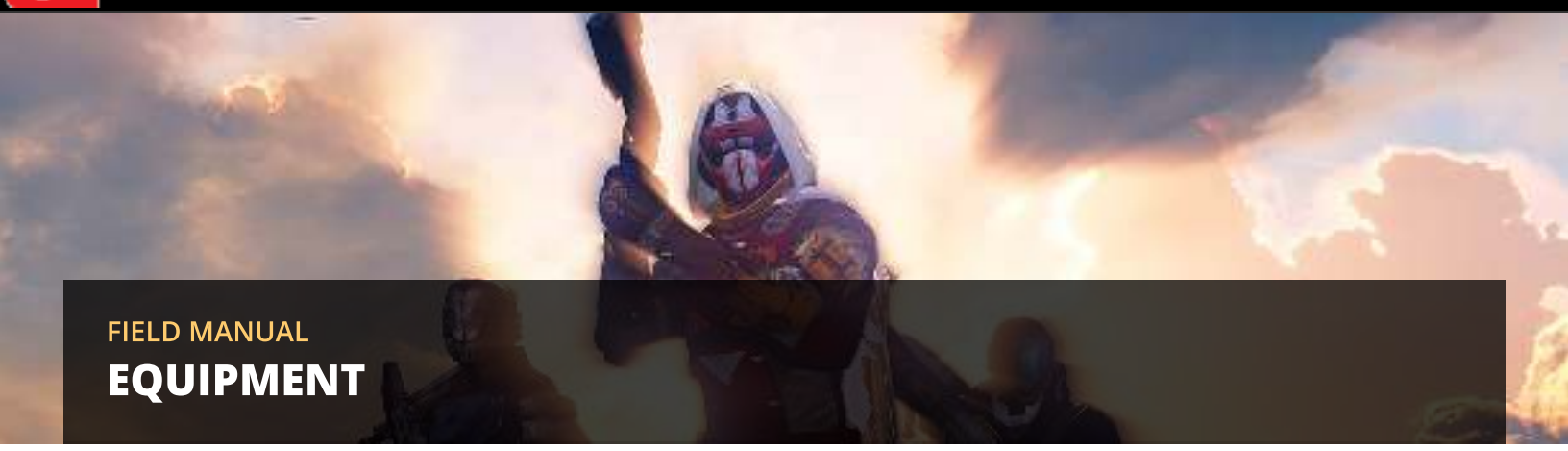
"The Firebrum upgrade is one of the final unlocks in the Sunsinger specialization, so you'll have to earn the right to undo your death."

Mike Lee—Defender

Mike Lee shares a build you can try should you manage to locate a very special and rare Exotic helmet…

"Built around the Helm of Saint-14 exotic helmet's unique ability, Starless Night. It blinds enemies who walk through the Ward of Dawn, hard countering melee rush wavers. Stick to the Flashbang grenade to keep to dangerous situations.

"Pair with a high crit-count-generating Sunsinger Warlock and fixed upon 4x waves of all types. You can accrue melee toward your next Ward of Dawn while the first one is still active. Rely on a high capacity Exotic primary, along with the Warlock's increased reload speed to keep your heavy weapon slot firing for DPS."



FIELD MANUAL

EQUIPMENT

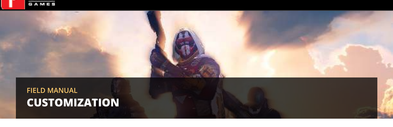
All Guardians are masterful combatants, equally adept with firearms or wielding the Light in battle.

Each of the Guardian orders garbs their chosen warriors in nanocircuitry-infused armor, protecting their bodies and enhancing their already formidable abilities. How you choose to equip your Guardian has a direct and meaningful impact on gameplay, influencing the use of your abilities and your firearms. You can equip three different weapons and wear four different pieces of armor. Higher-quality types of weapons and armor provide both increased statistical bonuses and unique mods that change the behavior of your firearms and abilities. For a more detailed breakdown on the ins and outs of weapons and armor, see the Armory chapter.

WEAPON AND ARMOR MODS

Found in the Tower's armories and lost in the wilderness, a host of weapons and armor awaits your discovery. These weapons and armor have certain inherent attributes (how strong they are, how well they protect you), but they also have a variety of randomized upgrades known as mods (modifications). Initially, you can only see the mods on the weapon or armor; they aren't activated until they are unlocked. Unlocking these mods requires two things: gaining experience with the weapon or armor equipped, and spending Glimmer and Materials to activate the mod. Once activated, that mod is permanently active and available for use.

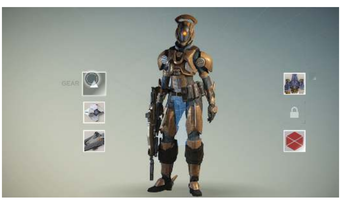
Some weapons and armor have mod categories that unlock all at once, such as a range of sights or barrels that modify the weapon's behavior. You typically get a choice between one of three different options in such a category, and you can freely switch between them to suit a particular combat role. You can refer to the Armory chapter for a more detailed breakdown of the various mods. However, the basics are simple: find a weapon or armor with appealing upgrades, equip it and gain experience until the mods are available, and then unlock them with Glimmer and Materials.



FIELD MANUAL

CUSTOMIZATION

In addition to the arms and armor necessary for a Guardian to survive on the battlefield, you are also outfitted with your companion Ghost, a Sparrow to traverse the planets of the solar system with speed, and a ship to travel between the planets.



To ensure that you stand out from the crowd, you can customize your Guardian with unique armor colors by using Shaders, adorn yourself with Class-specific Class Armor, and choose an Emblem for your player card.

YOUR GHOST

Companion, mentor, hacker, transport aid, restorer of life, your Ghost is your best friend on and off the battlefield.

Ghosts are fragments of the Traveler's Light, and they choose you to carry on the task of the wounded Traveler in protecting the remnants of humanity.

The least you can do is get your Ghost a nice paint job…

Your choice of Ghost shell is purely cosmetic. It appears in the world during any cutscene where your Ghost is active, and your Ghost always shows up when you bring up your Navigation menu in the field.

TRAVELING IN STYLE WITH YOUR SPARROW

Unlocked early in the Story campaign, your Sparrow can be generated instantly to you anywhere in the open via transmat.

If your Sparrow is destroyed, you must wait a short time before another can be regenerated.

Unlike Ghost or Ship upgrades, Sparrow upgrades are not cosmetic.

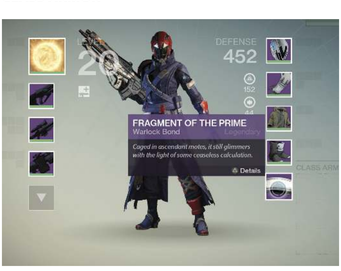
Better Sparrows have slightly better durability and top speed, and truly exceptional models can even come with special mobility tools, such as strafe capability or overcharged thrusters.

SOLAR TRAVEL IN YOUR SHIP

Your ship may be a cosmetic choice, but it is a major one. You hover above every planet in the game in your ship, form Fireteams in space in your ship, and travel to and from every destination in the solar system in your ship.

You see your ship a lot, so why not splurge some Glimmer on a custom ride? If you are particularly lucky, you can find or earn rare ships with unique appearances and color schemes.

CLASS ARMOR



Class Armor is a mostly cosmetic armor slot that all three Classes have access to. Titans wear waist cloths of unique design, Warlocks adorn themselves with armbands, and Hunters garb themselves in cloaks. While it has no in-combat effect, wearing Class Armor of a specific Faction is how you represent that Faction on the battlefield.

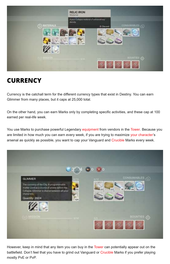
If you wish to earn reputation for Dead Orbit, the Future War Cult, the New Monarchy, or the Iron Banner, you must purchase and equip a Class Armor item of their Faction. Without such a Faction-specific armor piece equipped, all reputation gains you get on the field go toward Vanguard reputation, the catch-all Faction that represents the entirety of the Guardian forces in the Tower.

SHADERS

Shaders are paint jobs for your armor. You can find, purchase, and earn these from the various vendors and Factions in the Tower, or obtain them by completing various events and activities in PvE and PvP. Shaders have a quality level that determines which armor you can apply them to. High-quality, high-level armor of great rarity requires rare and expensive Shaders and does not accept lower-quality Shaders. Shaders are not applied to each piece of armor individually. Instead, they are a full body paint scheme that gives you a unified appearance. While early, cheaper Shaders tend to be basic colors, more sophisticated Shaders can have complex patterns or material types in their designs.

2021 SEASON
INVENTORY

Your inventory is where you store all of your non-weapon, non-armor items. These items range from basic currency types (Glimmer and Marks) to consumable items that you can activate for a battlefield boost and Materials necessary for upgrading your armor and weapons.

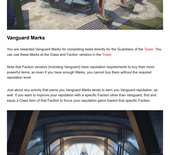


CURRENCY

Currency is the catchall term for the different currency types that exist in Destiny. You can earn Glimmer from many places, but it caps at 25,000 total.

On the other hand, you can earn Marks only by completing specific activities, and these cap at 100 banked per real-life week.

You use Marks to purchase powerful Legendary equipment from vendors in the Tower. Because you are limited in how much you can earn every week, if you are trying to maximize your character's arsenal as quickly as possible, you want to cap your Vanguard and Crucible Marks every week.


GLIMMER
Glimmer is the key to progression in the Tower. Spend it on upgrading your gear, or buy consumables and other useful items.
25000

However, keep in mind that any item you can buy in the Tower can potentially appear out on the battlefield. Don't feel that you have to grind out Vanguard or Crucible Marks if you prefer playing mostly PvE or PvP.

There are vendors in the Tower who accept large quantities of Materials in exchange for Marks. You can even farm for an alternate method of earning Marks, which is particularly useful if you do not play much PvP at all.

Motes of Light are a very special currency that can be earned only once per week per Level 20–30, you no longer gain levels by earning experience; instead, you earn a Mote of Light each time you would have leveled up.

Glimmer

Glimmer is programmable matter valued by Guardians, and the various artisans and fingersmiths of the Tower gathering nodes.

You purchase goods from the vendors in exchange for Glimmer, you're going to need Glimmer—a lot of Glimmer. You can find Glimmer on the battlefield, loot it from enemies and chests, or earn it by completing bounties and events.

Glimmer is account-wide, so all of your characters have access to your Glimmer pool. This is hardly worth you starting a fresh character. Glimmer acquired from specific enemy types can be boosted for a short time by using certain consumable items.

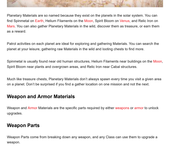
GLIMMER
Glimmer is the key to progression in the Tower. Spend it on upgrading your gear, or buy consumables and other useful items.
25000

Vanguard Marks

You are rewarded Vanguard Marks for completing tasks directly for the Guardians of the Tower. You can use these Marks at the Cabal and Fanton vendors in the Tower.

Note that Fanton vendors (including Vanguard) have reputation requirements to buy their more powerful items, so even if you have enough Marks, you cannot buy them without the required reputation level.

Just about any activity that earns you Vanguard Marks tends to earn you Vanguard reputation, as well. If you want to improve your reputation with a specific Fanton other than Vanguard, find and equip a Class Item of that Fanton to focus your reputation gains toward that specific Fanton.



Crucible Marks

You earn Crucible Marks by completing PvP activities in the Crucible. Winning matches earns you more Marks than losing, but simply completing will eventually top you for the week.

Specific PvP Fashions such as the Iron Banner have reputation requirements to purchase their equipment, much like the Fanton. Marks may be required to complete Faction-specific bounties or special activities to raise your reputation with them.

You can also earn Crucible Marks by trading in large quantities of planetary Materials to a vendor in the Tower.

Motes of Light

You begin earning Motes of Light at Level 20. Each time you would normally gain a level from experience at Level 20, you are instead granted a Mote of Light.

The Speaker in the Tower desires this special and precious type of currency, so you can trade them with him for various rewards.

MATERIALS

Materials are all the items you can find in the game that are used for upgrading your weapons and armor.

Planetary Materials

Planetary Materials are so named because they exist on the planets in the solar system. You can find Basalt Scale on Earth, Helium Filaments on the Moon, Spirit Bloom on Venus, and Relic Iron on Mars. You can also gather Planetary Materials in the wild, discover them as treasure, or earn them as a reward.

Patrol activities on each planet are ideal for exploring and gathering the Materials native to that planet. Public events and bounties on each planet are also rewarding ways to find more.

Spiritwood is usually found near old human structures, Helium Filaments near buildings on the Moon, Spirit Bloom near plants and overgrown ruins, and Relic Iron near Cabal structures.

Much like treasure chests, Planetary Materials don't always spawn every time you visit a given area on a planet. Don't be surprised if you can't find a gather location on one mission and not the next.

Weapon and Armor Materials

Weapon and Armor Materials are the specific parts required by either weapons or armor to unlock upgrades.

Weapon Parts

Weapon Parts come from breaking down any weapon, and any Class can use them to upgrade a weapon.

Class Armor Parts

You acquire Class Armor Parts by breaking down each Class's armor. They are Radiant Plating for Titans, Sagittan Wire for Hunters, and Hadronic Essence for Warlocks.

Like Weapon Parts, breaking down any piece of Class Armor yields Class Armor Parts. Unlike Weapon Parts, you can use them only to upgrade armor specific to that Class.

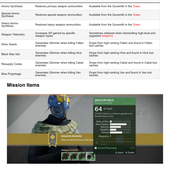
This means that if you split your time playing a Titan and a Warlock, you can share Weapon Parts between them, but you cannot share Radiant Plating or Hadronic Essence.

Ascendant Materials

Ascendant Materials is the catchall name for powerful Materials necessary to upgrade powerful weapons and armor. Ascendant Energy is necessary to upgrade high-level weapons, while Ascendant Shards and Ascendant Alloy are necessary for upgrading high-level equipment or completing challenging activities can earn you Ascendant Materials.

Raise Lab	Used primarily to upgrade high-level gear.	Gathered and looted from chests on Nessus.
Spinmetal	Used primarily to upgrade high-level gear.	Gathered and looted from chests in the Dreaming City.
Helium Filaments	Used primarily to upgrade high-level gear.	Gathered and looted from chests on the Moon.
Spirit Bloom	Used primarily to upgrade high-level gear.	Gathered and looted from chests on Venus.
Ascendant Energy	Used to upgrade weapons to the highest power level.	Obtained as a reward from high-level activities and from Ascendant Challenges.
Ascendant Shard	Used to upgrade armor to the highest power level.	Obtained as a reward from high-level activities and from Ascendant Challenges.
Mote of Light	A currency used to purchase Motes of Light.	Obtained by earning XP beyond the level cap (Level 20 through Level 30).
Enhancement Prisms, Hadronic Essence, Sagittan Wires	Used to upgrade armor.	Obtained by dismantling unwanted and higher-level weapons.
Weapon Parts	Used to upgrade weapons.	Obtained by dismantling unwanted and higher-level weapons.

Consumables



Consumable items provide you with an instant ammo restoration on the battlefield or a time-limited boost to XP or Glimmer gain.

Ammo restore items have a five-minute cooldown time, so choose when to use them carefully.

Once you have a decent stash of Glimmer, stock up on ammo restoration consumables, as they're extremely important in high-difficulty PvE missions.

XP and Glimmer boosters last for 15 minutes once activated, and that is active in-mission time; they don't count down while you are in orbit.

Ammo Synthesis	Restores primary weapon ammunition.	Available from the Gunsmith in the Tower.
Special Ammo Synthesis	Restores special weapon ammunition.	Available from the Gunsmith in the Tower.
Heavy Ammo Synthesis	Restores heavy weapon ammunition.	Available from the Gunsmith in the Tower.
Weapon Telemetry	Increases XP gained by specific weapon type.	Sometimes obtained when dismantling high-level and legendary weapons.
Other Seeds	Generates Glimmer when killing Fallen enemies.	Drops from high-ranking Fallen and found in Fallen chests.
Shoe Shine Kit	Generates Glimmer when killing Cabal enemies.	Drops from high-ranking Cabal and found in Cabal chests.
Rasputin Code	Generates Glimmer when killing Cabal enemies.	Drops from high-ranking Cabal and found in Cabal loot caches.
Blue Polyphage	Generates Glimmer when killing Vex enemies.	Drops from high-ranking Vex and found in Vex loot caches.

Mission Items

Mission items is a category for specific items awarded during Story missions. You usually turn them in to a specific NPC in the Tower for a reward. See the walkthroughs for details on all the mission items you can find in the game… for now! Expect new ones in the future.

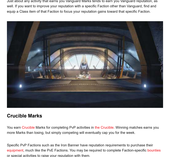
Mission items are generally a one-time reward for your first completion of a Story mission.

BOUNTIES

Bounties are PvE and PvP tasks that award you with experience, Glimmer, and occasionally items upon completion.

A daily rotation of PvE and PvP bounties are available in the Tower from Xander Bib-40.

You may also occasionally receive bounties from the Postmaster. Once in a great while, if you are exploring, you may find bounties from Lord Saladin loosely. Completing such a rare find is guaranteed to award you with an Exotic item.


BOUNTIES
Bounties are PvE and PvP tasks that award you with experience, Glimmer, and occasionally items upon completion.
64

You can find up to five Xenophon bounties and Xenobite that you are carrying do not expire. You can, however, discard them at any time (say, if a day or two has passed and you spot some bounties on Xander that you'd rather pursue).

It's worthwhile to stack up a set of PvE or PvP bounties that you want to tackle with your Fireteam. If you can shoulder bounties together with daily events, you can reap a rich harvest of rewards at the end of your daily play session without much extra effort.

PROGRESSION

When you have unlocked some of the achievements in Battlepass and progress has levels, the number of unlocked achievements will go towards your overall progress in your Battlepass. If you're reaching the next level and there is progress, head there section of interest.

When you are leveling up, you have need to buy your first reward a reward that feels be tough of the tough level. You will always have probably a lower level reward. You can also collect a Battlepass XP Boost to increase the amount of XP you receive from completing challenges.

A great experience for you to spend is unlock reward. Also the reward, unlocked as you level up your Battlepass, you can also unlock reward by spending BP. Each reward has a different BP cost, so you can choose what you want to unlock.

Finally, party chest and Battlepass reward is Premium while leveling Season missions and Public missions. Each mission can only be bought once per day. Bronze, and Bedrock.

TIMED EVENTS

Leveling does a variety of events that change over time in a short time, and are only available for a limited time. Timed events are usually available for a specific amount of time, and are connected to the current season.

Most versions refresh their event every season hours. You can access the Weaponmaster on the Battlepass menu in the Lobby screen.

Some have additional rules, though any Challenges you are carrying are not reset, so they have the same rules as before.

The Proposal Mode has a limited-time mode.

Assault Rifles update weekly. There are typically four each Shotguns with the Nightfall and Nightmare difficulties, Sniper Rifles, and Submachine Guns.

Pistols Melee playlists are updated daily, and special events like the Iron Banner appear periodically.

Event Progression Systems are the specific reasons that you can earn Event Rewards.

If you want to check Checks and Balances, and Lost Treasure, but any that is ready to play for the Battlepass, you can also check out the Battlepass Menu. Each Battlepass has a different Battlepass.

Tackling the various timed events, and slightly more, is a great way to focus your efforts for your Battlepass. Each Battlepass has a different Battlepass. Each Battlepass has a different Battlepass.

EXPERIENCE AND LEVEL

The most basic progression comes from earning experience.

You will receive experience from defeating enemies, completing missions, completing Activities, and completing Bounties. Each of these will also reward you with Glimmer, Legendary Shards, and sometimes Exotic Engrams, which are explained below.

If you have any Ornaments or Seals equipped, any experience you earn gains a bonus. Ornaments and Seals can be found in the Inventory screen. Each character can equip one Ornament and one Seal at a time.

Experience is used to increase your character's Light level. Light level is a measure of your character's overall power. Light level is calculated by averaging the Light level of your equipped Weapons and Armor. Higher Light level makes you more powerful in Player-versus-Player (PvP) and Player-versus-Environment (PvE) activities.

You can gain levels, you unlock new Subclass, including Journey and the Crucible PvP mode. At the start of each Season, your Light level is reset to 750. You can increase your Light level by earning and equipping new gear. Your Light level is capped at 1,050 in PvE activities and 1,000 in PvP activities.

EQUIPMENT UPGRADES

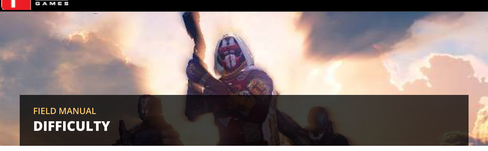
In addition to leveling your character level and equipment, you need to continually upgrade your Weapons and Armor.

You want to be working out Ornaments using Items Ornamentum, New Relic, Rare, Legendary, and Exotic Weapons and Armor.

Weapons and Armor can be upgraded with Upgrade Modules. Upgrade Modules are found in Engrams, and are also awarded from Faction Rank-up packages. Upgrade Modules are found in Engrams, and are also awarded from Faction Rank-up packages.

Weapons and Armor can be infused with Legendary Shards, and Exotic Weapons and Armor can be infused with Glimmer. Infusion can increase the Light level of an item, but will destroy the item being used to infuse it. Infusion can increase the Light level of an item, but will destroy the item being used to infuse it.

Weapons and Armor can be infused with Legendary Shards, and Exotic Weapons and Armor can be infused with Glimmer



FIELD MANUAL

DIFFICULTY

There are two main factors that influence the difficulty of a mission in PvE: the level of the mission and the Skulls active for that mission.

Mission level is set to a certain baseline for Story missions and Strikes, but once you hit 20, all missions can be scaled up to (and beyond) Level 20.

There is also a special set of Vanguard Strikes that allow you to play a random Strike at Level 18, 20, 22, or 24.

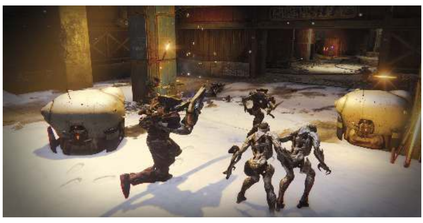
Two Skulls in particular serve as a sort of mission-wide difficulty setting—the Heroic and Mythic Skulls.

On Heroic, encounters are changed, and all enemies are more dangerous.

On Mythic, the encounters are changed, adversaries are yet more dangerous, and an additional enemy combatant for each race in the game gains a new elemental shield. On top of that, elemental shields take 50% less damage if you hit them with the wrong element.

High-level Mythic missions with multiple Skulls active are hard.

ENEMY BEHAVIOR



The difficulty tier for a mission sets the base level of aggression for all of the enemies in a mission. This affects how fast, accurate, and dangerous the basic foes you encounter are.

Also, all adversaries improve their basic behaviors: dodging your gunfire, diving away from grenades, suppressing you in cover with weapons or grenades, flanking you, chasing you behind cover, rushing you in melee, hiding and retreating to recover shields, or jumping away if suddenly ambushed. The specific behavior depends on the exact enemy type you are battling, but all of them are more dangerous on higher-difficulty missions.

Majors and Ultras

Majors and Ultras are the special hardened versions of normal enemies that you may encounter during a mission.

Majors show up with a yellow nameplate. They have more health, possess stronger shields that recharge faster, and are more aggressive and dangerous than their normal brethren. You may see these foes show up in the game with a name like “Elite Fallen Captain,” but you can always identify them by their nameplate color.

Ultras appear with a skull mark on their nameplate. They are tougher still than Majors and more dangerous, and all of them have a 360-degree knockback to push you away if you get too close.

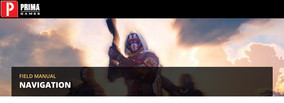
Skulls

Skulls act as special difficulty modifiers for PvE missions. These added effects are on top of the basic difficulty for any mission in the game at any level. If you tackle a Strike that is three levels above you and has multiple Skulls active, expect a very, very tough fight.

Special daily and weekly missions can often have Skulls active. You can also adjust the difficulty on a mission to change its level and sometimes the Skulls that it has active.

Nightfall bears special mention. During a Nightfall mission, if your entire Fireteam wipes, you are returned to orbit instantly. You only get one shot at these missions, so play smart!

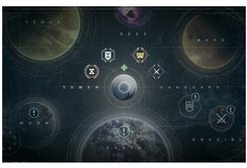
Juggler	No ammo drops for your equipped weapon.
Anger Issues	Minions of the Darkness display heightened aggression.
Angry	Minions of the Darkness won’t flinch, even after massive damage.
Arc Burn	Arc damage from any source is greatly increased.
Solar Burn	Solar damage from any source is greatly increased.
Void Burn	Void damage from any source is greatly increased.
Lightswitch	Minions of the Darkness deal much more melee damage.
Nightfall	You will face a relentless army that has never known defeat. If all players die, you will be returned to orbit.
Heroic	Enemies appear in greater numbers and are more aggressive.
Mythic	Heavily shielded and highly aggressive enemies appear in great numbers.



FIELD MANUAL
NAVIGATION

Navigating between the planets and the Moon takes place in the Director.

USING THE DIRECTOR



Whenever you return to orbit, click Set Destination to bring up the Director screen. This shows which areas are accessible to you at the moment. At first, you can only choose between Earth and the Tower, but as you progress through the game, more options appear. Choosing a planet brings up a map of that location, along with its available missions. Once you have chosen your next destination and set up the difficulty, if applicable, click the Launch button to fly to the landing zone.

An exclamation mark appears on a location if there is something new available or an objective to complete. The Director also displays whether your friends are currently playing at each site. Next to the Tower, another icon lets you know if there are items waiting for you at the Postmaster.

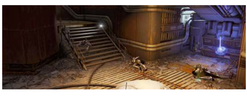
MISSION TYPES

Within the Director, you can select from a wide variety of gameplay modes: Story, Patrol, Strike, Raid, and PvP (Crucible).

Story Missions

Fireteam: 1-3

Cooperative



Story missions take place on Earth, the Moon, Venus, and Mars. Story and Patrol missions make up the single-player portion of Destiny, but they can be played with up to three players cooperatively. Major nodes must be played so you can understand the story and advance the fastest. Minor nodes are voluntary missions.

Patrol Missions

Fireteam: 1-3

Cooperative

Access one of the many Guardian Beacons on a planet's surface to acquire a mission from the Tower. You can acquire Patrol missions by locating beacons that friendly Guardians placed on the surface of each planet. Use your Ghost's Navigation overlay to locate nearby Patrol Beacons.

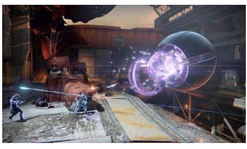
Several Public Events also occur on each planet. If you see one pop up while you're exploring a public area, simply join in to participate. Help your fellow Guardians with the objective, and earn a Bronze, Silver, or Gold Tier based on how well the group does.

Be sure to grab a reward from the Vanguard for completing your first Gold Tier Public Event each day. You can collect this from the Postmaster up at the Tower.

Strike Missions

Fireteam: 1-3

Cooperative



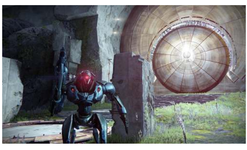
Strikes are challenging PvE missions, and you can select them in a few ways. Each planet has Strikes that can be accessed, and there is a special category of Vanguard Strikes visible on the main Director screen that lets you tackle a random Strike at a fixed level: 18, 20, 22, or 24.

You may also have access to a special Strike that has additional difficulty settings enabled and distributes bonus rewards if completed. This shows up on the Director beside other daily missions.

Raid Missions

Fireteam: 6

Cooperative



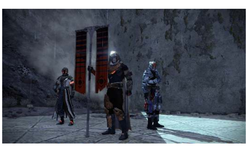
Raids are the toughest PvE content in the game, and they require a full Fireteam of six players to tackle. Raid content is timed in the sense that your progress resets weekly, so you have a full week to complete and earn the rewards from a Raid.

Raids contain checkpoints that store your progress after each major encounter. You can use checkpoints to tackle a difficult Raid over the course of several play sessions. Bring your best buddies for Raids, since you must be coordinated in order to complete them!

The Crucible

Fireteam: 1-3 or 1-6

Competitive

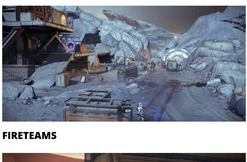


The Crucible is a single entry in the Director that leads to a set of playlists for competitive PvP. You may also occasionally encounter special time-limited PvP events, such as the Iron Banner PvP sessions. There are multiple PvP modes; see the Crucible chapter for more details on each.

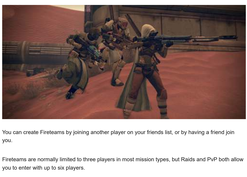
PUBLIC VS. PRIVATE ZONES

While exploring planets, you may pass between areas that are public or private.

Public areas are almost all planetary surface areas, though a few are set within interiors. In a public area, you can encounter other friendly Guardians roaming the world. Private areas are typically interior areas that are used for various Story and Strike missions. Within these, only players in your Fireteam are present, and you won't encounter other Guardians.



FIRETEAMS

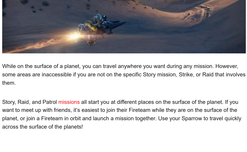


You can create Fireteams by joining another player on your friends list, or by having a friend join you.

Fireteams are normally limited to three players in most mission types, but Raids and PvP both allow you to enter with up to six players.

You can invite new players to your friends list directly in-game. To do so, target another player, and bring up the Options menu to send a friend request. The Fireteam leader decides which missions to launch, as well as their difficulty.

TRAVEL



While on the surface of a planet, you can travel anywhere you want during any mission. However, some areas are inaccessible if you are not on the specific Story mission, Strike, or Raid that involves them.

Story, Raid, and Patrol missions all start you at different places on the surface of the planet. If you want to meet up with friends, it's easiest to join their Fireteam while they are on the surface of the planet, or join a Fireteam in orbit and launch a mission together. Use your Sparrow to travel quickly across the surface of the planets!

TOWER

ABOUT THE TOWER

The Tower is the only home many Guardians everknow.

To the people of the City, it stands as a promise that we can endure. The merchants and citizens who fill its plazas and halls are as dedicated to the reclamation of our worlds as the Guardians who venture into the Darknessbeyond.

A GUARDIAN RISES

Level 1 Story / Cosmodrome, Old Russia, Earth

Enemy Race: Fallen

Rewards: XP Bonus

Mission Unlocked: Restoration

Objective: Enter the Wall

The adventure begins at the Cosmodrome in Old Russia, as a Ghost wakes a Guardian—You. This Ghost is your companion for the duration of this journey. You have been gone for a long time, so it is up to the Ghost to guide you—providing light wherever necessary. Follow the path of wreckage into the wall ahead, closing the Left Stick to sprint. As you move into the darkness, your Ghost lights the way.

Objective: Find a Weapon

Location: The Breach

Stick to the walkway until you can see Fallen in the distance.

Objective: Grab the Rifle

Follow the Ghost around the corner to find your first weapon, a low level auto rifle. This is placed in your Primary Weapon slot. Fallen swarm the areas ahead, so proceed with a little more caution.

Objective: Fight through the Wall

The Level 1 Fallen Dregs are relatively easy kills, but it's still important to keep moving and kill them quickly. Follow the objective markers around the next corners, as Fallen Dregs drop into your path. Use your new rifle to mow them down. Press the Melee button to perform a melee attack or, remember that gun too close. One drops nearly on top of you, creating a great opportunity to use the melee.

Melee Attack

You can take down these Dregs relatively easily with a quick melee attack. Press the Melee button when you're next to an enemy to perform a basic melee. Melee attacks are fast. Keep this in mind throughout your adventures. As you level up your Guardian, the melee attack remains very effective against many foes.

The destroyed wall ahead offers little cover as you dispose of the Fallen in the next room. A Level-1 Fallen Dredgen and the Dregs. He is a bit tougher to take down, but a few rounds from your weapon will eliminate the nuisance.

Reloading and Dropped Ammo

Press the Reload button to keep your weapon loaded any time you get an opportunity. Get into the habit of reloading, and once you have Special and Heavy ammo, keep them conserved for the right moments. Reloading is automatic when your weapon is empty, but those moments can be dangerous. Reload when it seems appropriate. Special Ammo and Power Ammo drop Special and Heavy Weapon. Keep an eye out for these lying around, and don't worry about hogging them, as each player has his or her own private loot stream.

A shield sits on the right side of the path ahead, just across the bridge. Collect the loot inside. Chests always grab you Glimmer and, in some cases, include a piece of equipment. This time, you get your first Special Weapon. The type of weapon you get can fundamentally change the way you fight. The Hunter's sniper rifle enables you to fight from far away, while the Warlock's shotgun allows powerful close-combat attacks.

Weapon Types for the Classes

The different types of Weapons in Destiny are not specific to one class or another. Hunters, Titans, and Warlocks can use any armament they desire. You should base the types of gears you use on your preferred play style. Here's a guide, how pros and Weapons work:

Trip mines crisscross the corridor around the next corner. Crouch and move underneath them as you approach the door. Use your Special Weapon to take down the Dredgen Taskmaster. Avoid more trip mines as you ascend around the columns, eliminating the remaining Fallen.

Crouch

The Crouch button puts Guardians into a lower stance, allowing you to duck under the trip mines in this corridor. This position is also good for ducking behind low cover. Press the button while running to perform a slide maneuver.

Approach the big, open room ahead cautiously, as several Vanguard and Dregs drop into the arena. You don't need to overcome your enemy too much, but you can take out each one with a melee attack or two, depending on your class. Dodge from side to side to avoid their slow projectiles as you take down each one. Once the room is clear, exit through the door on the right.

Incoming

Many of your foes have a grenade ability, so be aware of incoming explosives. A grenade explosion can damage you even when it thrown in your vicinity. Quickly move out of the area to avoid taking damage.

Following the hallway through another door leads back to the outdoors in The Divide. As you step outside, drop ships enter from the left, dropping Fallen into the Fallen Strike.

Objective: Fight through the Fallen

Location: The Divide

The Fallen land on the other side of the structure ahead, which is accessible around the left or right sides. Pick off as many as you can from a distance, using cover to avoid their attacks. You can use a Special Weapon to receive health if things get overwhelming. More Fallen, including Shanks, join the fight as you make your way to the far-left corner. These enemies continually drop in as you clear them out, so it's possible to do some grinding to increase your level. Fight your way into the next building.

Using the Tracker

Use the radar in the HUD's upper-left corner to note ally and enemy locations. Blue circles represent another Guardian or friendly NPCs. Green notes a friendly player who is a Fireteam member. Red indicates foes. Yellow shows objectives. Keep an eye out of one of these colors when the HUD's upper-left corner is flashing or pulsing.

A section of the radar lights up red when a foe is present in the corresponding direction, so glance over whenever you get a chance. When the player has an active mission, the objective is also displayed on the radar. Follow the yellow marker to the objective in the Fallen Use this to find your way through the expansive worlds. When the arrow is directly above, you're headed in the correct direction.

First Upgrade

The experience you've gained up to this point should get you to Level 2, allowing you to activate your first ability. Access the Inventory screen, and select the first upgrade in the subclass, which gives you a powerful Melee.

Objective: Find the Ship

Location: Dock 13

Move through the Dock 13 hallways, following the objective markers that pop up along the way. Fallen Dregs and a Vandal occupy a room ahead. Reserve the munitions here by grabbing your new grenade ability. Finish them off as you move through the control rooms of Dock 13.

Objective: Clear Out the Fallen

At the final room, a ship waits in the corner, and Fallen are attempting to park the living down. Dregs, Vandals, and Shanks join Nahu, a Devil Captain. Captains have an Arc Shield, so a weapon with Arc damage eliminates the shield more quickly. However, one hit with the sniper rifle also destroys it. Duck into the previous rooms whenever necessary as you deal with the Fallen threat. Once the area is clear, your Ghost gets the ship working.

Mission Summary

After you complete the final objective, summary screens tells up your accomplishments from the mission. Experience, Glimmer, and Items you gain from the mission appear on the Experience and Rewards screens. The Mission Summary screen also shows how many Glimmer you earned for completing the mission. The Summary screen provides information about the progress you make toward Upgrades and Abilities.

Objective: The Vanguard

Location: The Tower, Last City

After the tutorial mission, you are taken to the Tower. Your first destination is the Tower Vanguard. Proceed straight ahead, down the stairs, and into the bank room. A mentor for each Class is located around the table. Approach the elite Guardian with the green icon. This signifies that your current mission objective is with this character. Press the Interact button to speak with him. You have to return to this person often to get your reward. Collect your welcoming gift by selecting the equipment, which completes the objective and earns you experience and Glimmer.

Objective: Equip New Armor

Access your Character screen, highlight your new armor, and select it to equip the new piece. This rewards you with more experience.

Objective: The Gunsmith

Return back out to the Tower Plaza and find the Gunsmith in the plaza's southeast corner. He gives you a choice of four Primary Weapons.

Objective: Equip New Weapon

Again, access your Character screen, highlight the new weapon and select it to equip it.

Objective: The Shipwright

The Shipwright is located in the Tower Hangar on the south side. Take the stairs in the plaza's southeast corner to find the Tower Hangar and find the Shipwright up the left steps. Talk to her to receive the Arcadia Class campaign.

Objective: Quit to Orbit

Quit out to Orbit to reach the Director. Here you can travel to the different planets, select Crucible, or other special missions. For now, you can only go to Earth and learn how the first mission, Restoration, located in The Divide.

The Director: How to Traverse the Solar System

When your Guardian returns to Orbit, the Director screen appears. From here, you select your next destination, whether it's back to the Tower or one of the planets. Choosing a planet brings up a map of the corresponding location with the available Missions.

TOWER

OVERVIEW

The Tower is a third-person social hub for the Guardians of Destiny. Show off your gear, purchase new equipment and items, or team up with other players to take on the enemy combatants together. Much is offered here, so spend your hard-won earnings carefully. Earn Reputation with the Vanguard, Crucible, Cryptarch, and Factions to unlock better gear for purchase. Stock at the shops is replenished frequently, so be sure to check in often.

Glimmer: Glimmer is the main currency in the Last City. You earn it by completing objectives, selling goods, and you can find it around the solar system. It is shared between all your characters.

Vanguard Marks: Awarded by high-level Strikes, Daily and Weekly Heroic activities, and exchanging materials with Vanguard Quartermaster. Level 18 is required and there is a maximum of 100 per week. Vanguard Marks can buy stronger gear.

Vanguard Reputation: Awarded by completing Vanguard Bounties. Unlocks more powerful gear for purchase.

Crucible Marks: Awarded by high-level Crucible matches and exchanging materials with the Crucible Quartermaster. Level 18 is required and there is a maximum or 100 per week. Crucible Marks can buy stronger gear.

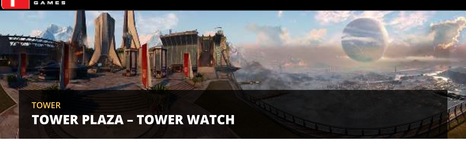
Crucible Reputation: Earned with Crucible Bounties. Improves Crucible rank, unlocking powerful gear.

Crypto-Archaeology Reputation: Awarded by decoding Engrams with the Cryptarch. Increasing your rank unlocks new Engrams for purchase.

Factions: Once you reach Level 20, purchase a cloak, mark, or bond from your Faction of choice. You can then purchase Emblems and Crucible gear with Crucible Marks. Faction choices include New Monarchy, Future War Cult, and Dead Orbit, and you can find them at Tower North and Tower Hangar.

Faction Reputation: Earned by completing Bounties with a cloak, mark, or bond equipped from a given Faction.

Mote of Light: Obtained by continuing to earn XP after Level 20.



TOWER

TOWER PLAZA – TOWER WATCH

The Tower Watch is situated in the center of the Tower and holds the basic amenities that you need for your adventures.

GUNSMITH

Accepted Currency: Glimmer

Reputation: N/A

There are few weapons that Banshee-44 has not seen, and fewer still that he cannot fix.

Goods

Weapons: A mix of level-appropriate guns in exchange for Glimmer.

Miscellaneous: Ammo Synthesis, Special Ammo Synthesis, Heavy Ammo Synthesis replenishes the corresponding weapon's ammunition. There is a five-minute cooldown after using one, so use these items wisely.

CRYPTARCH

Accepted Currency: Glimmer

Reputation: Cryptarch

Crypto-archeologists decode the past and our enemies, seeking new discoveries in matter Engrams and Artifacts returned by Guardians.

Goods

Acquire Engrams: Purchase Engrams with Glimmer and raise your Reputation with the Cryptarch. Raise your rank to purchase better Engrams. The Cryptarch rewards Guardians for interesting finds. Return Artifacts that you find through missions in exchange for Glimmer.

BOUNTY TRACKER

When a Guardian's prowess in the field is required, Bounties are posted here.

Once you reach Level 4, the Bounty Tracker offers a selection of Vanguard and Crucible Bounties. Gain Crucible and Vanguard Reputation as well as experience by taking on these extra missions. Choose wisely, as you are limited to five Bounties at a time. Access them inside your Inventory, where you can abandon them at any time to make room for more. Note that additional Bounties are available once you reach Level 12. You can find a list of Bounties at the end of this chapter.

POSTMASTER

Deliveries and messages are left with the Postmaster to be collected by Guardians when their travels bring them home.

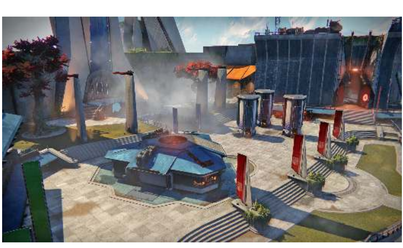
This is where you collect rewards, messages, and sometimes new Bounties.

SPECIAL ORDERS

Tess is a broker of special goods delivered to the Tower from the City, and beyond. These special deliveries can occasionally be found here.

VAULTS

The Vaults provide safe storage for armor, weapons, and general items. These are accessible to all of your characters. Give your new Guardian a leg up by transferring a sweet piece of equipment or item to his or her inventory.



TOWER

TOWER PLAZA – HALL OF GUARDIANS

Inside the lower level's corridor, high-level Crucible gear becomes available as you increase your rank within the Crucible. Farther back, the three class Vanguards wait for Guardians to check in.Crucible Handler

CRUCIBLE HANDLER

Accepted Currency: Crucible Marks

Reputation: The Crucible

A veteran of the Crucible, Lord Shaxx both arms and oversees those who seek to forge themselves within it.

Goods

Crucible Armor: Legendary armor in exchange for Crucible Marks. Raise your Crucible rank to purchase better gear.

Crucible Invitation: Invitations to special Crucible events are offered here.

CRUCIBLE QUARTERMASTER

Accepted Currency: Crucible Marks

Reputation: The Crucible

The Crucible is a demanding place, and Arcite 99-40 assists Shaxx in arming Guardians to withstand it.

Goods

Crucible Weapons: Legendary weapons in exchange for Crucible Marks. Raise your Crucible rank to purchase better weapons.

Vehicles: Rare Sparrows with increased durability and speed, once you reach a Crucible rank of 3.

Material Exchange: Exchange Spinmetal, Helium Filaments, Spirit Bloom, or Relic Iron for valuable Crucible Marks and Reputation.

HUNTER VANGUARD

Accepted Currency: Glimmer, Vanguard Marks

Reputation: Vanguard

Saddled with Tower duty, Cayde-6 dutifully advises and arms Hunters who seek him out.

Goods

Hunter Armor: Exchange Glimmer for lower-level armor geared toward the Hunter class.

Vanguard Armor: Raise your Vanguard rank for Legendary armor. Requires Vanguard Marks to purchase.

Emblems: Purchase an Emblem specific to the Hunter class.

TITAN VANGUARD

Accepted Currency: Glimmer, Vanguard Marks

Reputation: Vanguard

A veteran Titan who coordinates the City's defenses, Zavala helps to outfit and mentor other Titans.

Goods

Titan Armor: Exchange Glimmer for lower-level armor geared toward the Titan class.

Vanguard Armor: Raise your Vanguard rank for Legendary armor. Requires Vanguard Marks to purchase.

Emblems: Purchase an Emblem specific to the Titan class.

WARLOCK VANGUARD

Accepted Currency: Glimmer, Vanguard Marks

Reputation: Vanguard

Respected among all Orders, Ikora Rey tutors new Warlocks with a lifetime of hard-earned knowledge.

Goods

Warlock Armor: Exchange Glimmer for lower-level armor geared toward the Warlock class.

Vanguard Armor: Raise your Vanguard rank for Legendary armor. Requires Vanguard Marks to purchase.

Emblems: Purchase an Emblem specific to the Warlock Class.

TOWER

NORTH TOWER

Follow the left corridor to reach the North Tower, where the Speaker's desk sits at the top of a staircase. This area also offers extremely rare items for sale if you visit on the right day.

THE SPEAKER

Accepted Currency: Motes of Light

Reputation: N/A

An ancient scholar of the Traveler, the Speaker keeps special items for Guardians who explore the Light's mysteries.

Goods

Exotic Armor: Legendary Titan Marks, Hunter Cloaks, and Warlock Bonds are offered to those who have reached Level 20 and beyond.

Emblems: Exchange your precious Motes of Light for a unique Emblem.

NEW MONARCHY

Accepted Currency: Crucible Marks

Reputation: New Monarchy

The New Monarchy gathers adherents in the Tower, and arms them well for the Crucible.

Goods

Emblems: Purchase New Monarchy Emblems to show off your allegiance. These require a New Monarchy rank to purchase.

Crucible Gear: You can buy Legendary armor and weapons with your Crucible Marks. In exchange for a big chunk of Glimmer, grab a New Monarchy cloak, mark, or bond that allows you to earn New Monarchy Reputation for completing Bounties.

GUARDIAN OUTFITTER

Accepted Currency: Glimmer

Reputation: N/A

An artist with micromaterial programs, Eva provides Guardians ways to customize their appearance.

Goods

Emblems: Choose from a wide selection of Emblems to further customize your look.

Shaders: Once you attain Level 20, Shaders can be applied to your armor to change the look without affecting the stats.

TOWER

TOWER HANGAR

Visit the Tower Hangar to purchase new Sparrows and jumpships from the Shipwright. Increasing your Vanguard, Dead Orbit, and Future War Cult rank gets you access to some high-level gear inside the hangar.

SHIPWRIGHT

Accepted Currency: Glimmer

Reputation: N/A

The shipwrights of the Tower repair and recommission the ships of the City's Guardians.

Goods

Vehicles: Purchase an improved Sparrow for higher speed and greater durability.

Ship Blueprints: Once you reach Level 5, exchange Glimmer for a new jumpship. Show it off to your Fireteam as you fly to each destination.

VANGUARD QUARTERMASTER

Accepted Currency: Vanguard Marks

Reputation: Vanguard

Roni 55-30 maintains a stock of select weapons for those proven among the Vanguard.

Goods

Vanguard Weapons: Exchange your Vanguard Marks for high-powered Legendary weapons and armor after your reach Level 20 and increase your Vanguard rank.

Vehicles: You can choose from a few rare Sparrows once you raise your Vanguard rank.

Material Exchange: Exchange Spinmetal, Helium Filaments, Spirit Bloom, or Relic Iron for Vanguard Reputation and Vanguard Marks.

DEAD ORBIT

Accepted Currency: Crucible Marks, Glimmer

Reputation: Dead Orbit

Dead Orbit grudgingly maintains a presence in the Tower only to arm and outfit their champions in the Crucible.

Goods

Emblems: Purchase a Dead Orbit Emblem to show off your allegiance. These require a Dead Orbit rank to purchase.

Crucible Weapons: Obtaining a Dead Orbit rank and saving up your Crucible Marks allows you to purchase powerful weapons.

Crucible Armor: You can also buy Legendary armor with your Crucible Marks. In exchange for a chunk of Glimmer, grab a Dead Orbit cloak, mark, or bond that allows you to earn Dead Orbit Reputation for completing Bounties.

FUTURE WAR CULT

Accepted Currency: Crucible Marks

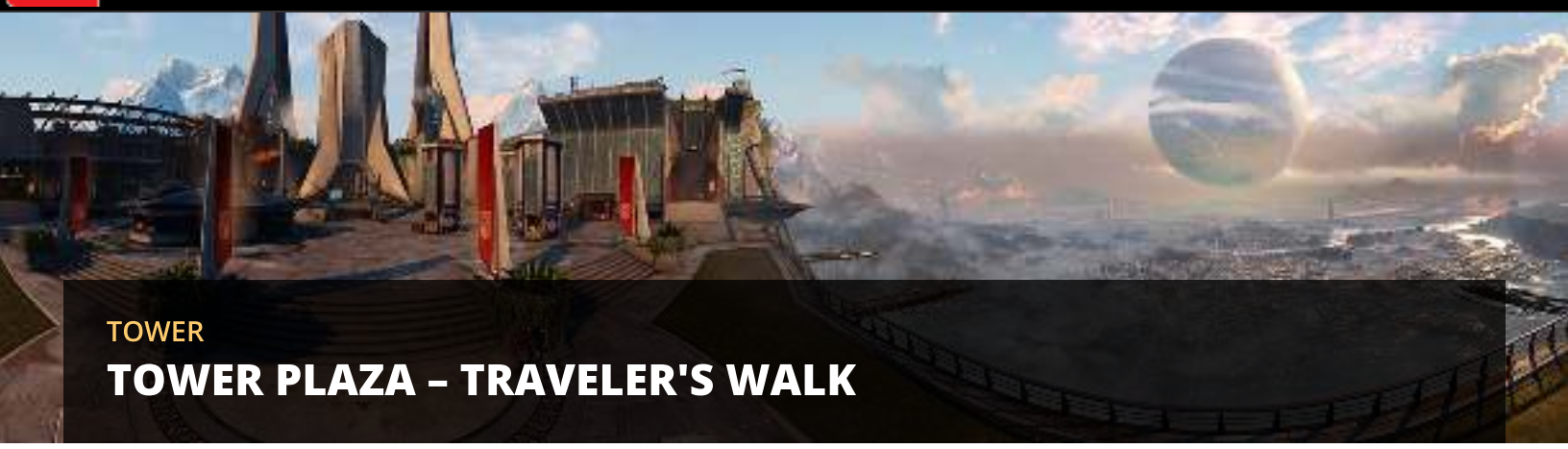
Reputation: Future War Cult

The War Cult has always been an open secret in the Tower, arming and advising those who represent them in the Crucible.

Goods

Emblems: Purchase a Future War Cult Emblem to show off your allegiance. These require a Future War Cult rank to purchase.

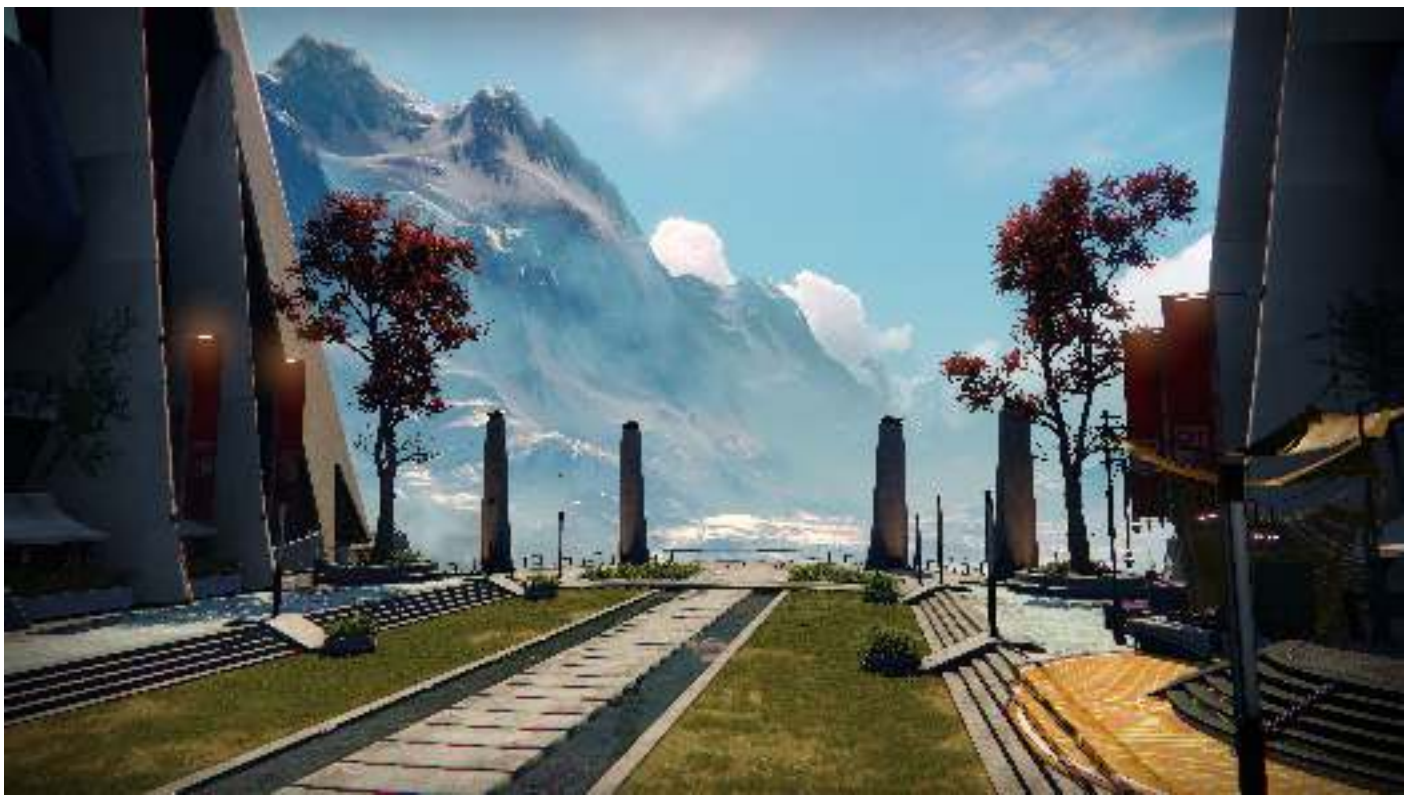
Crucible Weapons: High-powered Legendary weapons can be purchased with your Crucible Marks and a FWC rank.



TOWER

TOWER PLAZA – TRAVELER'S WALK

Destiny will feature special events such as Iron Banner and Nightfall Strikes that are available for a limited time. These events are paired with vendors that appear in the upper level of Tower Watch, offering special gear and items for related reputation and experience.



Bungie's Dead Ghost Hints

1: Tower Plaza - Tower Watch

HINT: Hey… Where do these stairs go?

2: Tower North

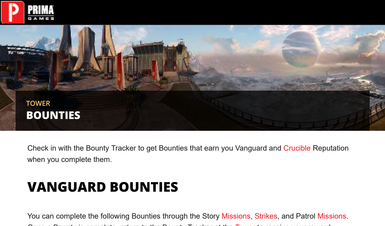
HINT: The Speaker knows many secrets.

3: Tower Plaza – Traveler's Walk

HINT: “I can see the frontier from here.”

4: Hall of Guardians

HINT: You passed it on your way in, don’t miss it on your way out.



TOWER

BOUNTIES

Check in with the Bounty Tracker to get Bounties that earn you Vanguard and Crucible Reputation when you complete them.

VANGUARD BOUNTIES

You can complete the following Bounties through the Story Missions, Strikes, and Patrol Missions. Once a Bounty is complete, return to the Bounty Tracker at the Tower to receive your reward.

Vanguard Bounties

Relic Harvest Cosmodrome	Collect 200 Sensor Mites in Cosmodrome.	Collect Golden Age sensor mites from our enemies in the Cosmodrome. They're drawn to power, so stronger enemies will contain more.
Relic Harvest - Moon	Collect 200 Impact Shards on the Moon.	Our enemies on the Moon gather strange meteor shards. Claim them for the City. Powerful enemies serve as collection points; they'll have more.
Relic Harvest - Venus	Collect 200 Pumice Threads on Venus.	Our enemies seem to value the pumice thread found on Venus. Gather it from the enemy dead. Powerful foes likely carry more.
Relic Harvest - Mars	Collect 200 Olympus Tears on Mars.	A lost machine fills Mars' air with Olympus Tears. They attach to Vex and Cabal tech, particularly if it's powerful. Kill enemies and harvest their Tears.
Patrol Cosmodrome	Complete 6 Patrol missions in the Cosmodrome.	There are problems out in the wilderness that only a Guardian can solve.
Patrol the Moon	Complete 6 Patrol missions on the Moon.	There are problems out in the wilderness that only a Guardian can solve.
Patrol Venus	Complete 6 Patrol missions on Venus.	There are problems out in the wilderness that only a Guardian can solve.
Patrol Mars	Complete 6 Patrol missions on Mars.	There are problems out in the wilderness that only a Guardian can solve.
One for All	Achieve Gold Tier rating in Public Events.	The only path to victory is cooperation. Show that you can work with other Guardians to achieve goals and eliminate threats.
Unstoppable	Earn 9000 Experience without dying.	It is not enough to simply fight. Guardians must survive. Show the Vanguard you have what it takes to maintain your resolve against all threats, and you will be rewarded.
Walking Tall	Complete any Strike without dying.	Guardians are powerful, but confidence can lead to recklessness. Prove you understand the value of control by not falling against our greatest threats.
It's All in the Head	Kill 100 enemies with precision damage.	Show your skill by removing threats with precise, measured aggression.
Cabal Command	Kill 10 Cabal Majors or Ultras.	There are countless targets on the battlefield. Focus on the Cabal's command units to weaken their resolve and test your own mettle.
Fallen Leaders	Kill 10 Fallen Majors or Ultras.	There are countless targets on the battlefield. Focus on the Fallen leaders to sow fear.
Exalted Hive	Kill 10 Hive Majors or Ultras.	There are countless targets on the battlefield. Focus on the Hive's champions to weaken their resolve.
Vex Minds	Kill 10 Vex Majors or Ultras.	Target the powerful Vex Minds to disrupt their command network.
Cleansing Light	Kill 3 or more enemies with a single super use, 20 times.	The Light is a gift with which to burn away the Darkness. Use it wisely, and your path forward will always be clear.
Body Dropper	Kill 100 enemies without dying.	If we are to defeat the Darkness, you must be able to face the hordes, unblinking. Venture into the wild and send our enemies a message they won't forget.
Knuckleduster	Melee-kill 30 enemies without dying.	Firearms are simply the tool. YOU are the weapon.
Predator and Prey	Kill 20 enemies without taking damage from them.	All Guardians can fight, but only the truly skilled can face our greatest dangers and walk away unscathed.
Overcharge	Kill 2 enemies at once with a Fusion Rifle, 20 times.	The technology used to create Fusion Rifles is volatile and open for experimentation. Push the limits to see what kind of trouble you can cause.
The Bigger They Are	Complete any Strike with the Heroic or Epic modifier active.	Greater challenges come with greater rewards.
TARGET: Sepiks Prime	Defeat Sepiks Prime in "The Devils' Lair" Strike on Earth.	There have been reports of an exalted Servitor hidden in the ruins of the Cosmodrome. Join with a Fireteam and eliminate this threat.
TARGET: Phogoth	Defeat Phogoth, the Untamed in "The Summoning Pits" Strike on the Moon.	The Hive are breeding a terrible abomination in their Summoning Pits. Join with other brave Guardians and face this horror.
TARGET: Sekrion	Defeat Nexus Mind Sekrion in the "Nexus" Strike on Venus.	Somewhere below the Academy on Venus, a powerful Vex Hydra is infecting the planet. Take a Fireteam to the Ishtar Sink and stop this machine before it spreads further.
TARGET: Aksor, Archon Priest	Defeat Aksor, Archon Priest in the "Winter's Run" Strike on Venus.	The House of Winter has liberated an Archon Priest from prison on the Reef. Rally a Fireteam and hunt him down.
TARGET: Valus Ta'aurc	Defeat Valus Ta'aurc in the "Cerberus Vae III" Strike on Mars.	Valus Ta'aurc, the Fleet Commander of the Cabal Siege Dancers, has been located outside of Freehold. Join with a Fireteam and eliminate Ta'aurc and his lieutenants.
TARGET: Skirdok, Eye of Oryx	Defeat Skirdok in the "Shrine of Oryx" mission on the Moon, with the Heroic or Epic modifier active.	Vanquish Sardok, custodian of the dread Shrine of Oryx.
TARGET: Merok, Eir Prince	Defeat Merok in the "Sword of Crota" mission on the Moon, with the Heroic or Epic modifier active.	End the malignant existence of Merok, whose every step is a transgression.
TARGET: Telthor, Unborn	Defeat the Telthor in the "Chamber of Night" mission on the Moon, with the Heroic or Epic modifier active.	Find the abomination called Telthor, Unborn and release the universe from the burden of its existence.
TARGET: Frigoris, Exiled Baron	Defeat Frigoris in the "Shrine of Oryx" mission on the Moon, with the Heroic or Epic modifier active.	Frigoris, an exiled Fallen Baron, has risked an assault on the Hive. It will be risky, but there may never be a better chance—track him through the Hellmouth and eliminate him.
TARGET: Graylika, Winter Baron	Defeat Graylika in "The Archive" mission on Venus, with the Heroic or Epic modifier active.	Graylika, a baron of the Fallen House of Winter, has been sighted near the Archive on Venus. Hunt him down and end his reign of terror.
TARGET: Simiks-3	Defeat Simiks-3 in "The Archive" mission on Venus, with the Heroic or Epic modifier active.	The Fallen Servitor, Simiks-3, is attempting to plunder the secrets of the Archive. Get to Venus and stop it, before the Academy's secrets are lost forever.
TARGET: Zydron, Gate Lord	Defeat Zydron in the "Eye of a Gate Lord" mission on Venus, with the Heroic or Epic modifier active.	Zydron protects the massive Vex portal at the apex of the Endless Steps. Find the portal, ascend the steps, and kill the Gate Lord.
TARGET: Primus Shai'aull	Defeat Primus Shau'ull in "The Garden's Spire" mission on Mars, with the Heroic or Epic modifier active.	The Consensus has sanctioned the assassination of Cabal leader Primus Sha'aull.
TARGET: Bracus Tha'aurn	Defeat Bracus Tha'aurn in "The Buried City" mission on Mars, with the Heroic or Epic modifier active.	A heavily armed Cabal expedition has made its way into the Buried City. Find them and defeat their leader, Bracus Tha'aurn, before they find what they're after.
TARGET: Prohibitive Mind	Defeat the Prohibitive Mind in the "Rising Tide" mission on Mars, with the Heroic or Epic modifier active.	The Prohibitive Mind is a danger to any Guardians brave enough to challenge the Vex. Journey to Mars and destroy it.
TARGET: Divisive Mind	Defeat the Divisive Mind in "The Black Garden" mission on Mars, with the Heroic or Epic modifier active.	As long as the Divisive Mind stands guard over the Black Garden, we will never be safe. Find it, kill it.

EXOTIC BOUNTIES

Once in a great while, you may find an Exotic Bounty, the completion of which is rewarded with an Exotic weapon or armor. The following table lists three possible Exotic Bounties.

Exotic Bounties

Name	Objective	Description
Shattered Memory Fragment	Track down Fireteam Tuyet's last stand.	One of our Venus patrols found a memory fragment on the remains of a destroyed Vex. This fragment concerns the final mission of Fireteam Tuyet, lost long ago on Venus' Shattered Coast. Perhaps one of their Ghosts can be recovered.
A Voice in the Wilderness	Search loot caches on Mars for clues.	A Hunter returning from Mars claims to have heard a voice coming from a sealed cache.
A Dubious Task	Talk to Ikora Rey.	The Warlock Vanguard, Ikora Rey, left a posting here - signed, handwritten, and asking for you.

CRUCIBLE BOUNTIES

The following Bounties are accomplished through Crucible gameplay. Once you complete a Bounty, return to the Bounty Tracker at the Tower to receive your reward.

Crucible Bounties

Shake the Pillars	Defeat 25 Titans in the Crucible.	Combat skills are honed through experience, and Guardians know there is no greater test than the trials of Crucible. Face your fellow Guardians in combat and prove your might.
The Wild Hunt	Defeat 25 Hunters in the Crucible.	Combat skills are honed through experience, and Guardians know there is no greater test than the trials of Crucible. Face your fellow Guardians in combat and prove your skill.
Broken Scholar	Defeat 25 Warlocks in the Crucible.	Combat skills are honed through experience, and Guardians know there is no greater test than the trials of Crucible. Face your fellow Guardians in combat and prove your worth.
Longshot	Defeat 15 Guardians with headshots using a Sniper Rifle.	Patience and a keen eye are hallmarks of an expert marksman. Teach your fellow Guardians that they cannot hide.
Ash and Dust	Defeat 15 Guardians with a Rocket Launcher.	Command the battlefield with heavy munitions. Familiarize yourself with Crux/Lomar's array of rocket launchers and teach your fellow Guardians how to take punishment.
Pull the Pin	Defeat 20 Guardians with Grenades.	Learn how to use your grenade abilities for maximum effect.
Headhunter	Defeat 50 Guardians with headshots.	To eliminate a threat quickly, you must have unwavering focus and no mercy. Aim for the head; your enemy will surely do the same.
Never See You Coming	Defeat 10 Guardians from behind.	Learning to strike at the opportune time will go a long way toward ensuring your continued survival.
Throw Down	Defeat 20 Guardians with your melee attack.	Anyone can face adversity with an arsenal at their disposal. Close-quarters combat is a true reckoning of grit.
Light the Way	Defeat 15 Guardians using a Super.	Channel your Light to unleash devastation on your enemies. Show them what true power is, so they can truly understand what it means to be a Guardian of the City.
Dominion	Complete 5 Control Matches.	Compete for honor. For pride. For survival. And master the strategies of battlefield control to win even greater Guardian.
Reclamation	Complete 5 Salvage Matches.	Compete for honor. For pride. For survival. Learn to salvage the secrets of our past by challenging your fellow Guardians in a hunt for relics.
Stay Golden	Complete 5 Rumble Matches.	Compete for honor. For pride. For survival. Test yourself in unrelenting combat to sharpen your resolve and find the limits of your courage.
Death or Glory	Complete 5 Clash Matches.	Compete for honor. For pride. For survival. Join with other Guardians to test your teamwork and combat skills.
All For One	Complete 5 Skirmish Matches.	Compete for honor. For pride. For survival. Band together and face a rival Fireteam in heated combat to test your mettle.
First Blood	Earn 3 First Blood medals.	There is no room for fear. Advance without hesitation.
In the Zone	Capture 10 Zones in Control.	Skill is important, but teamwork and the ability to control a combat zone are the keys to victory. Show your fellow Guardians that strategy is as powerful as any weapon.
Relic Hunter	Participate in 10 Salvage Zone captures.	You cannot afford to be distracted by thoughts of glory. Prove that you can stay focused on the mission.
Forged in Fire	Win 3 Crucible Matches.	Claim victory in the fires of the Crucible.
Back Scratcher	Earn 50 Assists in the Crucible.	Fight as a unit and protect your Fireteam. Individual glory will only lead to defeat.
Stopping Power	Earn 10 Buckshot Bruiser medals.	Find a nice little room and start a massacre.
Target Practice	Earn 10 Gunslinger medals.	A quick draw and true aim will serve you well. Show you've got the reflexes and steady hand needed to survive in the wild.
Electrocutioner	Earn 10 Fusion Rifle Sprees in the Crucible.	It takes patience and unwavering nerve to expertly wield a fusion rifle. Test your resolve.
No Riding Zone	Defeat 10 Guardians on Vehicles.	Track enemy vehicles, and learn to dismount the riders by force.
Party's Over	Earn 5 Enforcer medals.	Removing hardened killers from the battlefield is key to victory. Track down your main threats and put an end to their sprees.
That's How I Roll	Earn 5 Multikill medals.	Eliminate threats en masse to break their spirits and gain the momentum.
Revengeance	Earn 5 Postmortem medals.	Violence breeds violence. Take your revenge on anyone who defeats you.

EARTH

OVERVIEW

Our home, broken and lost. A wide world, once familiar and welcoming, now a wild frontier littered with fading hope and endless dangers.

When the Darkness came, and our Golden Age began its devastating collapse, Earth was the last to fall. And when the Traveler gave its final gasp, and pushed the Darkness from our system, Earth stood, ravaged and weary, as a bastion of hope. Survivors, what few there were, made their way home, eventually settling beneath the Traveler to start anew.

Now, as Guardians grow bolder and the last safe City, nestled beneath the Traveler's silent shell, looks beyond its walls in search of a brighter future, new adventures call. And though the Fallen and other threats may pick at the bones of all we were, or lay claim to the wilds we once tamed, a simple truth remains…

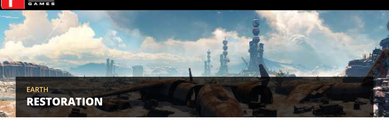
These are our lands to be explored and reclaimed. This is our home. And we will take it back.

Resource:

Spinmetal Leaves

Enemy Races (Faction):

Fallen (House of Devils), Hive (Blood of Oryx, The Hidden Swarm)



RESTORATION

Level 2 Story / The Steppes, Old Russia, Earth

Enemy Race: Fallen

Suggested Damage Types: Arc, Solar (Epic)

Rewards: XP Bonus

Missions Unlocked: The Dark Within, The Warmind

Defeat the Archon	+1 Vandal (Archon's health reaches 70%)+1 Vandal (Archon's health reaches 40%)	The Vandals are increased in number as well as in Vitality and aggression.

Mission Difficulty

As you select a mission, an information box indicates the level of the enemies you will face. A number close to your character's level receives a Normal rating. You can increase the difficulty by selecting the middle button before choosing to launch. A level slightly above your character is listed as Hard, and it then progresses to Very Hard and Impossible, requiring you to level up before proceeding. Increasing the difficulty raises the enemies' levels. Plus, it adds Mission Modifiers. The Heroic and Epic modifiers cause enemies to appear in greater numbers and behave more aggressively. On Epic, more enemies are equipped with shields. Later, additional modifiers are added to increase the challenge in even more ways.

Objective: Recon the Crash Site

Location: The Steppes

The crash site is located ahead in the far corner, on the other side of the rock formation. Fallen Dregs, Vandals, and Shanks wait to the left, right, and near the ship. Once you clear the area of enemies, approach the objective marker and deploy your Ghost by holding the Activate button.

Objective: Access Cosmodrome Network

Fallen ships steadily drop more foes around the area, so keep moving or get ready to fight another wave. Follow the markers into the nearby dilapidated building, following the path down into the basement. Eliminate the handful of Fallen before you find the information hub in the far room. Deploy your Ghost to do some scanning.

Public vs. Private Zones

The Steppes is a public zone, therefore other players may also be fighting the nearby Fallen. You can choose to help your fellow Guardians or you may receive assistance from them. This differs from the buildings through which you fight, as they are private—only you and Fireteam members are present.

Objective: Find a Warp Drive

Location: Dock 13

You must return to Dock 13 to get the part you need for your ship. Once you're back outside, turn right, head toward the building on the other side of the Steppes, and enter the structure. Follow the path back to the Dock 13 hangar, where Fallen have occupied the area. Defeat the Fallen as you stick close to the entrance, ducking inside the previous room if things get hairy.

Gold Chests

As you pass through the building toward Dock 13, a Gold Chest rests in plain view atop a desk. These Gold Chests are hidden throughout the solar system, and they contain better loot than standard chests. Find five of these chests on each planet, though the others are much tougher to find than this first one. A full list of Gold Chest locations are listed with each planet in this guide.

Darkness Zone

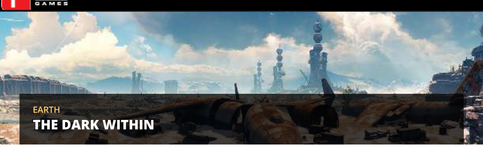
The Dock 13 Hangar is designated a Darkness Zone, as the game notes with an icon in the middle of the screen with the words Respawning Restricted. If you die in this zone, you return to the start and respawn in 30 seconds instead of 5. This makes a Fireteam even more valuable in these areas, as an immediate revive is better than waiting a half minute and restarting at the previous checkpoint. Note that there are times later on in which zones are split into multiple checkpoints, such as an objective with more than one wave of enemies.

Objective: Defeat the Archon

Once you take care of the first enemy wave, Riksis, Archon of the Fallen House of Devils, shows up with a crew of Vandals. He is an elite version of a Captain, which makes him bigger and stronger. If you have an effective long-range weapon, pick away at his health from the entrance. Once his health reaches 70% and then 40%, the Vandals are reinforced.

Dodge to the side to avoid his weapon fire as you eat away at his health. Be careful if you move in for a melee attack, as he has a stomp maneuver that pushes you backward. Once you defeat him, clear out the remaining Fallen to complete the mission. As the timer counts down, collect any loot that remains, or exit to Orbit.

Return to the Cryptarch at the Tower to exchange the House Banners artifact for 200 Glimmer.



THE DARK WITHIN

Level 3 Story / Steppes, Old Russia, Earth

Enemy Races: Fallen, Hive

Suggested Damage Types: Arc, Solar

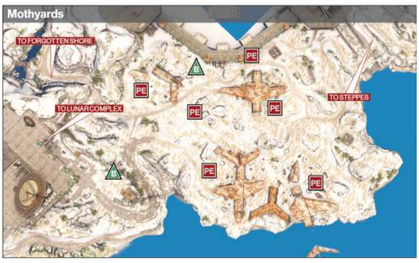
Rewards: XP Bonus

Mission Unlocked: Explore Cosmodrome

Search the Complex	+3 Thrall	These guys are more aggressive and tougher to take down, so don't take this encounter lightly.
Kill the Hive Wizard – First Room	+3 Thrall+1 Acolyte	The Acolytes are more aggressive with their rifles, so be sure to use cover to minimize damage.
Kill the Hive Wizard – Second Room	+3 Thrall+3 Acolytes	This final room is even more crowded with the Hive and its brood. Use the doorway for cover as you pick away at the foes.

Patrol Beacons are available only during the Patrol activity.

PE Public Events frequency: 25-35 minutes



Objective: Head to Skywatch

Location: Mothyards

You are dropped into the Steppes, just a short distance from Mothyards. Run to the left through the ravine, past an airplane graveyard, and up the hill to reach your first destination. Fight past the Fallen Captain who guards the entrance, and follow the objective markers into the building. Wind your way through a couple rooms to find an overhead door shut tight.

Objective: Unlock the Gate

Once you're prompted, use your Ghost to get the door open. After some time, it opens, so proceed into the Darkness Zone.

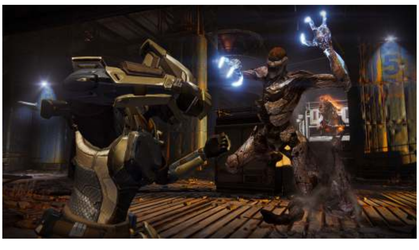
Objective: Search the Complex

Location: Lunar Complex

Run up the steps and cautiously enter the next room. Prepare your close-range weapon, as a horde of Hive Thrall charges your location. An auto rifle or shotgun are both effective against the Thrall wave. A melee attack against each also works, but be careful to avoid getting surrounded. Push through them and take down the Hive Acolytes that hide out on the other side of the room. As you move up another set of stairs, your Ghost informs you of a Hive Wizard ahead.

Objective: Kill the Hive Wizard

At the top of the stairs, Thrall immediately attack, while Acolytes litter the room ahead. Gotra, the Hive Wizard, is well protected by its brood in the next room to the left. Pick off the closer Hive from the relative safety of the control room. After you clear out the first room, move up to the next entrance as more Thrall and Acolytes attack.

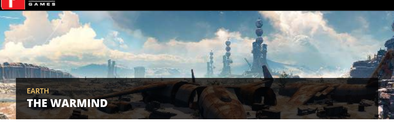


Enemy Shields

One enemy type from each race always has a shield, such as the Wizard's Solar shield. Using a weapon with the same damage type as the shield expedites destroying it. Once the shield is down, eliminate the enemy quickly, or the shield will regenerate. With the Epic Mission Modifier, another enemy type from each race equips a different shield. At this difficulty, using the wrong damage type delivers only 50% damage. Note that you cannot hit enemies' weak spots while their shields are up.

The Wizard floats among its brood, firing a darkness blast from behind a Solar shield. Watch for the cloud of darkness that is cast nearby. This heals the Hive and poisons Guardians who enter the haze—damaging and slowing you down. Use grenades and super abilities on the boss when they're available. Retreat when your health gets low, and continue to pound at it until it falls, at which point any remaining Hive are eliminated.

Return the Warping Claws to your Vanguard for a choice of armor.



THE WARMIND

Level 4 Story / The Steppes, Old Russia, Earth

Enemy Race: Fallen

Suggested Damage Types: Arc, Solar (Epic)

Rewards: XP Bonus

Missions Unlocked: The Last Array, The Devils' Lair Strike, Moon (The Dark Beyond)

Infiltrate the Skywatch	-2 Sword Vandals+3 Stealth Vandals-3 Dreg+3 Rifle Vandals	Keep track of the Stealth Vandals, as they can easily sneak up on you. At the same time, you must take cover from the rifle Vandals. If possible, use melee attacks against the invisible foes to reveal their location, but keep cover between you and the ranged enemies.
Infiltrate the Skywatch (Starwell)	+1 Sword Vandal	Do not let up after the initial encounter.
Resist the Fallen	-2 Dregs+2 Rifle Vandals	The rifle Vandals are tougher to take down than the Dregs are.
Resist the Fallen – Wave 2	-4 Dregs+4 Rifle Vandals	Take cover from the rifle Vandals, as they are skilled marksmen. On Epic, Shanks get a Solar shield—just in case the fight isn't tough enough already.
Resist the Fallen – Wave 3	+1 Servitor+3 Dregs	With another Servitor healing the nearby Dregs, it's best to take down these enemies quickly.

Objective: Find the Vehicle Grid

Location: Mothyards

Once again, you are dropped into the Steppes at the start of the mission. Make your way over to Mothyards and find the small shack on the left. Deploy your Ghost at the computer inside to get the vehicle grid back online. This gives you access to your Sparrow.

Objective: Reach the Forgotten Shore

Location: Forgotten Shore

Summon your vehicle and ride it through the wrecked airplanes of the Mothyards to a narrow opening near the zone's opposite corner. Follow this winding path back to Forgotten Shore.

Objective: Scan Fallen Amplifiers

The two amplifiers are marked on your head-up display. One is located atop the nearby ship, and another resides inside the dilapidated building farther down the coast. Both are well-guarded by Fallen, including Captains. Don't go straight at the first objective without thinning some of the opposition. Instead, jump onto the deck at the doorway on the left, and use it as cover as you clear the area. At the second location, use the cover as you move toward the building to take down the Fallen. Have your Ghost scan both amplifiers to continue your mission.

Objective: Infiltrate the Skywatch

Location: Terrestrial Complex

Your next objective takes you into the Terrestrial Complex at the top of the hill. Follow the road up to the right and wind your way to the entrance, which starts a Darkness Zone. Fallen litter the entire complex, so stay vigilant. Remember, death means getting reset at the start of this zone. A Captain provides the toughest challenge at the start. Take out his minions before focusing your firepower his way.

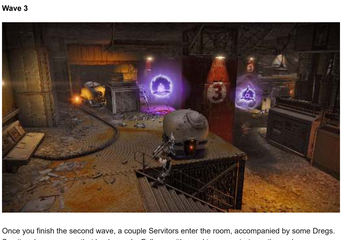
Objective: Resist the Fallen – Wave 1

Move up the stairs and enter the final room to find that the Fallen are tapping into a computer on the left platform. Use the equipment and pillars for cover as you take down the Dregs, Stealth Vandal, and Captain. Then, deploy your Ghost at the computer so he can assess the situation. This may take some time, so you must defend him from the Fallen.

Wave 2

A big wave of Fallen appears from the other side of the room. Vandals and Dregs fight from the middle of the room, Captains fire from afar, and Shanks join in midway, immediately closing in on their target. Keep an eye out for the invisible Stealth Vandals as you work on the middle Fallen. Taking down enough of the Fallen causes the Captains to fall back to the other side of the room. This way, you can focus on them after you clear out most of the opposition.

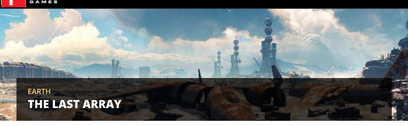
Wave 3



Once you finish the second wave, a couple Servitors enter the room, accompanied by some Dregs. Servitors have an aura that heals nearby Fallen, so it's good to concentrate on them whenever possible. Focus continuous gunfire at their "eye" for the quickest takedown. The small enclosure, located where you entered this room, offers more cover when things start to get out of hand.

Destroy Fallen Tap

With the room void of Fallen, you can now take some time to eliminate their tap. A core is raised from the top of the computer, so fire at it until you destroy it, completing the mission.



THE LAST ARRAY

Level 5 Story / Mothyards, Old Russia, Earth

Enemy Races: Fallen, Hive

Suggested Damage Types: Arc, Solar

Rewards: XP Bonus, Heavy Weapon Upgrade

Mission Unlocked: -

Find the Control Station – First Corridor	+1 Sword Vandal	Watch out for the two Vandals to team up together.
Find the Control Station – Second Corridor	+1 Rifle Vandal+2 Shanks	A Solar weapon is helpful on Epic, so you can tear through the Shanks' shields faster.
Find the Control Station – Outdoor Platform	+2 Rifle Vandals	—
Find the Control Station – Outdoors Before Control Room	+1 Sniper Vandal	—
Find the Control Station – Control Room	+2 Rifle Vandals	—
Secure the Array – Wave 1	+1 Wizard+3 Thrall	Get the Thrall out of the way if possible, as the two Wizards can be a nightmare. A Solar gun helps eliminate their shields quicker.
Secure the Array – Wave 2	+1 Cleaver Knight+2 Acolytes	Carrying an Arc weapon is beneficial on Epic, as Knights gain an Arc shield.
Secure the Array – Wave 3	+2 Acolytes	This adds to the huge number of Acolytes firing at you while you concentrate on the Knight. Keep moving and use cover whenever possible.

Patrol Beacons are available only during the Patrol activity.

Public Events frequency: 25-35 minutes

Objective: Get to Skywatch

Location: Lunar Complex

Enter the Lunar Complex just as you did before, and follow the path back upstairs. The dark room is now quiet. When you reach the top, Hive Acolytes are fending off an attack by the Fallen. You can let this play out or sweep in and eliminate both sides. Dregs, Vandals, and a Captain occupy the second room. Fight through them and follow a narrow corridor until you're back outside at the Skywatch.

Objective: Recover the Ghosts

Location: Skywatch

Fallen and Hive fight it out in this public space. Take out any Fallen you see. The Vandals drop Dead Ghosts. Once you find the one you need, continue to the opposite side of the Skywatch. Fight your way into the building on the right.

Objective: Find the Control Station

Location: Terrestrial Complex

Once inside, head right and continue into a Darkness Zone. Several Dregs and Vandals occupy the building. At the final room before you return outside, camp out at the two windows and whittle down the Fallen out there—pay close attention to the Captain on the right. Watch out for incoming grenades from the Dregs. The Control Station is just around the corner, so move around the platform's perimeter and finish off any remaining foes. Watch for Stealth Vandals to attack as you near your destination. Backpedal as you take down each one. A Captain and a few minions wait inside. Once the area is clear, deploy your Ghost at the computer.

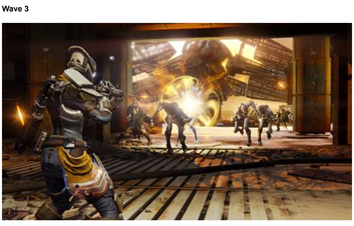
Objective: Secure the Array – Wave 1

Top off all of your weapons, pull out a close-combat gun, and take cover behind the computers on the left. As the array activates, a Hive ship appears outside. Be careful that you don't get caught staring, as four darkness projectiles are fired from the turrets. A Wizard appears with a slew of Thrall. Mow them down as they rush your position, and then handle the Wizard.

Wave 2

A second ship shows up, unloading more Thrall, along with Acolytes and a Cleaver Knight. Take care of the Thrall as they come at you, then pick off the Acolytes outside. The Knight can deliver quite a bit of damage if you allow it to get too close. Try to take it out with a high-powered gun, as it can put up a wall of darkness and heal itself.

Wave 3



A third wave then drops in, consisting of more Thrall, an army of Acolytes, and a Hallowed Knight. This is a special Knight with more Vitality and a very powerful gun. Steer clear of him as you fight the smaller foes, or eliminate him quickly with your super ability and high-powered weaponry.

Objective: Return to Ghost

With the area clear of Hive, return to the computer to complete the mission. Speak to the Gunsmith at The Tower to receive your choice of a Heavy Weapon.

An Invitation to The Crucible

Once you hit Level 5, Lord Shaxx invites you to participate in The Crucible. Talk to him in the hallway outside the Hall of Guardians. Now you can hone your skills against other Guardians in a variety of PvP modes.

THE DEVILS' LAIR

Level 5 Strike / Rockslyzed, Old Russia, Earth

Enemy Forces: Vine, Fallen

Suggested Damage Type: Arc, Solar (Epic)

Rewards: 20 Pieces, Arms Upgrade

Mission Unlocked: —

Strike Lvl. 15 or Above
Power Level 1000 or Above

Strike Difficulty: Normal
Strike Difficulty: Hard

Strike Modifiers: Champions (Barrier, Overload, Unstoppable)
Strike Modifiers: Champions (Barrier, Overload, Unstoppable) and Shielded Foes

Objective Find The Devils' Lair

Location Rockslyzed

The first Strike starts in Rockslyzed, just outside the Refinery. Right your way through the Vine and Fallen to the Refinery entrance. Before you enter the Refinery, look for a Vex Gateway on the far building. You can spend some time fighting the enemy out here, but your objective lies inside.

> It's always a good idea to carry extra ammo of all three types. Often, escaping a Vex's laser weapon, and as a bridge, as you move through Vehicle or Mech battles. Once you're outside, you may need to call up a long-range weapon. When you reach Darkness Zones, you'll be glad you have extra Special ammo. Finally, Heavy ammo is rare, but it's always worth picking up. Remember also to try to use the ammo you have purchased before you'll purchase consumables from the Gunsmith and only have a few bundles remaining when you complete the Strike.

Objective Find the Vex Gateway

Location Refinery

Follow the objective markers through the hallways until you run into a battle between the Vine and Fallen. Clear/use the cover as you move through the Refinery. This is a relatively easy fight for Guardians of your level.

Objective Clear Bad Ass Barricade

> Vex Gateways are a great way to quickly recharge your Super and your melee ability. Use them to your advantage.

Once you clear out the Fallen and Vine, destroy your Ghost at the consoles so he can take down the Barrier Champions. Once you've destroyed the Barrier Champions, you can destroy your Ghost at the consoles to the left of the door. Your Ghost will then open a large container with a green energy pulsing inside. Destroy the container to open the door. Inside, you'll find a Vex Gateway. Use the Gateway as a base to eliminate the incoming Vine. This fight can get tough, so watch for Protector Hatchlings and Vine Guardians. Once you've destroyed the Vine Guardians, you can destroy your Ghost at the consoles to the left of the door to open and enter the Rock Hive. Some summons focused on taking out Vine snipers as they show up on the walkways.

Objective Infiltrate Devils' Lair

Follow the Vine down a path where you can hop across and end through the opening to the right. Watch out for more Fallen as you follow the path out of the Refinery.

The entrance to The Devils' Lair is on the opposite side of the courtyard, but it only flight for Strikes is Fallen Captains, Servitors, Dregs, and Shanks for the Fallen that you see fight in the Strikes. This is the first time you'll encounter Fallen Servitors, and they're a bit tougher than the Fallen you've been trying to move your path. They often hide behind your cover, provide much-needed ammunition, and as a bonus they receive Kill count for the mission.

Objective Go through the Palace

Location The Shed

The entrance to The Devils' Lair is on the opposite side of the courtyard, but it only flight for Strikes is Fallen Captains, Servitors, Dregs, and Shanks for the Fallen that you see fight in the Strikes. This is the first time you'll encounter Fallen Servitors, and they're a bit tougher than the Fallen you've been trying to move your path. They often hide behind your cover, provide much-needed ammunition, and as a bonus they receive Kill count for the mission.

DEVIL WALKER

Mook Spoils: Legs, Exposed Mech

Attacks: Cannon Laser Array, Shock Grenade, Charge(s), Shuvers, Push Back

Changes: —

ATTACKS

Cannon

The Devil Walker uses a tall head to rain a high-powered cannon. This devastating attack can easily kill Guardians in one hit. Watch for the Devil Walker to rear back its head and fire. Once you see the start of its attack, run to the left or right of the Devil Walker.

Laser Array

Watch for laser spurts that appear on the left weapon, as they presage another powerful strike. It then delivers a decent blast radius, so it's a good idea to get out of the way when you see it charging.

Shock Grenades

A small mech spews an either side of the spider tank, and several grenades are released into the area. These explosives bounce around as they each set nearby targets. You can destroy the grenades before they explode, but it's easier to avoid the explosions.

Charge

Around boulder level, Shanks are released from another opening just behind the grenades. This adds a few extra foes to fight. You can destroy the Shank before when it's open, keeping the Ring Fallen from forming the shields. This becomes a valuable strategy when the Epic Mission Modifier is active, as the Shanks are Champions.

Shuvers

The Devil Walker is equipped with a shotgun on the front of its head. It can tear through a plasma ranged to be a nuisance. Duck behind cover as charge to the side of the boss when you see the Cannon flurry.

Push Back

When a player gets close to the tank, the leg machine uses a pulse attack to push away its opponent.

Setting Up

Immediately start clearing out the Fallen as the Devil Walker is dropped into The Shed. Once the fights come on the tank, it's vulnerable to your attacks, as look for a spot from which to fight the Devil Walker and its Fallen allies. Watch out for the Fallen that drop in from the ceiling, as they can be dangerous. Once you've cleared out the Fallen, you can begin damaging the boss in whatever way you prefer. You will be shielded from the Devil Walker's attacks by the Fallen Shields that will pop up fight. Still, fighting these foes for a few minutes means there is a safe mark fighting them out in the open.

Several boulders around The Shed offer partial protection from the Fallen, while allowing you to path away of the tank. Be wary of the cannon and laser array attacks, as their head will aim fairly high and can take you out no matter where you hide.

The first building you see offers partial protection and a good vantage point for long range attacks. Unfortunately, it's also a popular spot for Fallen to spawn in and attack you from behind. If you're focused on the tank, you can keep out of the bottom of the steps, locking onto it and attacking from there. Watch out for Fallen that spawn in behind you, and be prepared to move if you're attacked. Another option is the Refinery adjacent to The Shed. The short-term downside is a building offers some protection, so you should avoid the side or through the openings. Debris and old infrastructure offer plenty of cover alternatives.

Strategy

By spacing players a good distance apart, you can divide the tank's focus. Staying in-close together offers the tank an easy opportunity to eliminate the entire party in one fell swoop. Be aware of your surroundings, and don't get so focused on the tank that you forget to watch for the Fallen that are the source of your attack.

Hiding the Devil Walker anywhere teamspace is fun for hops ever aerial spots. Have everyone target a big, and everybody fire at once. It is destroyed, spending the tank to collapse in the ground. At that point, you can finish off the Fallen and Vine that remain. Be aware that the tank will respawn after a few seconds. You will be shielded from the threats of the tank, but the Fallen will pick up a fight. Still, fighting these foes for a few minutes means there is a safe mark fighting them out in the open.

The Devil Walker will fire if you take out all six legs, but it's more efficient to hit the exposed mech. By concentrating your fight powered attacks on this spot, it's possible to defeat the boss with only three hits.

Objective Find Sepsis Prime

Location The Devils' Lair

After you take down the Devil Walker, the path opens up at the Fallen Dregs and Vandals below. After that clears out, proceed forward to your objective. Follow the path up a few sets of stairs into The Devils' Lair.

Objective Eliminate the Fallen

Here you find your primary target, Sepsis Prime. Fallen guard the boss, so use the doorway and nearby boulders as cover and defeat the threats.

Objective Find Sepsis Prime

Location The Devils' Lair

After you take down the Devil Walker, the path opens up at the Fallen Dregs and Vandals below. After that clears out, proceed forward to your objective. Follow the path up a few sets of stairs into The Devils' Lair.

Objective Eliminate the Fallen

Once you dispatch the initial group of Fallen, the huge Sepsis Prime drops its shield and becomes available to you—especially with Fallen Vandals, Dregs, and Shanks on the prowl. If you get into trouble, escape under the platform onto the left balcony, or into the rooms in the area's backwall.

SEPSIS PRIME

Mook Spoil Carapace of Sepsis

Attacks Eye Blast, Push Back

ATTACKS

Eye Blast

Sepsis Prime shoots an explosive projectile that delivers a moderate amount of damage. It fires quickly and accurately, but if you see it, you can avoid it by jumping out of the way.

Push Back

Get close to the boss like Ulric, and it reveals you away with a quick area-of-effect maneuver.

Strategy

A few locations offer some protection, but no single spot gives you a good shot at Sepsis Prime with complete cover—especially with Fallen Vandals, Dregs, and Shanks on the prowl. If you get into trouble, escape under the platform onto the left balcony, or into the rooms in the area's backwall.

The Sepsis Prime mostly responds to an initiative away from danger, making it easy for you to inadvertently waste a valuable super or explosive. Watch for it to power up, as this lets you know it's switching positions.

Fallen minions enter the arena as you make progress against the giant boss. Watch for the drop ship that brings them in, as it also has an Eye Blast attack. Use the environment to your advantage. Fallen Vandals are particularly dangerous in these fights, as they can quickly close the gap between you and your enemies. Fallen Shanks are equipped with Invisibility, so they can sneak up on you if you're not careful. Combine to eat away at the boss and it's finally destroyed!

With Sepsis Prime out of the way, a Shuvered three crumbs down until you are automatically sent back to Orbit. This gives you time to collect any loot lying around the area. If you haven't already done so, grab the Gold Chest underneath the light platform.

Focus your attacks at the center of the Servitor's eye, as this is its weak spot. It has a lot of health, so you'll need to keep your skills with each shot. No matter. Continue to eat away at the boss until it's finally destroyed!

PATROL THE COSMODROME

Level 4 Patrol / The Steppes, Old Russia, Earth

Enemy Races: Fallen, Hive

Rewards: Spinmetal, Vanguard Reputation

Patrol Missions

Access one of the nearby Beacons around Old Russia to acquire one of the following missions.

Compromise Protocol	Push an enemy from the area surrounding Compromised Cache.	Location at Examine
Sweep and Clean	Punish the presence of the Light to overcome Darkness in this area.	Kill Enemies
All in the Game	Kill surprising Fallen and search their bodies for Fallen Treasure.	Kill Enemies
Reckon That Stew	Kill Fallen and gather their Tender Cloth and Fine Silk Materials.	Collect Tender Cloth
Very Tired Prayer	Kill Fallen and recover the Stone Beads they use to keep track of their prayers.	Collect Stone Beads
Rites of Obedience	Kill Fallen performing unsanctified Rites and retrieve Grinding Caps for study.	Collect Grinding Caps
Tithe for Cotton	Take Ivy Cotton Clogs and Vandals and gather Cotton Materials to pay the Tithe.	Recover Other Items
Proxy War	Kill Fallen and recover their Proxy Weapons and Proxy Explosives for disassembly.	Collect Proxy Explosive, Proxy Scout Weapon
Lots For Sale	Locate the Captain Trunks in the space of Fallen and collect their Lottery Tickets.	Collect Lottery Ticket
Induction to Pain	Search Fallen Vandals for Induction Rods, full of Fallen Treasure.	Collect Induction Rod
Dust to Dust	Gather Marrow Dust, a crystal solvent, from Fallen Vandals and Captains.	Collect Marrow Dust
Trash Harvest	Search dead Hives for Trash Tubes, prized from Fallen Vandals.	Collect Trash Tube
Commodity	Drain the Cursed Blood and collect the information it contains.	Transmit Data
Touchy Little Things	Scan the Fallen weapons and transmit the data back to the Guardian.	Scan Sensors
Celestial Vacuum	Dash Dock is looking for aerospace laboratory samples. Help them out.	Dock 10
Chemical Vacuum	Analyze the cracked glass Flight remains to aid Dock's aerospace research.	Analyze Wire
Fallen Ear	Kill Fallen and retrieve their Ear Trophies to prove Darkness can't overcome Light's progress.	Ear Trophies
Specific Impulse	Kill Fallen and recover their Proximity Sensors.	Collect Proximity Sensor
History of Fights	Retrieve Fight records and analyze for New Combat Tactics.	Download Fight Data
Still in the Dark	Download Facility Documents for New Mercantile.	Transmit Data
Surface Asset	Retrieve Golden Age Lockboxes and Keys from Cosmodrome satellite for Ana Lucas.	Lucas Lockbox
The Hellion Collection	Kill Fallen and recover their Hellion Trophies.	Hellion Trophy
Animal Space Program	Kill Fallen and recover their Animal Trophies.	Animal Trophy
Bioelectronics Research	Track the navigational data to send to Holliday.	Transmit Data
Technical Matters	Search Shadow in the Undergrowth and Fallen Weapons to aid in validating our data.	Fire Propeller Shots
Three Weights	Kill Fallen and recover their Weight Trophies.	Weight Trophy
Four Arms Good, Two Arms Bad	By whatever they call a small workbench (here in the Cosmodrome), Fallen Tinkers.	Kill Fallen Tinker
Exalted Hive	Kill Hive Wizards and recover precious relics Scorn have taken from the Light.	Refinery
Never Unmanned	Kill Fallen Vandals and recover their Vandal Vestments. It's time we stopped	Fire Weapon
Ready for the Weather	Seek out and destroy a Fallen Shank scavenging Vanguard Weapons.	Lunar Complex
Fight the Good Fight	Eliminate a Fallen Vandal hoarding a rare token from the Iron Lords.	Fire Weapon
Other Side of the Coin	Find Fallen Vandals in the Undergrowth and recover their Coins.	Terrestrial Complex
A Strong Breed	Kill Fallen and recover their Strong Trophies.	Strong Trophy
Trial Fallen	Bring down a fearsome Hive Ogre and scatter its remains.	Slay Enemy
Pretty Filled Pockets	Find a good vantage point to survey the area.	Search Area
Nicely Assessed	Kill Fallen and recover their Assessment Trophies.	Assessment Trophy
Hats in the Ring	Kill Fallen and recover their Hat Trophies.	Hat Trophy
Southside Holiday	Investigate the Cosmodrome tunnels in the Undergrowth.	Fire Weapon
Space Suit Assembly	Provide a status report on the Dome Array.	Terrestrial Complex
High and Dry	Kill Fallen and recover their Dry Trophies.	Dry Trophy
Like a Bunch of Thieves	Recover Vanguard Vestments stolen by Fallen Thieves.	Fire Weapon
Here at the End of the Line	Map the entrance to the Hive tunnels.	Refinery
Field Report	Provide an assessment of the enemy battlefield.	Rocket Yard

MOON

OVERVIEW

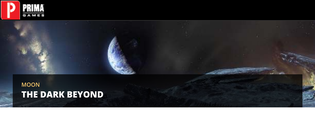
The Moon's scars are a reminder of how fragile our existence is and a warning that a great threat stirs beneath its fractured surface. The remains of Golden Age research stations are the only signs that human life ever thrived here. Surrendered to the Hive during the darkest days of the Collapse, stories tell of the Moon as a haunted place, but few believed the Hive still festered there. Most believing their ancient terror had long faded to nightmarish memory. How wrong we were. For centuries… maybe longer… the Hive have been burrowing through the Moon's core, carving a stronghold, a fortress to house an army for the coming war.

Resource:

Helium Filaments

Enemy Races (Faction):

Fallen (House of Wolves, House of Exile), Hive (Spawn of Crota, The Hidden Swarm)



MOON

THE DARK BEYOND

Level 6 Story / Archer's Line, Ocean of Storms, Moon

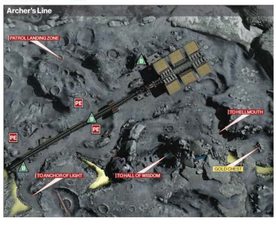
Enemy Races: Fallen, Hive

Suggested Damage Types: Arc, Solar

Rewards: XP Bonus, Special Weapon Upgrade

Missions Unlocked: The World's Grave, The Sword of Crota, Chamber of Night, Patrol the Moon

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Kill the Fallen – Drop Group from drop ship	-1 Fallen Captain+1 Major Captain	This shielded enemy becomes a bigger threat as his Vitality and aggressiveness go up.
Resist the Hive – Initial Hive Rush	-3 Acolytes-1 Knight+3 Major Acolytes+1 Major Knight+3 Thrall	The Major Knight is extremely aggressive with his Boomer. Stay on the move to avoid being taken out with it as you dispose of the lesser Hive first.
Resist the Hive – Wizard	+3 Thrall	—



Objective: Track the Guardian

Location: Archer's Line

The landing zone on the moon is located at the bottom of a hill in Archer's Line. Run up to the accelerator and enter the building on the left.

Objective:Hack Colony Equipment

A computer terminal sits in the back of the room. Deploy your Ghost to hack in and find information on the Guardian.

Objective:Kill the Fallen

A few Fallen enter the building as more show up just outside. Fight through these foes to create a path to the doorway and be wary of the cloaked Stealth Vandals. Use the walls as cover while you clash with the scavengers. Your biggest threat comes from a Fallen Captain who has dropped on the right platform. Continue out from the building where more Fallen join in the skirmish, including another Captain and a Servitor. Once the final group has been taken care of, the vehicle link is established—making your Sparrow useable.

Pike Controls

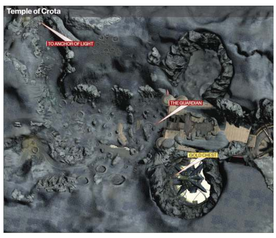
The Pike controls similar to the Sparrow, except it is equipped with shock cannons on the front. Hold down Fire Button to use them. The cannons can overheat, causing the fire rate to drop. Simply let up when this happens and immediately start firing again. The bumper buttons cause the vehicle to dodge left and right, performing a barrel roll when done in air.

Objective:Find the Colony Base

Jump onto the next rooftop and wait for a Dreg to show up on a Pike. Shoot him off and hop onto the Fallen vehicle. Continue underneath the accelerator and into the Anchor of Light, using the shock cannons to eliminate the Fallen along the way. If your Pike takes any damage, exchange it for a new one before leaving the area.

Your next destination is in the raised, circular structure ahead. Feel free to drive the Pike inside if you wish and use it to eliminate the Fallen along the way. Have your Ghost scan the computer inside to find the next destination.

Objective:Find the Temple of Crota



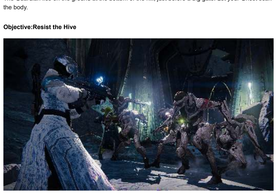
Set up at the big opening and kill as many of the Fallen as you can, including the Servitor on the upper walkway and the Captain below. Drop down and follow the narrow path to the right, through the opening in the rock.

Objective: Find the Guardian

Location: Temple of Crota

The Guardian lies on the ground at the bottom of the hill, just before a big gate. Let your Ghost scan the body.

Objective:Resist the Hive

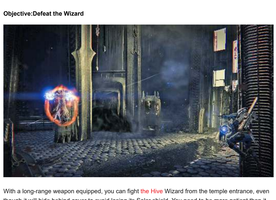


Immediately back up and take cover as Hive emerge through the gate. Note that the area becomes a Darkness Zone, so death here means starting over at the previous checkpoint. A large group of Thrall rushes forward and Acolytes attack while a Knight launches explosive shots from the back of the pack. Stay on the move as you dispose of the weaker enemies first, then focus your attention on the Knight. The last remaining Hive may fall back into the temple, so pursue them inside.

Objective:Find the Ghost

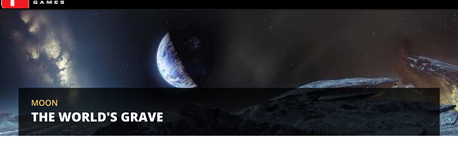
Once that group of Hive has been eliminated, enter the temple and take the right path up the steps. A Major Wizard appears, surrounded by its brood.

Objective:Defeat the Wizard



With a long-range weapon equipped, you can fight the Hive Wizard from the temple entrance, even though it will hide behind cover to avoid losing its Solar shield. You need to be more patient than it is, while knocking it down with long-range shots. Once the Hive threat is eliminated, revive the Dead Ghost within the Temple of Crota to complete the mission.

Visit the Speaker to turn in the Dead Ghost for a Speaker's Writ. You can turn this item in to the Gunsmith for one of three Special Weapons.



THE WORLD'S GRAVE

Level 7 Story / Archer's Line, Ocean of Storms, Moon

Enemy Races: Fallen, Hive

Suggested Damage Types: Arc, Solar

Rewards: XP Bonus

Mission Unlocked: -

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Find the Knight – Knight	-2 Acolytes+2 Major Acolytes	Use cover wisely as the Major Acolytes are much more aggressive.
Find the World's Grave – During Knight	-2 Acolytes+2 Major Acolytes	—
Push Back the Hive – Cave	-2 Thrall+2 Cursed Thrall	Back away from the Cursed Thrall to avoid their explosion.
Fight Off the Hive – Defense Wave 2	12 total Thrall instead of 8	This only adds to the overwhelming numbers of Hive. Equip a short-range weapon to handle the melee combatants.
Fight Off the Hive – Between Waves	Next wave spawns when 1 enemy remains instead of waiting until they are all dead.	As you reach the end of a wave, prepare for the next as you fight thefinal enemy.

Objective: Enter the Hive Fortress

Location: Archer's Line

Drive your Sparrow up the hill on the other side of the accelerator, fight through the Fallen, and cut through the dome structure. Continue down the hill, take out the two Major Knights, and enter the Hive fortress. Descend the steps and drop down to the bottom level. Follow the trail and continue into the Hall of Wisdom.

Location:Hall of Wisdom

Acolytes accompany a couple Knights and a Wizard ahead. Use a long-ranged weapon from the doorway to weaken the threat and continue down the steps. With the area clear, push into the second half of the hall where a bigger challenge looms. A Knight and Shrieker await your arrival as a Hive drop ship enters the room. Thrall, Acolytes, and a Wizard join the fray. Take out as many of the Hive as you can from a distance and move in to clear out the rest. It is important to note that the Shrieker is only vulnerable when it opens up to fire. Exit the room and follow the path into the Circle of Bones.

Objective: Find the Knight

Location: Circle of Bones

This area is a Darkness Zone, so don't do anything too risky. Watch out for weapon fire from the Hive dropships that enter the zone as you move through it. They introduce Acolytes, a Knight, and a Wizard. When you encounter the second group of Hive, look to the right to find a tall fence partially blocking access to a small, circular floor. Jump over it or move around the outside to find the Major Knight. Immediately dodge behind cover and work on the accompanying Acolytes and Wizard before taking down this boss. Stay on the move to avoid the Knight's explosive projectiles.Objective:Find the World's Grave

Location:The World's Grave

Continue through the opening at the far end of Circle of Bones to reach The World's Grave.

Objective:Push Back the Hive

Drop down to the bottom floor and enter the narrow cave to find a slew of Thrall awaiting your arrival. Mow them down with your short-range gun and follow the passage into a Darkness Zone. Once your presence is known, more Thrall attack while Acolytes and a Knight concentrate their fire on you from afar. In the final room, you can surprise the Hive Knights and Acolytes by hitting one with a long-range headshot. Use the provided cover to avoid the enemies' weapon fire as you clear out the room.

Objective:Open the World's Grave

Run over to the far platform, reload your weapons if needed, and deploy your Ghost to open the World's Grave. This attracts a whole bunch of Hive, so prepare yourself for a blitz.

Objective:Fight Off the Hive

Thrall, Cursed Thrall, Acolytes, Knights, and a Wizard attack in three waves. Take out the Thrall quickly or the number of Hive units may overwhelm you. The Knights present the biggest danger, however. Boomer Knights fire their explosive projectiles from the far side, while Cleaver Knights move in close. A good auto rifle or shotgun is invaluable here for whittling down the numerous warriors of the Hive. If you can, save your super ability for the two Cleaver Knights who appear on the right side during the third wave. Finishing off the final foe in this area completes the mission.

Turn in the Graven Codex to Cryptarch to gain the Cryptarch Engram and Reputation.

THE SWORD OF CROTA

Level 7 Story / Archer's Line, Ocean of Storms, Moon

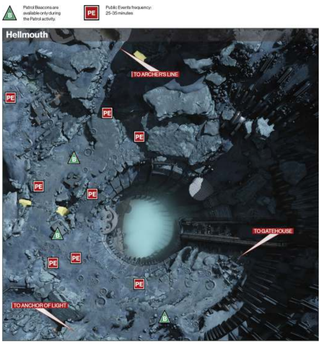
Enemy Races: Fallen, Hive

Suggested Damage Types: Arc, Solar

Rewards: XP Bonus, Armor Upgrade

Missions Unlocked: Shrine of Oryx, The Summoning Pits Strike

Objective: Get to the Hellmouth


Patrol Beacons are available only during the Patrol activity
Public Events frequency: 25-35 minutes
Hellmouth
TO ARCHER'S LINE
TO GATEHOUSE
TO ANCHORS OF LIGHT

Location: Archer's Line

Jump on your Sparrow and drive to Hellmouth, up the hill and left from the landing zone.

Objective: Find the Swarm Prince

Location: Hellmouth

Make your way around Hellmouth until you find a group of Acolytes and the Major Knight himself—Banuk, Ur Prince.

Objective: Face the Swarm Prince

Being a Major, the Prince has extra health and fires his boomer more often. Take him down along with his minions.

Objective: Track the Sword

Continue through Hellmouth and enter the Hive compound ahead, where three Knights protect the entrance and bombard you with explosive shots. Use the cover in the area as you finish them off.

Objective: Locate the Sword

Location: The Gatehouse

Descend into the Gatehouse as it becomes a Darkness Zone. Remove the Knight and Acolytes as you continue deeper into the complex. Turn the corner into the final area, where Thrall, Cursed Thrall, Acolytes, and a Wizard occupy the room.

Objective: Slaughter the Hive

Make sure the Cursed Thrall do not get too close as you clear the way to the Sword of Crota.

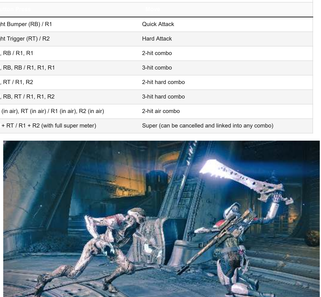
Objective: Claim the Sword of Crota

Step up to the sword and grab this relic to lure out the Swarm Princes. Picking up the Sword of Crota replaces your gun and super ability. It is an extremely powerful melee weapon that can tear through weaker enemies.

Controlling the Sword of Crota

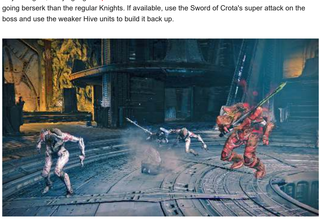
Only one member of your Fireteam can pick up the sword, while the others must fight with their own weaponry. Refer to the following table for a complete list of moves and combos:

Right Bumper (RB) / R1	Quick Attack
Right Trigger (RT) / R2	Hard Attack
RB, RB / R1, R1	2-hit combo
RB, RB, RB / R1, R1, R1	3-hit combo
RB, RT / R1, R2	2-hit hard combo
RB, RB, RT / R1, R1, R2	3-hit hard combo
RB (in air), RT (in air) / R1 (in air), R2 (in air)	2-hit air combo
RB + RT / R1 + R2 (with full super meter)	Super (can be cancelled and linked into any combo)



Objective:Kill the Swarm Princes

The initial wave of Hive gives you a chance to get used to wielding the sword with only Thrall and Acolytes. Try the two attacks and various combos as you dispose of them. The next wave introduces the first of three Princes, Merok, from a pool of darkness at the far end of the room. The Princes are Major Knights, carrying big weapons of their own. Watch out! These foes have a better chance of going berserk than the regular Knights. If available, use the Sword of Crota's super attack on the boss and use the weaker Hive units to build it back up.



Jump up to the surrounding balconies to escape when taking on too much damage. When attacking the Knights, go in for a quick combo attack and immediately dodge out of the way. Merok is joined by a group of Thrall. With the first Knight out of the way, Dakoor, Yul Prince, emerges with a group of Acolytes. The third and final Prince, Garok, has a crew of Thrall and Acolytes helping out. Finish him off to complete the mission.

Turn in the Blade Shards to your class Vanguard to gain a choice of three pieces of armor.

SHRINE OF ORYX

Level 8 Story / Hellmouth, Ocean of Storms, Moon

Enemy Races: Hive, Fallen

Suggested Damage Types: Fire, Arc

Rewards: XP Bonus, Primary Weapon Upgrade

Mission Unlocked: -

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Find the Shrine – Start of Hall of Wisdom	-1 Knight+1 Major Knight	The Major versions of these Hive are stronger and tougher to take down, so fight carefully.
Find the Shrine – Hall of Wisdom Exit	Acolytes are replaced with Major Acolytes	—
Find the Shrine – Start of Shrine of Oryx	Acolytes are replaced with Major Acolytes	—
Find the Shrine – Ogre	-1 Ogre+1 Major Ogre+3 Thrall	If you can, fight the Ogre from a distance, ducking behind cover to heal when necessary.
Find the Shrine – Corridor	+2 Thrall	—
Take Out the Hive – Entrance to Shrine	Acolytes are replaced with Major Acolytes	—
Kill the Knight	+2 Thrall	—
Kill the Knight - Under 40% health	+1 Cleaver Knight	The Ultra Knight is a handful without the added Knight. Run around the reactor and handle the smaller enemies away from the giant.

Objective: Enter the Hellmouth

Location: Hellmouth

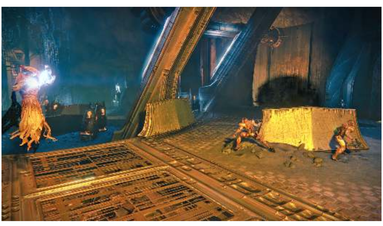
Descend toward the Gatehouse as a group of Acolytes attempt to resist. Once inside, you must take out the three familiar Knights at the entrance. Upon entering the Gatehouse, you run into a skirmish between the Fallen and Hive. Let it play out a little, while they hurt each other. A Hive Wizard and Fallen Servitor can make things difficult, if you rush in. Continue into the sword room, where Fallen and Hive continue to fight it out. Proceed into the cave through the right doorway.

Objective: Assassinate the Baron

Up ahead, the Fallen Captain, Exiled Baron Frigoris, hides out with Stealth Vandals and Dregs. Take him down before delving deeper into the Hive compound.

Objective: Find the Shrine

Location: Shrine of Oryx



An exit on the other side of the Baron's hideout leads to another tunnel. This winds down to the Circle of Bones. Hug the left wall, taking out any Hive that get in your way, until you reach another opening. Follow this cave until you reach the Hall of Wisdom, which starts a Darkness Zone.

The Fallen have also found their way down to these depths and fight the Hive who inhabit the hall. Beware that this includes a Knight with a Boomer. Fight your way through their skirmish. Half way across the hall, turn right to spot the entrance to the shrine. Several Acolytes, a Knight, and a Wizard block your way through, so force the issue and take the fight to them.

Follow the path until you spot the shrine ahead, although it is not accessible yet. Just around the corner, a crew of Dregs fight more Acolytes. Be sure to finish each one off or they become a nuisance while you battle the next group. In the next tunnel, an Ogre surrounds himself with Acolytes. Pull out your Heavy Weapon and take care of him before proceeding on. Thrall are accompanied by a Knight in the narrow corridor just before the shrine.

Objective: Take Out the Hive

Acolytes guard the shrine ahead, so take the opportunity to reduce their numbers right away. Once the Acolytes have been taken care of, enter the core in the center of the room.

Objective: Weaken the Shrine

Deploy your Ghost at the Shrine of Oryx to find a way to destroy it. After a period of peace and quiet, Sardok, the Eye of Oryx Knight, shows up with his minions.

Objective: Kill the Knight

Sardok is an Ultra Knight, making him an elite member of the Hive. Run behind a pillar, or the shrine itself, and eliminate the Acolytes and Thrall before attempting to take on the giant Knight. Use up your super ability and Heavy Weapons on the Knight. When his health reaches 70% and then 40%, reinforcements are sent in, so stay on the lookout for additional enemy waves. Finishing off Sardok completes the mission.

Back at the Tower, turn in the Shard of the Shrine to the class Vanguard to receive Arms Requisition. Give this item to the Gunsmith for a choice of Primary Weapon.

CHAMBER OF NIGHT

Level 8 Story / Hellmouth, Ocean of Storms, Moon

Enemy Race(s): Hive

Suggested Damage Types:

Rewards: XP Bonus

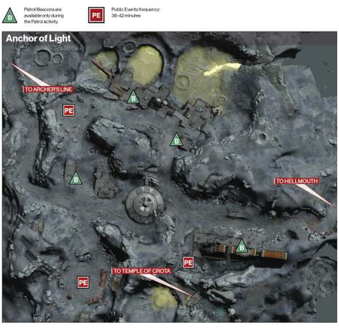
Mission(s) Unlocked: -

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Enter the Temple – At Hive Seeder	+1 Ogre	Be cautious as you pass through the Hive Seeder room. Move back and take cover when you reach this guy.
Find the Chamber – First Room	-1 Knight+1 Major Knight	—
Destroy the Hive – Left Door	+3 Thrall+2 Cursed Thrall+1 Knight	Stay on the move to avoid being surrounded.
Destroy the Hive – Right Door	+4 Cursed Thrall+1 Cleaver Knight	—
Destroy the Hive – Center Door	+2 Thrall that respawn for multiple waves	

Objective: Scan Hellmouth Cracks

Location: Hellmouth

Your first objective is to scan two cracks in Hellmouth, so deploy your Ghost at each one. Watch out for attacking Fallen troops around the second.



Patrol Beacons are available only during the Patrol activity.

PE Public Events frequency: 36–42 minutes

Objective: Return to the Temple

Location: Anchor of Light

Cut through Hellmouth and Anchor of Light to reach the Temple of Crota.

Objective: Approach the Gate

Location: Temple of Crota

Descend toward the temple gate.

Objective: Enter the Temple

At the entrance, pull out a long-range weapon and take down the Hive Ogre patrolling inside. Then, move inside and take care of the Acolytes and Knight. Drop to the bottom floor and spin around to an opening on the side of the room. Move through the Hive ship, taking out the Thrall and Acolytes along the way.

A Knight and Wizard wait on the other side with more minions. Clear out the area before proceeding deeper into the fortress, while Thrall and Cursed Thrall rush you at the stairs. When you reach the Hive Seeder, make a right into another tunnel. Defeat the Knights and a Cursed Thrall as you descend deeper into The World's Grave.

Objective: Find the Chamber

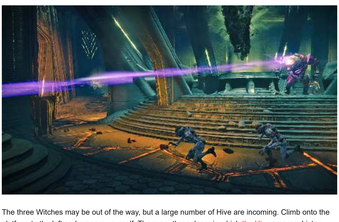
Location: The World's Grave

This begins a Darkness Zone, so be aware that death means restarting at the previous checkpoint. Stop at the first doorway and use a long-range weapon to clear out some of the Hive inside. Watch out for a group of Knights carrying cleavers as you push through the open door, directly across from the entrance. More Hive occupy the next room, including Thrall who rush your position immediately. Clear them out as you make your way to the far balcony. The entrance to the ritual chamber is found in the left corner.

Objective: Kill the Siphon Witches

The door opens to reveal three Siphon Witches. Using your highest-power gun, hit one to let them know you are there. Equipping a Solar weapon is advantageous, so that you can cut through their shields more quickly.

Objective: Destroy the Hive



The three Witches may be out of the way, but a large number of Hive are incoming. Climb onto the platform to the left and prepare yourself. There are three doors in which the Hive emerge. Listen carefully for where the enemies come from and do not let yourself get backed into a corner. Thrall, Acolytes, and Knights all enter the arena. A nice close-range gun is extremely helpful for this scenario. However, you do want to eliminate the Cursed Thrall from a safe distance. A Major Ogre enters through the center door. Fight off any remaining minions and focus your high-powered attacks on the boss.

Objective: Investigate the Shard

Return to the platform and deploy your Ghost to investigate, ending the final story mission for the Moon.

MOON

STRIKE: THE SUMMONING PITS

STRIKE: THE SUMMONING PITS

Level 12 Story / Hellmouth, Ocean of Storms, Moon

Enemy Race: Hive

Suggested Damage Types: Solar, Arc (Epic)

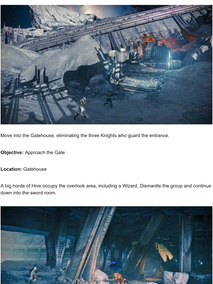
Rewards: XP Bonus, Armor Upgrade

Mission Unlocked: -

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Approach the gate – Overlook	-1 Acolyte+1 Major Knight-1 Wizard+1 Major Wizard	Ok Eye, the Major Knight and the Major Wizard have Arc and Solar weapons respectively. Equip the appropriate weapons to drop their shields quickly.
Repel the Hive – Wave 1	-2 Thrall+1 Major Thrall-2 Knights+2 Major Knights	—
Repel the Hive – Wave 2	-3 Acolyte+3 Major Acolyte-1 Knight+1 Major Knight-1 Wizard+1 Major Wizard	—
Repel the Hive – Wave 3	-1 Cursed Thrall+1 Major Cursed Thrall-1 Acolyte+1 Major Knight	Do not underestimate that Major Cursed Thrall , take it out as soon as you can.
Repel the Hive – Final Wave	-3 Knights+3 Major Wizards	—
Defeat Phogoth	-1 Acolyte+3 Major Acolyte	—
Defeat Phogoth – Reinforcements	-3 Acolyte+3 Major Acolyte-1 Knight+1 Major Knight	—
Defeat Phogoth – Reinforcements	-2 Acolyte+2 Major Acolyte-1 Knight+1 Major Knight-1 Major Wizard	With all of the Hive minions, this boss fight is hard enough without making it harder. Take out the Major Wizard first, then concentrate concentrate on the lesser Hive, while one fights the boss exclusively.
Defeat Phogoth – Reinforcements	-2 Knights+1 Major Knights-1 Wizard+1 Major Wizard	—
Defeat Phogoth – Anti-Camp	-3 Thrall+3 Major Knights	Three big Major Knights come to get you out of the entryway instead of Thrall. Do not spend too much time at this location or you will die.

Objective: Enter Hive Fortress

Location: Hellmouth

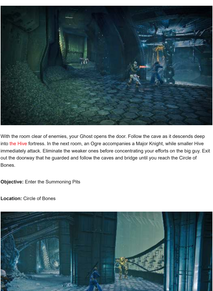


Move into the Gatehouse, eliminating the three Knights who guard the entrance.

Objective: Approach the Gate

Location: Gatehouse

A big horde of Hive occupy the overlook area, including a Wizard. Dismantle the group and continue down into the sword room.

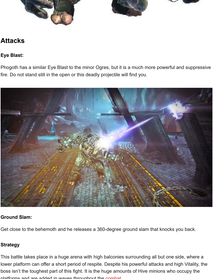


Objective: Open the Gate

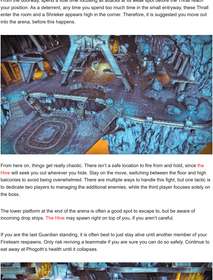
Approach the gate and deploy your Ghost so that he can work on getting it open. This is going to take some time, so turn around and prepare your weapons.

Objective: Repel the Hive

The room becomes a Darkness Zone as Hive spawn ahead. The first wave consists of Thrall and Knights. Quickly strike down the Thrall before focusing on the Knights on the left balcony. Next, Acolytes are joined by a couple Wizards and Knights on the right balcony. Bounce between levels and sides to avoid taking too much damage. The third wave is introduced in the back of the room, consisting of Cursed Thrall, Knights, and Acolytes. As you progress through this group, a Major Wizard and more Knights join the skirmish. Stay on the move and keep an eye out for downed teammates.



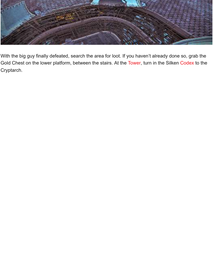
Objective: Find the Summoning Pits



With the room clear of enemies, your Ghost opens the door. Follow the cave as it descends deep into the Hive fortress. In the next room, an Ogre accompanies a Major Knight, while smaller Hive immediately attack. Eliminate the weaker ones before concentrating your efforts on the big guy. Exit out the doorway that he guarded and follow the caves and bridge until you reach the Circle of Bones.

Objective: Enter the Summoning Pits

Location: Circle of Bones



Head to the left, knocking down any Hive that get in your way. Follow the objective markers into the narrow overlook at the far end, where two Major Knights present a small challenge for your Fireteam. Slip into the doorway on the left and follow the path to find The Summoning Pits.

Objective: Defeat Phogoth

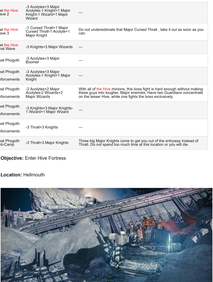
Location: The Summoning Pits

The Hive have an Ultra Ogre chained up inside and it is up to the three Guardians to dispose of it before it is released.

PHOGOTH

Weak Spot: Chest

Attacks: Eye Blast, Ground Slam



Attacks

Eye Blast:

Phogoth has a similar Eye Blast to the minor Ogres, but it is a much more powerful and suppressive fire. Do not stand still in the open or this deadly projectile will find you.

Ground Slam:

Get close to the behemoth and he releases a 360-degree ground slam that knocks you back.

Strategy

This battle takes place in a huge arena with high balconies surrounding all but one side, where a lower platform can offer a short period of respite. Despite his powerful attacks and high Vitality, the boss isn't the toughest part of this fight. It is the huge amounts of Hive minions who occupy the platforms and are added in waves throughout the combat.

The door opens up to reveal the beast chained up, trying to break free, as Hive enemies are strewn all over the arena. One big difference between Phogoth and typical Ogres is its weak spot. Instead of the forehead, you need to focus your attacks at its chest, which can be tough to hit when it slouches over.

From the doorway, spend a little time focusing all attacks at its weak spot before the Thrall reach your position. As a deterrent, any time you spend too much time in the small entryway, these Thrall enter the room and a Shrieker appears high in the corner. Therefore, it is suggested you move out into the arena, before this happens.

From here on, things get really chaotic. There isn't a safe location to fire from and hold, since the Hive will seek you out wherever you hide. Stay on the move, switching between the floor and high balconies to avoid being overwhelmed. There are multiple ways to handle this fight, but one tactic is to dedicate two players to managing the additional enemies, while the third player focuses solely on the boss.

The lower platform at the end of the arena is often a good spot to escape to, but be aware of incoming drop ships. The Hive may spawn right on top of you, if you aren't careful.

If you are the last Guardian standing, it is often best to just stay alive until another member of your Fireteam respawns. Only risk reviving a teammate if you are sure you can do so safely. Continue to eat away at Phogoth's health until it collapses.

With the big guy finally defeated, search the area for loot. If you haven't already done so, grab the Gold Chest on the lower platform, between the stairs. At the Tower, turn in the Silken Codex to the Crystarch.

Destiny
PATROL: PATROL THE MOON

PATROL THE MOON

Level 8 Story / Archer's Line, Ocean of Storms, Moon

Enemy Races: Fallen, Hive

Rewards: XP Bonus, Vanguard Reputation

Patrol Missions

Access one of the many Beacons around the Moon to acquire one of the following missions.

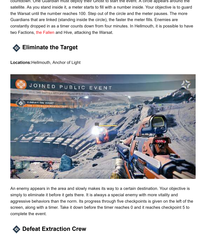
Surface Sanction	Scour the lunar surface for enemies of the City.	Location w/Enemies	XP Bonus
Dust to Dust	Gather Marine Dust, a superfi sediment, from defeated Hive enemies.	Location w/Enemies	Collect Marine Dust
Deny Their Power	Kill Fallen and recover the Shoot Cores they use to charge their weapons and equipment.	Location w/Fallen	Capture Shoot Cores
Reclaim Their Sins	Kill Fallen and collect their Temper Cloth and the data therewithin within.	Location w/Fallen	Collect Temper Cloth
Rites of Obedience	Kill Dregs enemies and collect their newly-minted Cloning Cases for study.	Location w/Fallen Dregs	Collect Cloning Case
Ether Hunt	Find Lucent Fallen Dregs and Vandals and gather the Ether Sacs they deposit on for life.	Location w/Fallen Dregs and Vandals	Recover Ether Sacs
Proxy War	Shoot down Fallen Shanks and recover their Shank Power Cores as spoils of war.	Location w/Fallen Shanks	Salvage Fallen Power Cores
Low-Flying Defense Grunts	Look for Dunal Turrets in the wreck of Fallen Skiffs. They're valuable salvage.	Location w/Fallen Skiffs	Collect Dunal Turrets
Induction To Pain	Search Fallen Vandals for Induction Rods, full of useful energy systems.	Location w/Fallen Vandals	Collect Induction Rods
Husk Harvest	Search dead Hive for Husk Pieces, peeled from their grotesque armor.	Location w/Hive	Collect Husk Pieces
Sample Drafts	Collect the grafted bones of Hive Acolytes as their unnatural fusion can be understood.	Location w/Hive Acolytes	Collect Hive Bones
Gather Arc Inducers	Kill Hive Acolytes and detach their Arc Inducers to study and understand the Hive's Arc powers.	Location w/Hive Acolytes	Collect Arc Inducers
Collect Sunbrokes	Pluk Sunbral Leeches from the flesh of dead Hive Knights so their enzymes can be extracted.	Location w/Hive Knights	Collect Sunbral Leeches
Fallen Tag	The Guardians request a set of glyphs from Fallen Dregs for Fallen Dregs.	Anchor of Light	Scan Glyphs
Built To Last	Gather Fallen Vandals for inclusion Rods, full of useful energy systems.	Anchor of Light	Scan Hive Shields
Shuttle Down	Destroy Dust seeks details on the wreckage of a Fallen Shuttle. Find it and bring it to the Rock. It will future technology development.	Anchor of Light	Scan Shuttle
Not Beyond Infinity	Scan a collapsed arm of the accelerator to aid Dead Orbit in ship and weapon design.	Archer's Line	Analyze Accelerator
Relic Finder	Follow the Cryo's homing energy to of a Hive Cryptarch's Relic Fragment.	Hellmouth	Analyze Relic
Ears To The Ground	Follow the Cryo's homing energy to of a Hive Cryptarch's Relic Fragment.	Anchor of Light	Analyze Cosmo-link
Power Underwhelming	Pete Wyvern's requests data stored in the Cosmo-link of a Fallen Vandal and the Cosmo-link.	Anchor of Light	Fuel Analysis
The Accelerator	Retrieve Golden Age data logged at the Moon's cargo accelerator.	Archer's Line	Transfer Logic
The Stash	Locate a cache of Hive weapons and armor that Dust suspects was hidden by the Hive before the Hellmouth.	Hellmouth	Scan Tech
Into the Caves	Gather intelligence on the environment in their launch chambers for Zur-Lavarel's research.	Archer's Line	Scan Hive Instruments
To the Ship	Scan Hive Knights to learn Dead Orbit's systems.	Temple of Crota	Scan Hive Knights
Reeder Control	Analyze a component of a Hive Seeder to edit mobility in her projectile research.	Temple of Crota	Analyze Component
Will it Blow?	Examine old explosives to determine if ancient fuel sources are still viable.	Archer's Line	Fuel Analysis
Colony Lost	Retrieve Cryptarch Age data logged at the Moon's cargo accelerator.	Hellmouth	Transfer Structure
The Harder They Fall	Take down Hive ceremonially Guardians have been hunting for years.	Temple of Crota	Take Down Ogre
Dizzy To Need A Rope Dart	Taking down one of the great Hive monsters should be a thrill.	Gatehouse	Kill Ogre
Troll Patrol	Bring down a fearsome Hive Ogre and scatter its offerings.	Hall of Wisdom	Kill Ogre
Take Down	Eliminate a Hive Wizard believed to be harboring the Crota.	Temple of Crota	Kill Hive Target
Bury the Wizard	The prize on Hive Wizard's head is high. Take it in.	Gatehouse	Eliminate Hive Target
The Wizard is Dust	Every ship near the Moon can detect the Moon's dark power. No much defeat it.	Hall of Wisdom	Kill Wizard Boss
The Way In	Scout the area surrounding a lesser known entrance to the Hive fortress.	Archer's Line	Scout Hive Entrance
Search and Recover	Assess the viability of reclaiming an abandoned colony base near the Hellmouth.	Hellmouth	Scout Base
In Deep	Investigate the bunch chambers to assess the threat level of the Hive Hellmouth.	Temple of Crota	Probe Area
Tight Grip	Scout the ruins of a Colony base held by Fallen for potential reclamation by coalition forces.	Anchor of Light	Scout Area
All Rail Remains	Survey the extent of the damage the Fallen Dregs have done to the Moon's cargo accelerator.	Anchor of Light	Survey Area
Into The Maw	Revive the interior of the Hive fortress with Light to investigate on the missions opening from the Hellmouth.	Gatehouse	Scout Hellmouth

Public Events

Check out the maps at the start of the Moon chapter to find where the events occur and how often.

Defend the Warsat

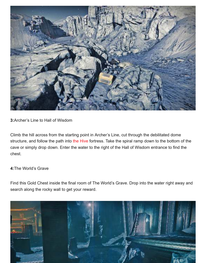
Locations: Archer's Line, Hellmouth, Anchor of Light



A flash of light represents the touchdown of a Warsat in the area as a one-minute timer begins a countdown. Defend the Warsat from the Fallen that attack it in order to keep it from falling into the satellite. As you stand inside it, a meter starts to fill with a number inside. Your objective is to guard the Warsat until the number reaches 100. Step out of the circle and the meter pauses. The more Guardians that are linked (standing inside the circle), the faster the meter fills. Enemies are constantly dropped in as a timer counts down for five minutes. In Hellmouth, it is possible to have the Fanatics, the Fallen and Hive, attacking the Warsat.

Eliminate the Target

Locations: Hellmouth, Anchor of Light



An enemy appears in the area and slowly makes its way to a certain destination. Your objective is simply to eliminate it before it gets there. It is always a special enemy with more vitality and aggressive behaviors than the rest. Its progress through the checkpoints is given on the left of the screen, along with a timer. Take it down before the timer reaches 0 and it reaches checkpoint 5 to complete the event.

Defeat Extraction Crew

Locations: Archer's Line, Hellmouth

A crew of Fallen are dropped into the area by a transport to extract precious Glimmer. The Guardians must clear the drill site by killing all of the Fallen. Once one crew has been defeated, a second shows up elsewhere in the zone. Check out three drill sites to complete the event and earn a Gold Chest.

Destroy Fallen Walker

Location: Anchor of Light

A Fallen drop ship delivers a Devil Walker into the public space. Now it is up to the Guardians to defeat the berk, before it causes too much trouble. Take down the target in the same manner as in the Earth Strike, Devils' Lair. Do so before the Hive fortress inner reaches zero to complete the event with a Gold Tier. Remember that it is invulnerable until its lights come on.

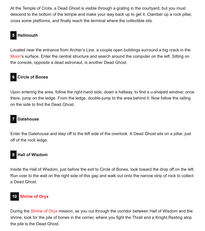
Gold Chests

1 Temple of Crota

Enter the temple, drop to the lowest floor, and spin to the right to find the exit. Follow the path further into the Hive temple. Cross the bridge into the ship and continue out the right side—stopping at the end of the ramp. Look down to the right to spot a small platform with a Gold Chest.

2Archer's Line to Hellmouth

As you make your way to Hellmouth from Archer's Line, look for a rock formation on the left just before the short bridge. Look behind it to find this Gold Chest.



3Archer's Line to Hall of Wisdom

Climb the hill across from the starting point in Archer's Line, cut through the debilitated dome structure, and follow the path to the Hive fortress. Take the spiral ramp down to the bottom of the cave or simply drop down. Enter the water to the right of the Hall of Wisdom entrance to find the chest.

4The World's Grave

Find this Gold Chest inside the final room of The World's Grave. Drop into the water right away and search along the rocky wall to get your reward.

5The Summoning Pits

This chest is only accessible during the Moon Strike, The Summoning Pit. Move over to the lower platform at the far end of the arena and search between the two staircases.

Dead Ghost Locations

1 **Archer's Line**

From the landing zone, approach the cargo accelerator that spans across the zone and turn left. Climb up the pile of containers and search the right side of the accelerator tube to find a Dead Ghost in a small nook.

2 **Archer's Line**

Find the moon dome at the top of the hill, near the accelerator. Look over the edge to the right to spot a Dead Ghost nesting on a giant satellite dish.

3 **Anchor of Light**

Locate the main building with a giant satellite dish. You'll have to climb and jump up the girders in order to find the dead ghost on one of the supporting beams.

4 **Temple of Crota**

At the Temple of Crota, a Dead Ghost is visible through a grating in the courtyard, but you must descend to the bottom of the temple and make your way back up to get it. Clamber up a rock pillar, cross some platforms, and finally reach the terminal where the collectible sits.

5 **Hellmouth**

Located near the entrance from Archer's Line, a couple open buildings surround a big crack in the Moon's surface. Enter the central structure and search around the corner, where you'll find the console, opposite a dead astronaut, is another Dead Ghost.

6 **Circle of Bones**

Upon entering the area, follow the right-hand side, down a hallway, to find a u-shaped window; once there, jump on the ledge. From the ledge, double-jump to the area behind it. Now follow the railing on the side to find the Dead Ghost.

7 **Gatehouse**

Enter the Gatehouse and step off to the left side of the overlook. A Dead Ghost sits on a pillar, just off of the rock ledge.

8 **Hall of Wisdom**

Inside the Hall of Wisdom, just before the exit to Circle of Bones, look toward the drop off on the left. Run over to the wall on the right side of this gap and walk out onto the narrow strip of rock to collect a Dead Ghost.

9 **Shrine of Oryx**

During the Shrine of Oryx mission, as you cut through the corridor between Hall of Wisdom and the shrine, look for the pile of bones in the corner, where you fight the Thrall and a Knight Reeking atop the pile is the Dead Ghost.

VENUS

OVERVIEW

When the Traveler parted the clouds of poison gas around Venus and raised its seas, lush jungles blossomed from equator to poles. The records tell of the shining cities our ancestors built on that fresh new world. The greatest universities, museums, and libraries—all now swallowed by the jungle again.

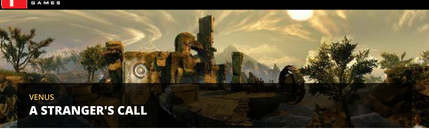
Without the Traveler's Light, the sulfuric gasses of the planet's blue-burning volcanoes have begun to choke the skies once more. And some believe the ancient Vex that once occupied these lands have returned to claim it. Time is running out for us to explore the ruins of our ancestors, and bring home the knowledge and relics of the Golden Age before the planet consumes itself.

Resource:

Spirit Bloom

Enemy Races (Faction):

Fallen (House of Wolves, House of Winter), Vex (Hezen Corrective, Hezen Protective)



A STRANGER'S CALL

Level 10 Story / Headlands, Ishtar Sink, Venus

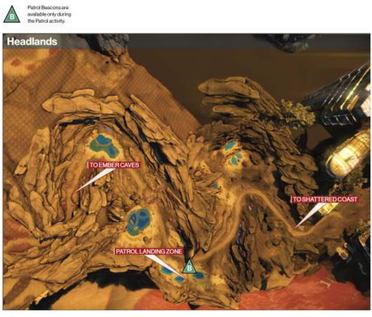
Enemy Races: Fallen, Vex

Suggested Damage Types: Void

Rewards: XP Bonus, Armor Upgrade

Missions Unlocked: Patrol Venus (The player must visit the Reef and select The Awoken before continuing through the story.)

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Resist the Vex – Wave 2	+1 Minotaur	The Minotaur is introduced earlier on tougher difficulties.
Resist the Vex – Wave 3	+1 Minotaur	—
Resist the Vex – Wave 4	+1 Major Minotaur	Eliminate the weaker Vex before focusing your attention on the Major Minotaur.
Resist the Vex – Wave 5	+1 Major Minotaur	—
Resist the Vex – Wave 6	+1 Major MinotaurPer Sniper Squad – Hobgoblin and two Goblins	—



Objective: Find Guardian Outpost

Location: Shattered Coast

Just as you did on Earth and Moon, you must put in some legwork before using your Sparrow. Head down the hill into the Shattered Coast, killing the Fallen who occupy the street. The outpost is just around the corner, near the sea. A handful of enemies wander the area, so take care of them before you deploy your Ghost at the terminal.

Objective: Activate Vex Sensors

Continue down the coast until you find a group of Fallen inside the final building. Clear them out and then step up to the computer at the top of the steps. Have your Ghost access it to find your next destination.

Objective: Find the Coordinates

Location: Ishtar Academy

Return back up the coast, making a right turn when you reach the crew of Fallen. Drop into the hole and follow the corridor into Ishtar Academy.

Objective: Scan the Conflux

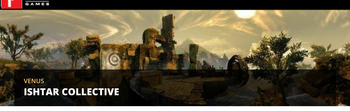
The area becomes a Darkness Zone. Step up to the conflux of energy and deploy your Ghost to investigate. This provides your first look at the Vex. Balconies on each side of Ishtar Academy offer alternate vantage points and a means of escape. A stairwell cutting through the middle of each side lets you gain a flanking position against the enemy.

Objective: Resist the Vex

First comes a big group of Goblins. Hit them in their glowing abs to destroy them faster. Blowing off their heads causes them to shoot erratically and rush toward you more quickly. Don't underestimate a group of them at range, as their blink walk ability lets them cover long distances very quickly. Hobgoblins join in next. They're very similar to Goblins, but they immediately shield when they're hit. So, unless you take them out with a high-powered weapon, you must wait for them to stand up again before you finish them off.

Eventually, a Minotaur shows up by the far door. This foe has the same blink walk ability and also fires erratically when its head is shot off. This is where the similarities end. It does not have a weak spot, and it is equipped with a Void shield. A teleport move lets it escape danger immediately, making it tougher to hit with your slower high-powered weapons.

A mix of these Vex types continues popping into the academy for six waves in all. Wipe out all of them to complete the first story mission on Venus. Once you're back at the Tower, turn in the Goblin's Eye to your Vanguard mentor for a choice of armor. Before you continue the story, you must journey to the Reef and visit The Awoken.



ISHTAR COLLECTIVE

Level 11 Story / Headlands, Ishtar Sink, Venus

Enemy Races: Fallen, Vex

Suggested Damage Types: Void, Arc (Epic)

Rewards: XP Bonus, Armor Upgrade

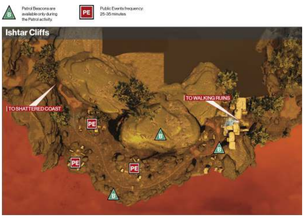
Mission Unlocked: Eye of a Gate Lord

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Eliminate the Fallen	Vandal upgraded to Major Vandal	—
Hold off the Vex – Wave 1	+2 Vex Squads	
Hold off the Vex – Wave 2	+2 Vex Squads3 Hobgoblins upgraded to Major Hobgoblins	Be careful not to become surrounded by the Vex—especially the six Minotaur in the final wave. Note that Harpies gain an Arc shield on Epic.
Hold off the Vex – Wave 3	+2 Vex Squads+3 Minotaur2 Minotaur upgraded to Major Minotaur	

Objective: Head up the Coast

Location: Shattered Coast

Move back up the Shattered Coast, making a left at the building you visited during the previous mission. Next, continue to the sea before winding your way into Ishtar Cliffs.



Objective: Find a Mind Core

Location: Ishtar Cliffs

Fallen occupy the first cliffs area, but you can speed directly past. Just ahead, a Cyclops phases into the zone. Harpies, Hobgoblins, and Goblins also inhabit the cliffs. The Cyclops lobs explosive projectiles from its perch, so be ready to sidestep to avoid the impact. Use the short wall for cover, pull out your Heavy Weapon, and fire at its eye. Note that it starts to fire erratically when it's low on health. After it explodes into little pieces, collect the Vex Mind Core that's left behind.

Objective: Find the Research Site

Location: Campus 9

Exit Ishtar Cliffs via the opposite side, and continue through the Waking Ruins. Enter the narrow passageway and wind your way to Campus 9, which is designated a Darkness Zone.

Objective: Eliminate the Fallen

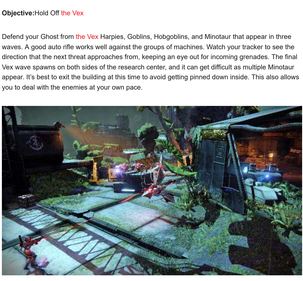
Fallen Vandals, Dregs, and Shanks patrol the area. Clear them out as you make your way to the research center.

Objective: Analyze Mind Core

Deploy your Ghost at the terminal so he can analyze the item. This gets the attention of the Vex, who spawn just outside.

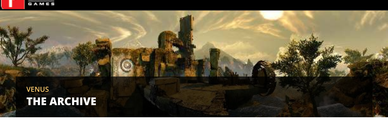
Objective: Hold Off the Vex

Defend your Ghost from the Vex Harpies, Goblins, Hobgoblins, and Minotaur that appear in three waves. A good auto rifle works well against the groups of machines. Watch your tracker to see the direction that the next threat approaches from, keeping an eye out for incoming grenades. The final Vex wave spawns on both sides of the research center, and it can get difficult as multiple Minotaur appear. It's best to exit the building at this time to avoid getting pinned down inside. This also allows you to deal with the enemies at your own pace.



Objective: Return to Ghost

With the threat eliminated, return to your Ghost to complete the mission. Turn in the Radiolaria to the Vanguard mentor to receive armor.



THE ARCHIVE

Level 12 Story / Headlands, Ishtar Sink, Venus

Enemy Races: Vex, Fallen

Suggested Damage Types: Void, Arc, Solar (Epic)

Rewards: XP Bonus

Missions Unlocked: Scourge of Winter, The Nexus Strike

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Multiple Objectives in the Archive	Additional Fallen squads spawn in each wave.	At the start of this area, you can eliminate a bunch of the Fallen with a long-range weapon. However, you must move throughout the platforms and walkways to completely clear them out. Bring a good auto rifle or shotgun for best results.

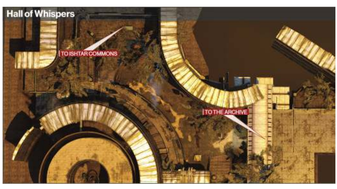
Objective: Enter the Academy

Location: Ishtar Academy

Take your Sparrow back down the coast, turning left at the group of Fallen, and dropping into the hole, just as you did during A Stranger's Call. Continue into Ishtar Academy, where the Fallen and Vex fight it out. You can let this play out a little before you attack. Use the balconies and rear stairwells to improve your odds against the two enemy races. Exit via the back of the room, and follow the corridors into Ishtar Commons, where the two sides still skirmish. No need to get involved in this one, though, because your destination is just ahead on the left. A few Fallen get in your way as you slip through the open door. This takes you into the Hall of Whispers, which is designated a Darkness Zone.

Objective: Kill the Fallen

Location: Hall of Whispers



The Major Servitor, Similks-3, leads a group of Vandals, Dregs, and Shanks. As you fight your way through the Fallen, duck into one of the side rooms to avoid taking too much damage. The Major Vandals put up a strong fight, so be prepared. Defeat the entire squad to continue the story.

Objective: Open the Vault

Enter the back room and deploy your Ghost at the console to gain access to the Archive.

Objective: Extract the Archive

Location: The Archive

Descend the steps into the vault. Move over to the main computer on the left and deploy your Ghost to extract information.

Objective: Stop the Fallen

Equip your long-range weapon and thin out the Fallen from a distance, until a Servitor starts to cause trouble. Now you must move away from the main core to deal with the problem.

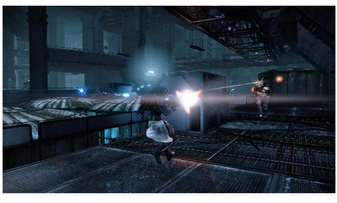
Objective: Repair the Conduit

Equip your auto rifle or shotgun, fight your way over to the panel, and eliminate the spherical foe and his army of Dregs. Watch out for sneaky Stealth Vandals; make sure they don't get the jump on you. With the area clear, release your Ghost to repair the conduit. As he does this, start making your way to the opposite side of the Archive.

Objective: Repair Backup Conduit

Another Servitor makes trouble, along with his crew of Stealth Vandals and Shanks. Use the multiple levels of platforms to escape danger as you clear out the Fallen. Again, have your Ghost repair the conduit.

Objective: Eliminate Fallen



You can now return to the console to extract the Archival Files—more Fallen get in your way. Watch for the Major Captain and Major Vandals as you fight your way back to the objective. Stealth Vandals continue sneaking in from the sides, so remain vigilant.

Objective: Complete the Extraction

With the Archive free of Fallen, again deploy your Ghost to complete the extraction. Back at the Tower, turn in the Archival Files to the Cryptarch for a reward.

SCOURGE OF WINTER

Level 12 Story / Headlands, Ishtar Sink, Venus

Enemy Race: Fallen

Suggested Damage Types: Arc, Solar (Epic)

Rewards: XP Bonus

Mission Unlocked: Winter's Run Strike

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Kill Draksis	Draksis' adds refresh faster. Stealth Vandals added when Draksis' health is low.	Watch for Stealth Vandals, as they are easy to lose track of and can cause serious damage if they sneak up on you.

Patrol Beacons are available only during the Patrol activity.

PE Public Events frequency: 25-35 minutes

Objective: Enter the Fallen Hideout

Location: Ember Caves

This time, instead of heading up the coast, go left and follow the path into Ember Caves. The Fallen hideout is on your left as you drive past it to the far end of the zone. Work your way back up the platforms, eliminating the Fallen that block your access. At the far left side, enter the cave and follow it back to Winter's Lair.

Objective: Take Out the Kell's Guard

Location: Winter's Lair

Plow through a small group of Fallen as you explore deeper into the lair. When you reach the cavern, work on the weaker Fallen that attack at the start before you head up the dirt path. As you reach the higher platform, three Kell Guards attack. Two of them have Shock Blades, while the third carries a rifle. Backtrack down the path as the two melee Vandals pursue; take them down with your close-range weapon. Finish off the remaining guard as you exit via the other side.

Objective: Find Draksis

Follow the trail up to a higher ledge that overlooks the cavern. A Gold Chest rests on a narrow ledge on the cavern's side. Tightrope onto the nearby pole, and perform a special jump to reach the prize. When you're ready, continue following the cave as it exits into the Cinders, a Darkness Zone with an extremely long line of sight. If it's available, equip your sniper or scout rifle as you move outside.

Objective: Storm the Ketch

Location: The Cinders

Move down the left path until you reach an overlook. Spend some time picking off as many Fallen as you can. Continue down the left side, eliminating enemies as you go. It's easy for the scavengers to overwhelm you, so be ready to jump away from the action to recover. Work your way between cover, making progress toward the ship. A Servitor and Captain pose the toughest challenge. Once you're nearly aboard, move inside, where more Dregs, Vandals, and a Captain resist your entry. This is a good time to switch to a short-range weapon.

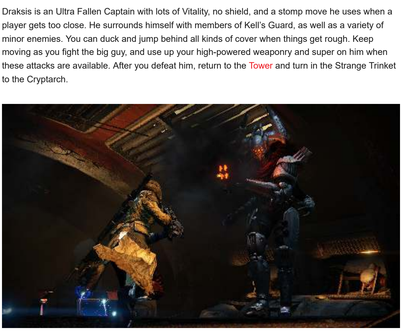
Objective: Assault the Throne Room

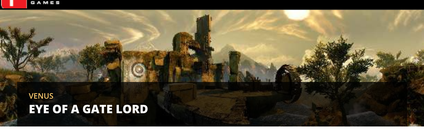
Location: Wintership Simiks- Fel

Continue through the corridors, taking out more Fallen that get in the way. At the end of the hall, enter the open door and take out the Kell's guards and Servitor, as well as their minions. Exit through the door on the room's opposite side. Draksis waits in the throne room at the top of the stairs.

Objective: Kill Draksis

Draksis is an Ultra Fallen Captain with lots of Vitality, no shield, and a stomp move he uses when a player gets too close. He surrounds himself with members of Kell's Guard, as well as a variety of minor enemies. You can duck and jump behind all kinds of cover when things get rough. Keep moving as you fight the big guy, and use up your high-powered weaponry and super on him when these attacks are available. After you defeat him, return to the Tower and turn in the Strange Trinket to the Cryptarch.





EYE OF A GATE LORD

Level 13 Story / Headlands, Ishtar Sink, Venus

Enemy Races: Fallen, Vex

Suggested Damage Types: Void, Arc (Epic)

Rewards: XP Bonus, Ship Upgrade

Mission Unlocked: A Key Awaits (Reef), which unlocks Exclusion Zone and Cerberus Vae III (Mars)

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Slay the Gate Lord	Goblin, Hobgoblin, Harpy adds refresh faster with two extra hobgoblins per.	With more adds, it's more important to hit the boss with your supers and powerful weaponry when they're available.

Patrol Beacons are available only during the Patrol activity.

Public Events frequency: 25-35 minutes

Objective: Scan the Vex Network

Location: The Citadel

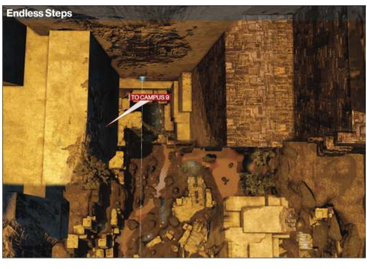
Jump on your Sparrow and ride through Ember Caves to reach the Citadel. In the far left corner, a Major Minotaur and two regular Minotaur guard a conflux. Take them out before your Ghost scans the network.

Objective: Find the Endless Steps

Location: Campus 9

Mount the Sparrow and take the nearby exit leaving the Citadel. Follow the path to Waking Ruins and then on to Campus 9. Designated a Darkness Zone, Vex machines now inhabit the area. After you clear out the Goblins near the research center, a Transfer Gate in the distance lights up and starts churning out more Goblins. Quickly equip a high-powered weapon, destroy the gate, and then take out the spawned Vex. A sniper rifle or rocket launcher is highly effective against these gates.

Five more gates are spread throughout the rest of this zone—Goblins, Hobgoblins, Harpies, and Minotaur surround all of them. Carefully round each corner, destroying the gates as soon as you can see a sliver, and eliminate the Vex along the way. Watch out for Hobgoblin snipers that perch high on the ruins. A Hydra blocks the path toward the end of the area. Take it out by hitting its "eye" when its shield rotates around back. Be careful after you defeat it, as its head drops to the ground and explodes a few seconds later.



Objective: Ascend the Steps

Location: Endless Steps

Exit Campus 9 through the narrow passage behind the Hydra. This leads to Endless Steps, with a clear view of a massive Vex gate. Move down the hill to the right, and follow the stream back to the left, obliterating the Goblins and Hobgoblins along the way. At the steps, climb to the top; more Vex spawn ahead of you.

Objective: Summon the Gate Lord

At the top of the stairs, step inside the ring to summon Zydron the Gate Lord.

Objective: Slay the Gate Lord

Backtrack down the stairs as the Ultra Minotaur appears from the gate. This Minotaur is not equipped with a shield, and a weak spot is on its abdomen. Goblins, Hobgoblins, and Harpies spawn in throughout the battle—save your Heavy Weapon ammo and supers for the boss. It's possible to defeat this boss on the steps by taking cover behind the stone ruins, but you have the entire Endless Steps zone. You can fight the Gate Lord from a great distance with a long-range weapon.

With the Gate Lord out of the way, proceed to the Reef and deliver the Gate Lord's eye.

STRIKE: WINTER'S RUN

Level 14 Strike / Ishtar Sink, Venus

Enemy Race(s): Vex, Fallen

Suggested Damage Types: Arc, Void, Solar (Epic)

Rewards: XP Bonus, Armor Upgrade

Missions Unlocked: –

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Fight through the Lair	1 Hydra+1 Major Hydra	The Major Hydra is vulnous with its explosive projectiles. Be careful and take it down quickly for the best results!
Kill Them All + Wave 2	+2 Major Hobgoblins	—
Kill Them All + Wave 3	+2 Major Hobgoblins	—
Kill Them All + Wave 4	+1 Major Hydra	—
Track the Archon Priest	2 Hobgoblins+3 Major Hobgoblins+2 Hobgoblins+3 Major Hobgoblins+2 Minotaur	—
Slay the Archon Priest	2 Vandal snipers+2 Major Vandal snipers+4 Stealth Vandals+2 Major Stealth Vandals	This boss fight is already chaotic before adding these Major Fallen. Remember to use your Super when you see the Major Fallen. Also, for Fireteam members who may need help, if you're the last Guardian standing, stay alive and eliminate reinforcers.
Slay the Archon Priest + Kill Them All With Audio and Shank (won't see these 3)	+4 Shrick Blade Captains+2 Shrick Barrage Captains+2 Captains+1 Major Servitor(Captains enter via two drop ships)	

Objective: Infiltrate Winter's Lair

Location: Winter's Lair

Just as you did in Scourge of Winter, head over to Ember Caves and fight your way into Winter's Lair, which is a Darkness Zone in this Strike.

Objective: Fight through the Lair

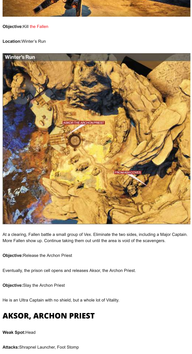
The Vex appear to be invading the Fallen lair. Fight your way into the cavern, where a Hydra surrounds itself with Goblins and Hobgoblins. Focus attacks on Hydra, because it can wreak havoc on the team if it's left unchecked. Mow up the dirt path to find Fallen defending against the Vex attack. Wipe out all of them as you move on to the Cinders.

Objective: Expel Enemy Forces

Location: The Cinders

A skirmish between the Vex and Fallen forms a dangerous battlefield below. Equip a long-range weapon and Bolt out the northern horn the cliff above. Then move down the left path as you continue fighting both enemy races.

Objective: Breach the Hatch



With the enemy wiped out, move to the door and deploy your Ghost so he can get the hatch open.

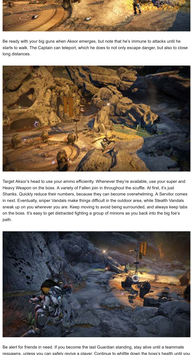
Objective: Kill Them All

Turn around and brace yourself for a Vex onslaught. The first wave consists of Goblins and Major Minotaur. Equipping a Void weapon makes this fight much easier. Goblins and Major Hobgoblins pop in next. The first wave consists of two Major Hydras with a group of Harpies. Close out the little ones before you focus all fire at a Hydra.

Objective: Track the Archon Priest

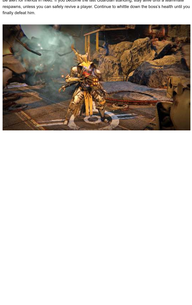
Location: Ash Coves

With the hatch open, follow the path until you reach four Pikes. Hop on and continue through Ash Coves. Use the cannons to mow down the Vex that get in your way. Protect your Pike as well as you can by dodging behind rock cover to avoid incoming fire. Two Major Hydras stand guard further down the path. Take them out before you dismount the vehicles and proceed ahead.



Objective: Kill the Fallen

Location: Winter's Run



At a clearing, Fallen battle a small group of Vex. Eliminate the two sides, including a Major Captain. More Fallen show up. Continue taking them out until the area is void of the scavengers.

Objective: Release the Archon Priest

Eventually, the prison cell opens and releases Aksor, the Archon Priest.

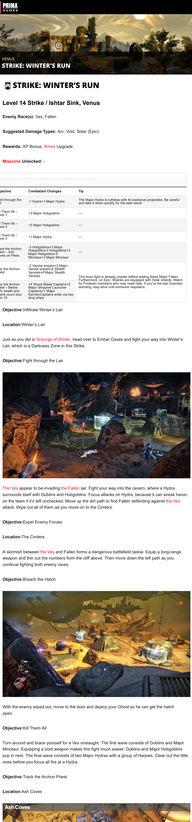
Objective: Slay the Archon Priest

He is an Ultra Captain with no shield, but a whole lot of Vitality.

AKSOR, ARCHON PRIEST

Weak Spot: Head

Attacks: Shrapnel Launcher, Foot Stomp



Shrapnel Launcher:

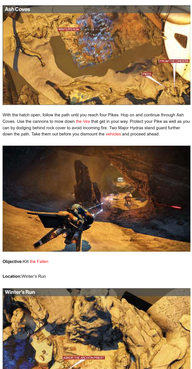
This is the standard weapon for Captains. His gun shreds through players, so be careful taking him on out in the open.

Foot Stomp:

As with all Ultras, he also has a pushback attack. Get too close, and he stomps his foot, sending you flying.

Strategy

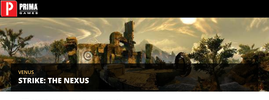
The fight takes place in a mostly open, outdoor area. Caves on the side offer some protection, while a high overlook platform gives you a nice sniping position—however, you never have much time before an enemy finds you. Aksor pursues his target everywhere on the map. A long-range weapon can come in handy occasionally, but your best bet is a good auto rifle or shotgun.



Be ready with your big guns when Aksor emerges, but note that he's immune to attacks until he starts to walk. The Captain can teleport, which he does to not only escape danger, but also to close long distances.

Target Aksor's head to use your ammo efficiently. Whenever they're available, use your super and Heavy Weapon on the boss. A variety of Fallen join in throughout the scuffle. At first, it's just Shanks. Quickly reduce their numbers, because they can become overwhelming. A Servitor comes in next. Eventually, sniper Vandals make things difficult in the outdoor area, while Stealth Vandals sneak up on you wherever you are. Keep moving to avoid being surrounded, and always keep tabs on the boss. It's easy to get distracted fighting a group of minions as you back into the big fox's path.

Be alert for friends in need. If you become the last Guardian standing, stay alive until a teammate respawns, unless you can safely revive a player. Continue to whittle down the boss's health until you finally defeat him.



STRIKE: THE NEXUS

Level 14 Strike / Ishtar Commons, Ishtar Sink, Venus

Enemy Races: Vex, Fallen

Suggested Damage Types: Void, Arc, Solar (Epic)

Rewards: XP Bonus, Armor Upgrade

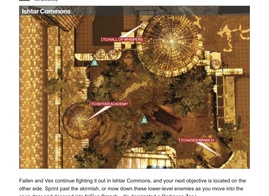
Mission Unlocked: -

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Stalk the Servitors - Initial Fallen	-3 Dregs+3 Major Vandals	---
Stalk the Servitors - Right Servitor	-2 Vandals-2 Dregs+4 Major Vandals	---
Stalk the Servitors - Left Servitor	-1 Vandal-3 Dregs+1 Major Vandal (Shock Blaster)+3 Major Vandals (rifles)	Use the multiple levels and offices to escape danger when things start to get overwhelming.
Stalk the Servitors - Final Servitor	-1 Captain-3 Shanks+1 Major Captain+3 Vandals	---
Find the Nexus - Exiting N'Gen Branch	-6 Vandals+3 Stealth Vandals+3 Major Vandals	---
Find the Nexus - First Encounter	Goblins become Major Goblins	---
Find the Nexus	Hobgoblins become Major Hobgoblins	---
Find the Nexus	Minotaur become Major Minotaur	---
The Nexus	Minotaur become Major Minotaur	---

Objective: Descend into the Academy

Location: Ishtar Commons

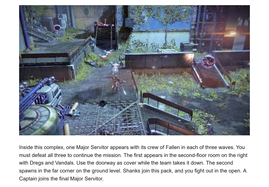
Patrol.Resource.com
available only during
the Promotion!



Fallen and Vex continue fighting it out in Ishtar Commons, and your next objective is located on the other side. Sprint past the skirmish, or mow down these lower-level enemies as you move into the open door and descend into N'Gen Branch—it's designated a Darkness Zone.

Objective: Stalk the Servitors

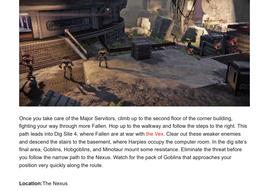
Location: N'Gen Branch



Inside this complex, one Major Servitor appears with its crew of Fallen in each of three waves. You must defeat all three to continue the mission. The first appears in the second-floor room on the right with Dregs and Vandals. Use the doorway as cover while the team takes it down. The second spawns in the far corner on the ground level. Shanks join this pack, and you fight out in the open. A Captain joins the final Major Servitor.

Objective: Find the Nexus

Location: Dig Site 4



Once you take care of the Major Servitors, climb up to the second floor of the corner building, fighting your way through more Fallen. Hop up to the walkway and follow the steps to the right. This path leads into Dig Site 4, where Fallen are at war with the Vex. Clear out these weaker enemies and descend the stairs to the basement, where Harpies occupy the computer room. In the dig site's final area, Goblins, Hobgoblins, and Minotaur mount some resistance. Eliminate the threat before you follow the narrow path to the Nexus. Watch for the pack of Goblins that approaches your position very quickly along the route.

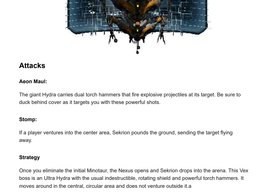
Location: The Nexus

When you find the Nexus itself, the team stands on a ledge high above the ground. Drop off and perform a second jump or glide just before you touch down to avoid taking unnecessary damage. Minotaur occupy a path that runs around the cavern's perimeter. Team up on each Minotaur as you fight your way through the Vex. Bring along a Void weapon, as it eats through the enemy's shield much faster. The Minotaur's blink walk allows them to close in on their targets very quickly, so be careful to avoid being surrounded.

SEKRION, NEXUS MIND

Weak Spots: "Eye"

Attacks: Dual Torch Hammers, Stomp



Attacks

Aeon Maul:

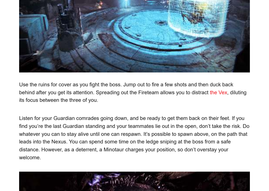
The giant Hydra carries dual torch hammers that fire explosive projectiles at its target. Be sure to duck behind cover as it targets you with these powerful shots.

Stomp:

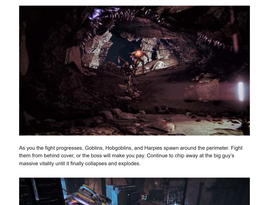
If a player ventures into the center area, Sekrion pounds the ground, sending the target flying away.

Strategy

Once you eliminate the initial Minotaur, the Nexus opens and Sekrion drops into the arena. This Vex boss is an Ultra Hydra with the usual indestructible, rotating shield and powerful torch hammers. It moves around in the central, circular area and does not venture outside it.a

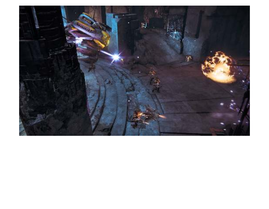


Its shield blocks all attacks, but it does not extend all the way around the machine. Instead, the shield rotates around the boss, so you must wait for it to move out of the way before you can inflict any damage. It's possible to hit the very top of the Hydra's head when the shield is in front, but this is a very small target. Hit it in its glowing "eye" to deliver critical damage.



Use the ruins for cover as you fight the boss. Jump out to fire a few shots and then duck back behind after you get its attention. Spreading out the Fireteam allows you to distract the Vex, diluting its focus between the three of you.

Listen for your Guardian comrades going down, and be ready to get them back on their feet. If you find you're the last Guardian standing and your teammates lie out in the open, don't take the risk. Do whatever you can to stay alive until one can respawn. It's possible to spawn above, on the path that leads into the Nexus. You can spend some time on the ledge angling at the boss from a safe distance. However, as a deterrent, a Minotaur charges your position, so don't overstay your welcome.



As you the fight progresses, Goblins, Hobgoblins, and Harpies spawn around the perimeter. Fight them from behind cover, or the boss will make you pay. Continue to chip away at the big guy's massive vitality until it finally collapses and explodes.

VENUS

RAID: VAULT OF GLASS

RAID: VAULT OF GLASS

Level 26 Raid / The Citadel, Ishtar Sink, Venus

Rewards: Raid Set Gear, Ascendant Materials

Mission Unlocked: -

In order to participate in the Raid, you must build your light level well beyond Level 20. You must be within a few levels of 27 even to access it, but going beyond this isn't a bad idea. Team up with five other players to take on this massive, cooperative mission. It's best to have a means of communication to convey strategies. In the Citadel, a gate must be opened to access the evil inside. Intriguing puzzles and merciless foes await those who are up for the challenge.

PATROL: PATROL VENUS

Level 11 Patrol / Ishtar Sink, Venus

Enemy Faction: Fallen, Vex

Rewards: Spirit Bloom, Vanguard Reputation

Patrol Missions

Access one of the many Beacons around Venus to acquire one of the following missions.

Enjoy Need Bear Stuff	Scout the area surrounding the lichen region for Vanguard Commendations.	Located on an Exoskeleton	Collect Exoskeleton Parts
Stone Tumbl	Take down any Hobbs in the area.	Located at Everlasting	Defeat Hobbs
Dairy Treat Patrol	Kill Fallen and recover the Stone Tear Crystals they're carrying.	Located at Fallen	Collect Stone Tear Crystals
All in the Game	Kill surprisingly Fallen and search their bodies for Fallen Playbooks.	Located at Fallen	Collect Fallen Playbooks
Rites of Shadehorn	Kill Dreg servitors and collect their rarer Shadehorn Cooking Cans for Tess.	Located at Fallen	Collect Shadehorn Cooking Cans
Ether Hunt	Take out Fallen Dregs and Vandals and gather the Ether Keys they leave on the ground.	Located at Fallen Dregs and Vandals	Retrieve Ether Keys
Proxy Star	Shoot down Fallen Exhalers and recover their Proxy Stones for Banshee-44.	Located on the Fallen Exhaler	Salvage Proxy Stones
Industrial to Rust	Search Fallen Vandals for Industrial Rocks, full of Rust Regulator crystals.	Located at Fallen Vandals	Collect Industrial Rocks
Rots to Rust	Collect Rots Joints from any Vex.	Located on Vex	Collect Rots Joints
Bring it Together	Clean out any Hive you encounter and gather Brute Dwellings and servitude Altars.	Located on Vex	Collect Brute Dwellings
Crystal Clear	Loot down the Lords and recover their Focusing Crystals.	Located on Fallen	Collect Fallen Crystals
Step Down	Locate Goblins in the area and recover their Goblin Step Devices.	Located on the Goblin	Collect Goblin Step Devices
Packs a Punch	Track down Vex Hexbots in the region carrying Vex Power Cells.	Located on Vex Hexbots	Collect Vex Power Cells
Take Just a Bit	Take down any Hobgoblins you see first and recover their Hobgoblin Claws.	Located on the Hobgoblin	Collect Hobgoblin Claws
How Data-n-Base	Recover these power components from any Vex you find and scan.	Located on the Vex Hexbots	Collect Vex Power Cells
Torch Them	Kill any Vex Minotaur or your nights and recover their Torchlight Bearings.	Located on Vex Minotaur	Collect Torchlight Bearings
Needsman Case	Hack Hexbots and Acolytes from the skies and recover their Hexbot Cases.	Located on the Vex Hexbots and Acolytes	Retrieve Hexbot Cases
Share a Tank	Hunt the Hydras and Minotaur for this nearly impenetrable Vex Armor.	Located on the Vex Hydra and Minotaur	Collect Vex Armor
Time is the Enemy	The Cryptarch has requested an analysis of the Vex Time Crystals in the area.	Within Cliffs	Scan Time Crystals
It Works	Kill Vex Goblins and recover their Goblin Tools with a Vex Academy Commission.	Within Commons	Scan Goblin Tools
Shipwreck	Search Fallen Vandals for Fallen Pocket Lint. Fallen Lint is useful to a lot of people.	Within Commons	Scan Pocket Lint
Really Big Eyes	Meet Orbit pond-life an amalgam of a Fallen Exhaler and Vex Hydra. Kill them and recover the Hydra Eyes they're carrying.	Entrain Cases	Scan Hydra Eyes
Winter's Wake	Take Rasputin's vanity as information that might help us defeat him. Scan Vex Time Crystals.	Within Cliffs	Scan Time Crystals
Bridge to Rock	Acquire these power components from any Vex you find and scan.	The Citadel	Scan Power Cells
Proof is in the Pond	Take Rasputin's vanity as information that might help us defeat him. Scan Vex Time Crystals.	Within Cliffs	Scan Time Crystals
The Walls Have Eyes	Take Rasputin's vanity as information that might help us defeat him. Scan Vex Time Crystals.	The Citadel	Complete Objectives
Wicked Hours	Take down any Vex Minotaur you find and recover their Torchlight Bearings.	Shattered Coast	Collect Torchlight Bearings
Cast and Eat	Kill Locomb'ts and/or acolytes and gradually their communications device in the Hacking Rocks.	Waking Rocks	Scan Communications Device
Backup Power	Complete Holiday event quest to get a pair of Winterbite Earmuffs and Winterbite Gloves.	Shattered Coast	Get Event Rewards
A Fallen Bird	Holliday is eager to hear all she can about the Fallen and has ordered Fallen ship to be killed and scanned.	Within Commons	Scan Ship
About to Blow	Banished kill a various about Vex relics in the Hacking Rocks and scan them for more information.	Waking Rocks	Scan Communications Device
Banks of Light	Banished kill is interested in recapturing Vex Time Crystals in the area and scanning them for more information.	Within Cliffs	Scan Time Crystals
Knock the Hustle	Take down 4 Fallen captains responsible for Holliday's death and recover their Captain Keys to acquire Captain Keys.	Campus 9	Kill Fallen Captains
Fallen Advance	A synopsis of Fallen have been banished. Kill Fallen Captains and scan their Captain Keys.	Hall of Whispers	Eliminate Captains
Unauthorized Access	Take down a Servitor leading off the servicing Vex Locomb'ts	Within Academy	Scan Vex Locomb'ts
Stop the Downloading	Complete Holiday event quest to get a pair of Winterbite Earmuffs and Winterbite Gloves.	Hall of Whispers	Get Event Rewards
A Fallen Bird	Holliday is eager to hear all she can about the Fallen and has ordered Fallen ship to be killed and scanned.	Campus 9	Ship Fallen Ship
Right Between the Eye	Assassinate a deadly Vex Minotaur captured in the Hacking Rocks and scan its Vex Eye.	Within Branch	Kill Vex Minotaur
Get Some Distance	A Vex Minotaur that let a team of Guardians in the Hacking Rocks and scan its Vex Eye.	Within Academy	Eliminate Vex Minotaur
Setting Up Shop	Kill Vex Minotaur in Hacking Rocks and scanning it across the network in the area.	The Junction	Kill Vex Minotaur
Packing	Systematic assaults Vex Hexbots and scanning them for more information.	Within Academy	Kill Target
Can't Be Stopped	A Hobgoblin that has proved nearly impossible to kill has been reported in the area.	The Junction	Ship Vex Hobgoblin
Wreck Shop	Build Fast Hack House of Winter's Ice data to Vex Hexbots and scan them for more information.	Entrain Cases	Scout Lab
Rock n Shock	Evaluate enemy battlefield tactics.	Within Commons	Evaluate Battlefield Tactics
Shock - Extra, Extra!	Investigate recent activity beneath the Shock Core Core Academy.	Shattered Coast	Ship Shock
Case by Case	Kill Vex Goblins and recover the Goblin Collector Cases they're carrying.	Shattered Coast	Collect Goblin Collector Cases
Cube to Where?	The Cipher is requesting that we scout the area near the Tunnels Cube in the Waking Rocks.	Waking Rocks	Scout Area

Basic Events

Check out our maps at the start of the Venus chapter to find where the events occur and how often.

Prevent Vex Sacrifices

Locations The Citadel, Within Cliffs

At the top of a hill, a small group of Goblins guards a conflux as they prepare for the sacrifice of Guardians. Defeat the Goblins and prevent the sacrifice. Once you've done that, you'll have to defeat a Hobgoblin boss before receiving your reward. Now your mission is to defend the conflux as the Goblins, Hobgoblins, Harpies, and Minotaur approach. Goblins are the first to approach, kneeling down before the conflux to begin their ritual anytime during the encounter. Kill them to stop the ritual and preventing Sacrifices a Guardian. Once two fish complete the procedure, you fail the event. Join up with other Guardians and defend the area around the conflux until the timer expires to complete the event.

Eliminate the Target

Locations The Citadel

An enemy appears in the area, ready to begin a to a certain destination. Your objective is simply to eliminate it before it gets there. It's always a special enemy with greater vitality and aggression than the norm. Its progress through five checkpoints appears on the left, along with a timer. Take it down before the timer reaches 0 and it reaches checkpoint 5 to complete the event.

Defeat Extraction Crew

Locations Entrain Cases

A crew of Fallen drops into the area, attempting to extract precious Glimmer. The Guardians must defeat the Fallen before they get off the Fallen. Once one crew is defeated, a second shows up elsewhere in the zone. Once not three dill sites to complete the event and earn a Gold Tier.

Destiny Fallen Walker

Location Entrain Cases

A drop ship delivers a Devil Walker into the public space. Now it's up to the Guardians to defeat the tank before it causes too much destruction. Slain down the target in the same manner as in the Earth Strike, Devils' Lair. Do so before the five-minute timer expires to complete the event with a Gold Tier. Remember that it is invulnerable until its lights come on.

Gold Chests

A Shattered Coast to Ishtar Academy

Drop into the hole in the Shattered Coast and follow the tunnel toward Ishtar Academy. Before you reach the barrel, look back to find a Gold Chest next to a pillar.

B Campus 9

After you enter Campus 9 from the Waking Ruins, run over to the fan building, next to the waterfall. A Gold Chest lies next to the structure on the other side.

B-NGen Branch

Enter NGen Branch from Ishtar Commons and head to the right. Move into the small building and look to the central outskirts for the Gold Chest.

A Winter's Lair

In Winter's Lair, follow the trail around the outside of the cavern until you reach the upper overlook. Step out onto the horizontal pole and jump to the right ledge to collect this Gold Chest.

B The Orders

In the Orders, fight your way onto the ledch. Turn to the right and move to the very back. Drop down to the lower ledge to find the Gold Chest.

Dead Ghost Locations

Hawkeye

Heading toward Shattered Coast, search near the rutfle ponds on the left to find a Dead Ghost.

Shattered Coast

From the Hawkeyes entrance to Shattered Coast, take the street straight and then to the right. On the rare side of the right-hand building, look for a burnt-out kedtracker with a Dead Ghost lying in the back.

Ishtar Academy

Enter Ishtar Academy from Shattered Coast and jump up to the left across the wall across the tunnel. Search the bushes/ruff, roughly even with the statue, to find the Dead Ghost.

Ishtar Cliffs

Just inside Ishtar Cliffs from Shattered Coast, search along the wall under the cave outcropping to find the Ghost.

Waking Ruins

Enter Waking Ruins from Ishtar Cliffs and follow the trail until you reach the log, central ruins on your left. Move around there until you can climb up. A Dead Ghost lies at the very top point.

Campus 9

From Waking Ruins, enter Campus 9 and head over to the fun-right-courpol. Jump onto the roof, and then over to the fill on the other side. Continue in this direction and jump onto the ruins. Hop over to the left and then skip back the other way, across three more blocks. Angle to the right and perform your longest jump, over to a small ledge where the Dead Ghost is hidden.

Ishtar Commons

Inside Ishtar Commons from the academy, move past the circular structure on the left and hop onto the ramp. Turn back toward the building and jump over to the awning. Carefully walk along the ledge until you get to the Dead Ghost.

Ishtar Commons

Enter Ishtar Commons from Ishtar Academy, and run to the other side of the right building to find an open elevator. Another Dead Ghost waits inside.

Winter's Lair

Inside the main cavern of Winter's Lair, follow the dirt path to the left, and make another left as soon as you can. Continue forward to a small cave with the Dead Ghost inside.

Entrain Cases

In Entrain Cases, search for a small cave to the right of the path up to Winter's Lair. The Ghost lies at the back of the den.

Hall of Whispers

Just inside Hall of Whispers, a tree branch holds the next Dead Ghost, though it isn't as easy as that to get. You must either help raise the blue box and hop/ride up to the limb. Or you must run up the steps and jump over to the building's awning. Turn around and hop across the poles until you can reach the Ghost.

Endless Steps

At the Endless Steps, climb the stairs and move along the hill. Hop up the pillar to find the Dead Ghost.

NGen Branch

Enter NGen Branch from Ishtar Commons and run into the building straight ahead. Climb the steps to the upper walkway, move around the corner, and search next to the console.

Dig Site 4

After you enter the first room of Dig Site 4, run over to the far corner and enter the open door to find a research lab. Search the sink in the middle of the room to find a Dead Ghost.

MARS

OVERVIEW

In the years since the Collapse, much of Mars has returned to the desolate, barren landscape it was before the Traveler. But buried beneath its surface are traces of the mega-cities that once sprawled across the planet, swallowed by dunes and Darkness.

Serving as a base of operations for the main Cabal force in our system, the red planet is littered with heavily fortified heavy Cabal fortifications. And rumors of a Vex presence hint at an even greater danger.

Resource:

Relic Iron

Enemy Races (Faction):

Vex (Virgo Prohibitive), Cabal (Sand Eaters, Dust Giants, Siege Dancers, Blind Legion)

EXCLUSION ZONE

Level 15 Story / The Barrens, Meridian Bay, Mars

Enemy Races: Cabal, Vex

Suggested Damage Type: Solar, Void (Epic)

Rewards: XP Bonus, Sparrow Upgrade

Missions Unlocked: The Garden's Spire, Patrol Mars

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Repel Cabal Assault	+2 PhalanxLegionaries upgraded to Major Legionaries	—
Scan Cabal System	Legionaries upgraded to Major Legionaries	—
Steal an Access Key	3 Phalanxes upgraded to Major Phalanxes2 Legionaries upgraded to Major LegionairesPsions upgraded to Major Psions	With all of these Major Cabal added to this boss fight, things can get rough. Use cover wisely, and be aware of incoming psionic waves. Use the full area to escape from danger.

Patrol Beacons are available only during the Patrol activity.

PE Public Events frequency: 20–30 minutes

Objective: Infiltrate Cabal Bunker

Location: The Barrens

For the last time, you must hack into the local system to gain access to the Sparrow. You can easily enter a locked bunker up on the right with your Ghost's help.

Objective: Hack Cabal System

Find a computer farther inside the bunker, and let your Ghost do his best to gain access to your vehicle.

Objective: Repel Cabal Assault

This attracts some unwanted attention from the Cabal. At first, a long-range weapon is optimal to keep the enemies away. The Cabal wear armor that protects them well, so aim for their vulnerable heads to take them down quickly. The Phalanx carries an invulnerable shield, so aim for its exposed arm to cause it to stagger, and then quickly target its head. Eventually, you must venture outside to finish off the group. Watch out for the Centurion, who is equipped with a Solar shield and rapid-fire explosive projectiles. Legionaries and Centurions are equipped with jump jets, allowing them to close in quickly from a distance.

Patrol Beacons are available only during the Patrol activity.

PE Public Events frequency: 30–40 minutes

Objective: Find the Gate

Location: Scablands

With the vehicle link enabled, hop on the Sparrow and head out to the right to find Scablands, a region where the Cabal and Vex fight it out. You can choose to either get involved or simply drive on through to Giants' Pass, which becomes a Darkness Zone.

Objective: Scan Cabal System

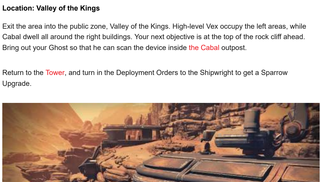
Location: Giants' Pass

Phalanxes and Legionaries patrol this zone. Find the link to the Cabal system on the far side, on the left platform. Deploy your Ghost to scan it. During this time, a dropship brings in more troops, including your next target.

Objective: Steal an Access Key

Bracus Tho'ourg, a Major Centurion, carries the key, and Psions accompany him. These Psions are not armored like the others, but they fight very intelligently behind cover and have a devastating psionic blast wave, which they fire along the ground at their targets. It is possible to jump over the wave, but it is best to run to the opposite side to avoid it. Learn the Psions' tell for this move: they spread out their arms and lift off the ground. Once you've dispatched the boss, grab the key.

Patrol Beacons are available only during the Patrol activity.



Objective: Access Survey Post

Location: Valley of the Kings

Exit the area into the public zone, Valley of the Kings. High-level Vex occupy the left areas, while Cabal dwell all around the right buildings. Your next objective is at the top of the rock cliff ahead. Bring out your Ghost so that he can scan the device inside the Cabal outpost.

Return to the Tower, and turn in the Deployment Orders to the Shipwright to get a Sparrow Upgrade.

THE GARDEN'S SPIRE

Level 16 Story / The Barrens, Meridian Bay, Mars

Enemy Race: Cabal

Suggested Damage Type: Solar, Void (Epic)

Rewards: XP Bonus, Armor Upgrade

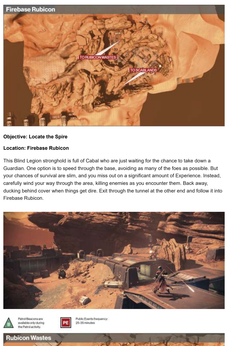
Missions Unlocked: A Rising Tide, The Buried City, The Black Garden

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Survive the Ambush — Wave 2	-1 Centurion+1 Major Centurion	---
Survive the Ambush — Wave 3	-1 Colossus+1 Major Colossus	Stay on the move to avoid the Psions' psionic wave attacks. Destroy Shrieker Nests on the Phalanx platforms to avoid getting surrounded.
Survive the Ambush	Next wave spawns when one enemy remains instead of waiting for entire crew to be wiped out.	---
Face Primus Sha'aul — 75% Health	-1 Legionary+1 Centurion	---
Face Primus Sha'aul — 40% Health	-1 Centurion+1 Colossus	---
Face Primus Sha'aul	Second dropship spawns regardless of whether you have cleared first squad (as opposed to waiting for them all to be wiped out)	---

Objective: Breach the Warbase

Location: Scablands

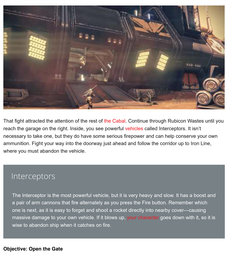
Ride over to Scablands and then up the right side toward the Cabal's base. Spend some time picking off the enemies from a distance before moving through the opening. This route takes you into Firebase Rubicon.

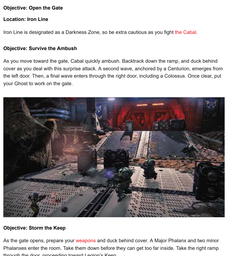


Objective: Locate the Spire

Location: Firebase Rubicon

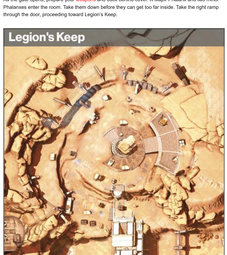
This Blind Legion stronghold is full of Cabal who are just waiting for the chance to take down a Guardian. One option is to speed through the base, avoiding as many of the foes as possible. But your chances of survival are slim, and you miss out on a significant amount of Experience. Instead, carefully wind your way through the area, killing enemies as you encounter them. Back away, ducking behind cover when things get dire. Exit through the tunnel at the other end and follow it into Firebase Rubicon.





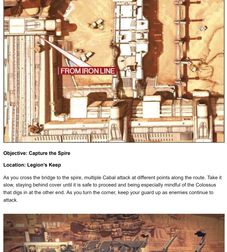
Objective: Assault the Tower

Location: Rubicon Wastes



As you move over to the observation tower on the right, fight your way through more Cabal. The biggest threat comes from a Colossus that carries a big Slug Thrower, a heavy suppressive weapon that tears through its target. It also has a three-missile attack that inflicts a lot of damage when the missiles hit their mark. Once it is safe, access the tower console.

Objective: Cross the Field



That fight attracted the attention of the rest of the Cabal. Continue through Rubicon Wastes until you reach the garage on the right. Inside, you see powerful vehicles called Interceptors. It isn't necessary to take one, but they do have some serious firepower and can help conserve your own ammunition. Fight your way into the doorway just ahead and follow the corridor up to Iron Line, where you must abandon the vehicle.

Interceptors

The Interceptor is the most powerful vehicle, but it is very heavy and slow. It has a boost and a pair of cannons that fire alternately as you press the Fire button. Remember which one is next, as it is easy to forget and shoot a rocket directly into nearby cover—causing massive damage to your own vehicle. If it blows up, Interceptors goes down with it, so it is wise to abandon ship when it catches on fire.

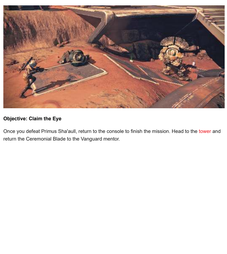
Objective: Open the Gate

Location: Iron Line

Iron Line is designated as a Darkness Zone, so be extra cautious as you fight the Cabal.

Objective: Survive the Ambush

As you move toward the gate, Cabal quickly ambush. Backtrack down the ramp, and duck behind cover as you deal with this surprise attack. A second wave, anchored by a Centurion, emerges from the left door. Then, a final wave enters through the right door, including a Colossus. Once clear, put your Ghost to work on the gate.



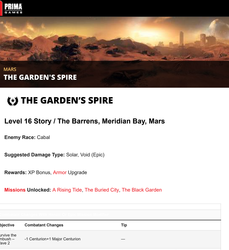
Objective: Storm the Keep

As the gate opens, prepare your weapons and duck behind cover. A Major Phalanx and two minor Phalanxes enter the room. Take them down before they can get too far inside. Take the right ramp through the door, proceeding toward Legion's Keep.

Objective: Capture the Spire

Location: Legion's Keep

As you cross the bridge to the spire, multiple Cabal attack at different points along the route. Take it slow, staying behind cover until it is safe to proceed and being especially mindful of the Colossus that digs in at the other end. As you turn the corner, keep your guard up as enemies continue to attack.



Objective: Hold off the Cabal

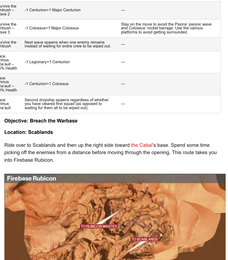
A group of Cabal huddles together near the spire. Hit the Centurion in the head to get their attention, and then take them out.

Objective: Wake the Eye

Approach the console on the rock platform, and let your Ghost perform his magic.

Objective: Face Primus Sha'aul

Primus Sha'aul, an Ultra Centurion, enters through a door on the left. This guy hits hard and has a ton of health, so stay on the move to avoid his weapon fire. Cabal foes join him during his entrance, and more drop in when the boss reaches 75% health and then 40%. Be careful trying to fight from the ledge where you entered, as more Cabal spawn behind you. A small area below the central platform offers a little respite, but avoid getting surrounded. Release your super and Heavy Weaponry upon Primus Sha'aul whenever available.



Objective: Claim the Eye

Once you defeat Primus Sha'aul, return to the console to finish the mission. Head to the tower and return the Ceremonial Blade to the Vanguard mentor.

THE BURIED CITY

Level 17 Story / The Barrens, Meridian Bay, Mars

Enemy Race: Cabal

Suggested Damage Type: Solar, Void

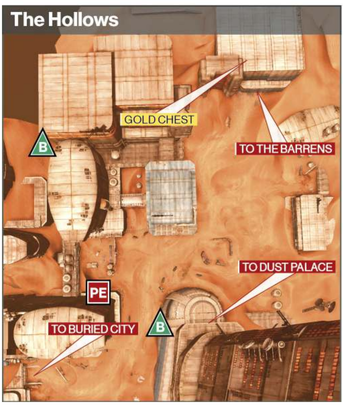
Rewards: XP Bonus

Mission Unlocked: -

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Ascend the Skyscraper – First Area	+2 Psions+2 Psions (added with three enemies left)	—
Ascend the Skyscraper – Enter Atrium	+2 Legionaries	—
Ascend the Skyscraper – Atrium Second Floor	-1 Centurion+1 Major Centurion	—
Ascend the Skyscraper	-2 Psions+2 Major Psions	—
Track the Recon Team – Kill Legionaries or approach steps	+4 Legionaries-1 Colossus+1 Major Colossus	Fight cautiously as you proceed through the Overwatch. The Major Colossus can wipe you out with his rocket barrage.
Expel the Cabal – Second Room	+2 Phalanxes	—
Expel the Cabal – Final Room throughout encounter	Psions upgraded to Major Psions	Stay on the move, but watch for psionic blast waves.

Patrol Beacons are available only during the Patrol activity.

Public Events frequency: 25-35 minutes



Objective: Get to the Buried City

Location: The Hollows

Objective: Locate Cabal Signal

Continue around the right building and enter the door on the right. Fight your way through the Cabal as you move up to the second floor.

Objective: Tap Cabal Feed

A Major Centurion drops into the corner room with a Legionary. Take them out before proceeding with your objective. Deploy your Ghost to do his thing at the console.

Objective: Enter the Skyscraper

Jump out the window and enter the side door below, where a couple Cabal welcome you in. Follow the corridor down into the Dust Palace.

Objective: Ascend the Skyscraper

Location: Dust Palace

As you enter the Dust Palace, it becomes a Darkness Zone, with several Cabal enemies ahead who would like to keep you out. Once you clear the area, exit out the door on the far wall and follow the signs down to the atrium, where more Cabal patrol the area. Upon your arrival, the Vex immediately attack the Cabal. You can let them fight it out, or dive right in. Make your way up the stairs on the left to reach the next floor, and then continue to fight your way over to the far corner.

Objective: Find the Overwatch

More stairs take you up a couple more floors until you reach the Overwatch.

Objective: Track the Recon Team

Location: Overwatch

As you make your way across the Overwatch, fight from behind cover whenever possible. A Colossus waits for you just inside, along with Legionaries and Phalanxes. Stay on the move to avoid the rocket barrage as you take them all down.

Objective: Expel the Cabal

As you clear out the Cabal, keep moving up the steps into the middle area and then on into the clean room. Use the abundance of cover as you kill the Psions, Phalanxes, and Legionaries inside. A Major Centurion enters from the middle room, so stay alert.

Objective: Secure the Ancient Machine

Once you defeat the Major Centurion, move over to the machine in the middle of the room and let your Ghost analyze it. Return the Warmind Cell to the Cryptarch.

A RISING TIDE

Level 17 Story / The Barrens, Meridian Bay, Mars

Enemy Race: Vex

Suggested Damage Type: Void, Arc (Epic)

Rewards: XP Bonus

Mission Unlocked: -

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Navigate the Dark	+2 Harpies	—
Navigate the Dark – Move past center of room	-3 Goblins+2 Hobgoblins	—
Find the Vex Source - Cyclops	+2 Hobgoblins+3 Goblins	—
Destroy Warp Gates – For each gate until it is destroyed	Reinforcements emerge from gate every 6-12 seconds instead of 12-24 seconds.	On the higher difficulties, it is even more important to destroy the gates as soon as possible.

Objective: Reach the Scablands

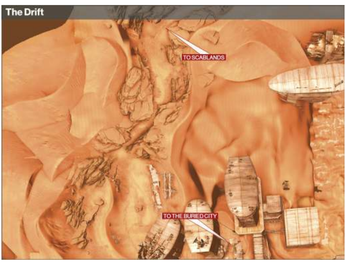
Location: The Barrens

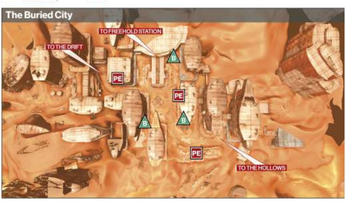
Take your Sparrow over to Scablands.

Objective: Access Vex Conflux

Location: Scablands

Drive past the Cabal to the conflux on the far side of the zone. As you arrive, a Minotaur and a couple Goblins spawn, so take care of them before deploying your Ghost to access the device.

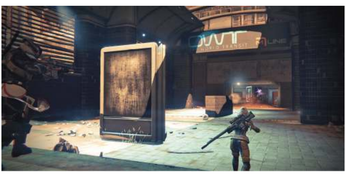




Objective: Enter the Buried City

Location: The Buried City

Remount your Sparrow and drive it through the Drift into the Buried City. Take out the Major Harpy, Minotaur, and other Vex that guard the entry way, and proceed inside. Follow the corridor to the left, blasting your way through more Goblins. The entrance soon becomes extremely dark, with your Ghost illuminating only a small area. Pay close attention to the tracker, and watch for the red eyes of the Vex themselves.



Objective: Navigate the Dark

Location: Freehold Station

As you enter Freehold Station, the area is designated as a Darkness Zone. Just ahead, the bright light from spawning Vex show that you are heading in the correct direction. As you move farther into the lobby, mow down the Harpies and Goblins.

Objective: Find the Vex Source

A few overhead lights illuminate the next area, so visibility is much better. Destroy the Goblins up on the right before focusing your attention on the big Cyclops to the left. Take it out from a distance as more Goblins and Hobgoblins spawn around it. The corridor ahead leads to Tharsis Junction. You can see Harpies and Hobgoblins dropping onto the tracks ahead.

Objective: Destroy the Gates

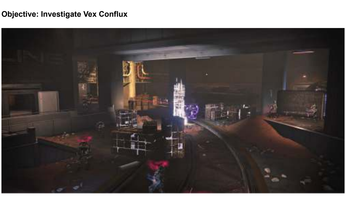
Location: Tharsis Junction

As you fight your way around the train cars, look for a Vex transfer gate in the far right corner. Destroy it as soon as possible before cleaning up the mess it created. It spawns Goblins every 12 to 24 seconds until it is eliminated, so speed is essential. Just inside the tunnel ahead, Hobgoblins and Harpies guard another gate. Take care of it from the doorway while avoiding the Vex gunfire.

The subway tunnel leads back to a platform that holds three more transfer gates. Hug the left wall until you can spot a portion of the right gate. Terminate it with a high-powered weapon, and then move forward until you can see a sliver of the next gate. The second gates lies just past a train car on the left, and the third is against the back wall on the other side of a Vex conflux.

As you finish off the final gate, Prohibitive Mind, a Major Minotaur, attempts to stop you, along with minor Goblins and Minotaurs. Avoid getting surrounded. Depending on how quickly you destroy the gates, a lot of Goblins may be present.

Objective: Investigate Vex Conflux



Once you eliminate all Vex in the area, allow your Ghost to investigate the conflux. With the mission complete, meet up with the Vanguard mentor at the Tower, and hand over the Vex Carapace.

THE BLACK GARDEN

Level 18 Story / The Barrens, Meridian Bay, Mars

Enemy Race: Vex

Suggested Damage Type: Void, Arc (Epic)

Rewards: XP Bonus, Mote of Light

Mission Unlocked: -

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Explore the Garden – Vex Cloud in first room	+1 Minotaur	—
Destroy the Vex – Major Hydra at 50% health	+2 Hobgoblins	—
Scan Vex Clusters	+1 Hydra (center)-1 Minotaur+1 Major Minotaur (right)-1 Minotaur+1 Major Minotaur (left)	—
Annihilate the Vex	+4 Goblins	—
Boss 1	+2 Harpies	—
Boss 2	+1 Hobgoblin	—
Boss 3	+1 Minotaur	—

Objective: Head to the Gate

Location: The Barrens

Head to Valley of the Kings via Scablands and Giants' Pass.

Objective: Kill the Gate Defenders

Location: Valley of the Kings

Approach the gate on the left, where Minotaurs and Hobgoblins join a Hydra in an attempt to defend their gate. This takes place in the same public zone as the end of the Exclusion Zone mission. Therefore, this battle's difficulty can vary depending on which foes are around.

Objective: Enter the Gate

With the defenders out of the way, move toward the gate to be sent into a new area.

Objective: Explore the Garden

Location: Upper Garden

Follow the trail through the stationary Goblins until a group powers up and attacks. Take down the Vex, along with a Minotaur that waits around the corner. As you pass through the ruins, a variety of Vex spawns along the way. Use the blocks as cover and eliminate the machines. Once you can see the outdoor light, the area becomes a Darkness Zone. To the right, a Cyclops is supported by Harpies, Goblins, and Hobgoblins. Pick off the Vex along the sides before taking on the Cyclops.

Objective: Destroy the Vex

As you continue exploring the area, the Vex are relentless. In the next room, Divisive Mind, a Major Hydra, fires explosive projectiles at anything that doesn't belong. Use the ruins for protection as you eliminate the lesser enemies. Then, employ high-powered weaponry to take the floating machine down. Once you've destroyed it, be sure it detonates before proceeding through.

Objective: Find the Garden's Heart

Location: Lower Garden

Exit the Darkness Zone back to the outdoors, drop off the end of the platform, and follow the ruins down, while more Vex attack at each step. Continue along the trail, taking out more Goblins and Hobgoblins until you reach a big clearing that appears to dead end.

Objective: Scan Vex Clusters

Hop onto the rock that sits at the edge of the cliff. From there, you can see a dish to the left and another to the right. All kinds of Vex litter the area. Spend some time with your long-range weapon, picking off as many as you can. Harpies emerge from the left, while Goblins begin to attack from the right. A Hydra hangs out in the middle of the right side with more Vex bipeds around it. The two dishes are Vex clusters that must be scanned before you continue. Fight your way carefully to each one as more enemies show up. Once it's safe, deploy your Ghost so he can start scanning.

Objective: Activate the Conflux

Now run over to the conflux near the central gate, wipe out the most recent Vex arrivals, and have your Ghost activate the Vex device.

Objective: Cross the Threshold

Step into the final area, and prepare for a big fight.

Objective: Annihilate the Vex

An army of Vex Goblins notices your presence. Work your way in and out of the ruins, mowing down every last one.

Objective: Kill the Sol Progeny

At this point, the first of three Ultra Minotaurs is activated. Use your big guns and super as you target the weak point in its abdomen. It steadily launches explosive projectiles at its target, while Harpies are dispersed into the arena. Focus your gunfire at the big Vex; after you defeat the Ultra Minotaur, its minions are also eliminated. After you relieve it of its vast amount of health, the second Ultra Minotaur comes to life. Goblins and Hobgoblins accompany this beast. Destroy it in the same manner as the first. With two out of the way, the third and final Ultra Minotaur steps into the ring. This time, Minotaurs and Goblins support the boss.

When you finish the final story mission, return the Dark Heart Fragments to The Speaker for a Mote of Light.

STRIKE: CERBERUS VAE III

Level 18 Strike / Rubicon Wastes, Meridian Bay, Mars

Enemy Race: Cabal

Suggested Damage Type: Strike: Void (Epic)

Rewards: SP Bonus, Ammo Upgrade

Mission Unlocked: -

Objective	Combined Changes	Tip
Find Yatva Ta'kavo Location	2 Centurions 2 Major Legionaries 1 Centurion Captain Colossus	—
Kill Ta'kavo's Centurion Gang	1 Centurion 1 Major Colossus	—
Kill Ta'kavo's Legionnaire Gang	2 Legionnaires 2 Major Centurions	—
Kill Ta'kavo's Centurion Gang	1 Centurion 1 Major Colossus	—
Kill Ta'kavo's Legionnaire Gang	2 Legionnaires 2 Major Legionaries 1 Major Centurion	—
Destroy the Goliath	1 Centurion 1 Major Colossus	—
Kill Yatva Ta'kavo	2 Phalanx 1 Major Phalanx 2 Centurions 1 Major Centurion 2 Legionnaires 1 Major Legionnaire	—
Kill Yatva Ta'kavo's Guard	2 Phalanx 1 Major Phalanx 2 Phalanxes 2 Major Phalanxes 1 Centurion 1 Major Centurion	The Major enemies take more and more bullets before they die. Use Heavy Ammo to speed up the process. Avoid attempting to get behind the enemies, as they have a powerful melee attack.
Kill Yatva Ta'kavo's Guard	1 Phalanx 2 Major Phalanxes	

Objective: Access the Defense Net

Location: Rubicon Wastes

Fight your way into the interception garage ahead, step up to the computer, and deploy your Ghost to access the network.

Objective: Find Yatva Ta'kavo

Location: Iron Line

Jump into an Interceptor, and fight your way into Iron Line through the opening road door. You can take the vehicle inside, but remember that if it blows up, you go down with it. Also, keep track of which cannon fires next to avoid mistakenly hurting yourself. Note that it can get crowded if all three players use the Interceptor.

Every type of Cabal enemy participates in this skirmish, with the usual culprits giving you the most trouble. Watch out for Phalanx Centurions and Legionnaires, and be ready to dispatch them with the Rose Shield protects the Centurion. Use the cover around the ramps to take care of the nearby foes, and then stand on the left walkway and the down on the remaining enemies below. Exit through the door below. If you have managed to hold on to your Interceptor, you must abandon it now.

Trenchworks

Objective: Kill Ta'kavo's Guard

Location: Trenchworks

Follow the corridor down to Trenchworks, which is designated as a Darkness Zone. Once of Ta'kavo's guards is just ahead, run several of the minions dead in the way. Quickly take down the Colossus and Psionic before hopping into one of the three Interceptors. It is the one to the left of the exit at the bottom of the hill, and those foes do not respawn, so fight cautiously or leave it behind for now. You can always run back and get it later.

Obliterate the Cabal along the sides of the ravine and then the enemies that occupy the area around the Goliath Tank. Use the Rose Shield to protect you from the Goliath's rockets, and then take out the top of the tower. Take him down with a barrage of cannon fire from the Interceptor. Alternatively, take cover on the lower platform as you fire from the side. It is possible to knock the Goliath off the back of the structure. In that case, you must pursue him around back and finish him off.

With one guard killed, a Cabal dropship brings in more enemies, along with the other two guards, Val Zu'Leon and Val Ma'aorg. Back out of the area so that you aren't immediately surrounded, and eliminate them all. The two guards move from their entry spot on the Iron Line into the first Interceptor.

Objective: Destroy the Goliath

With the three guards dispatched, look down the hill, where more Cabal have been dropped off in the clearing below. This includes the Goliath Tank, a huge armored vehicle with an impressive arsenal of weapons.

GOLIATH TANK

Weak Spot: Hover Engines

Attacks: Rifle Cannon, MG Turret, Side Missile Batteries, Flak Turret, Charge and Mine Missiles, Front Turret, Hover Engine Flame Out

ATTACKS

Main Cannon:

Fires a fast-moving, arching shot, with 5-10 second delay between volleys. This turret moves independently from the tank. Listen for the cannon to spin up, giving you time to move clear of the big blast.

MG Turret:

If the main cannon is not engaged, a small turret on its side spins up and fires at opponents within a short range. You can destroy this weapon.

Side Missile Batteries:

When opponents are in close to medium range, these open and close on a five-second interval, launching missiles. You can destroy the batteries and also shoot the missiles out of the air.

Flak Turret:

Mounted on the front sides of the tank, these guns fire at opponents who are in close and in the air. You can also blow these out.

Charge and Mine Missiles:

The tank charges a Guardian in front of it and releases canisters out the back. Three detonate in the air, causing six mine missiles to stick into the ground and explode over time or trigger when an opponent gets close. Watch out for this Goliath Tank's main cannons and four times as much damage to an Interceptor as a Guardian. Abandon ship if your ride is set on fire, or you will die if it blows up.

Fires a pair cannons fire at the tank's engines. Destroy all four to finish it off, or dispatch a combination of turrets and engines (for example, taking out three engines and two turrets also finishes it off). Once the tank's engines are immobilized, dodge behind cover as you keep dropping shots and waves on the boss.

The tank has a huge arsenal of weapons, and they all have their own tell. Listen and watch the tank's movements so that you can be ready to dodge incoming fire. When fighting from long range, beware the main cannon's fire as well, and carefully change position to avoid the explosive projectile.

If you must go in close, do not jump, or the tank will shoot you out of the air with its flak turrets. You can also destroy the turrets and MG turrets by getting behind cover. Quickly back away if you see it raise up and face its engines.

Objective: Get to the Land Tank

Location: Valley of the Kings

After destroying the tank, ride your Sparrow over to Valley of the Kings, and fight your way into the huge land tank.

Objective: Kill Yatva Ta'kavo

Location: Centaurus Hill: II

Inside the first room, Legionaries, Phalanxes, Psions, and a Centurion put up little resistance to your firepower. Abandon your Interceptor if you still have it, and enter the small corridor in the far corner. This leads into the back room of the land tank and the final showdown for the Strike.

VALUS TA'KARC

Weak Spots: Head

Attacks: Heavy Slug Thrower, Rocket Barrage, Ground Slam

ATTACKS

Heavy Slug Thrower:

This heavy suppressor weapon has a high rate of fire and devastating consequences. It doesn't have the greatest accuracy, but you still do not want to stand around when Valus Ta'karo fires it.

Rocket Barrage:

Valus Ta'karo raises his gun in the air and releases fire rockets toward his target. These are homing, explosive projectiles. If you see them coming, highball it out of the area.

Ground Slam: Get too close to the boss, and he slams the ground, knocking you back and causing serious damage.

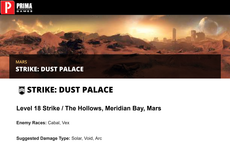
Strategy

Valus Ta'karo, an Ultra Colossus, emerges from the fair door in grand style. Wait for him to stop shouting off, and then hit him with everything you got. Use high-powered weapons and supers on the boss whenever available. Hit him in the head with gunfire to inflict critical damage.

Throughout the fight, reinforcements enter from the sides, so always be aware of your surroundings and ready to fight off Centurions, Legionaries, and Phalanxes. Use the Rose Shield to protect yourself above. Though you should focus most attacks at the boss, deal with the minions whenever you can, or you risk being overwhelmed.

It is good to split the team so that you cover both sides. This lessens the likelihood of all three players going down at once, and it divides Valus Ta'karo's attention between the left and right. For the most part, the Ultra Colossus seeks the target of the main floor, but he can move up the right ramp onto the upper platform.

There are locations where you are less likely to get hit, but if he launches the rocket barrage your way, you had better change position. Continue shipping away at the health until he finally dies.



STRIKE: DUST PALACE

Level 18 Strike / The Hollows, Meridian Bay, Mars

Enemy Races: Cabal, Vex

Suggested Damage Type: Solar, Void, Arc

Rewards: XP Bonus, Armor Upgrade

Mission Unlocked: -

Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Forge Ahead / Under Attack	2 Dunkers+1 Major Dreadon	
Forge Ahead / Under Attack	2 Goblins+1 Major Goblin+1 Major Goblin+1 Major Hologolem	Inside the skyscraper, there are a few skirmishes that involve Major Vex and Cabal. Use cover wisely, and work your way through an area. Do not combat too many enemies in a battle. If they want to take each other out, let them do so before moving in.
Hold It Down	2 Centurion+1 Major Centurion	
Hold It Down	2 Goblins+1 Dunker+1 Major Goblin+1 Major Hologolem	
Head to Overwatch	2 Goblins+2 Major Goblin+1 Minotaur	---
Head to Overwatch	2 Centurion+1 Major Centurion	---
Expel the Cabal	2 Phalanxes+1 Colossus+2 Major Phalanxes+1 Major Colossus	Team up on the Major Phalanxes, as they are easier to deal with when you can flank from the side.
Expel the Cabal	2 Centurion+1 Major Centurion	The Major Hunters can turn invisible on Epic, so use the appropriate weapon to deal with them quickly.
Objective	Combatant Changes	Tip
Fight to The Center	2X Centurion+1 Phalanx+1 Major Centurion+1 Major Phalanx	---
Defeat the Players	2X Legionnaire+1 Major Centurions	
Defeat the Players - Reinforcements	2 Centurion+1 Phalanx+1 Major Centurion+1 Major Phalanx	Most mean target should be the three Prison Players, but with the sheer number of reinforcements, you must also deal with the minions. Use the extra counterpoint, and stay alert to what is around you.
Defeat the Players - Reinforcements	2 Colossus+1 Major Colossus	
Defeat the Players - Reinforcements	2 Colossus+1 Major Colossus	
Defeat the Players - Final System	2 Legionnaire+3 Major Legionaries	---

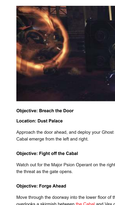
PlayStation Exclusive

The Dust Palace Strike is a PlayStation Exclusive, available on the PS3 and PS4 versions only until Fall 2015. The Strike will be available to everyone after that.

Objective: Enter the Dust Palace

Location: The Hollows

Fight your way into the dome building ahead, turn left at the back room, and drop into the elevator shaft in the far corner. Dissolve the stairs down a couple flights to reach Dust Palace. As noted on screen, this is a Darkness Zone. Follow the corridor and enter the open doorway on the right.



Objective: Breach the Door

Location: Dust Palace

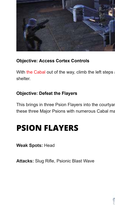
Approach the door ahead, and deploy your Ghost at the console to get it open. Turn around as Cabal emerge from the left and right.

Objective: Fight off the Cabal

Watch out for the Major Psion Operant on the right, who is really tough for his demeanor. Clear out the threat as the gate opens.

Objective: Forge Ahead

Move through the doorway into the lower floor of the atrium. At the stairs ahead, a Colossus overlooks a skirmish between the Cabal and Vex on the upper floor. Take him out before proceeding up the steps to dispose of the two sides. Have your Ghost work on the panel next to the far door to continue up the skyscraper.



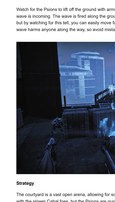
Objective: Hold It Down

As you wait, more Cabal and Vex enter from all sides of the atrium. Work your way around the room carefully and wipe them out. At this point, you are notified that your Ghost is almost there as Psions and a Psion Operant enter from the far side. Watch out for their deadly wave attack.

Objective: Head to Overwatch

With the door finally open, head up to the Overwatch, where the Vex continue attacking the Cabal. Fight your way through the machines, and then defeat the Centurion and Legionaries as you move into the second room. With the room cleared out, deploy your Ghost at the right door.

Objective: Expel the Cabal



Once again, defend the gate as more Cabal attack your location. In the next room, Vex also enter the Overwatch. A Minotaur and Colossus, along with Phalanxes and Harpies, can make for an overwhelming fight if you get stuck in the middle. The Psion Operant that enters from the exile adds to the battle's difficulty. Work your way from one end to the other to avoid becoming surrounded.

Objective: Fight to the Cortex

Location: The Cortex

After you've taken care of both sides, the gate opens. Follow the corridor out to a Darkness Zone, located in the Cortex. Cabal descend toward you on the left as more are dropped in on the right. Use the short walls as cover as you take them on. Watch out for the Centurion duo. This courtyard is a large, open area, so jump and run away if your health runs low.

Objective: Access Cortex Controls

With the Cabal out of the way, climb the left steps and access the Cortex controls in the small shelter.

Objective: Defeat the Fixers

This brings in three Psion Fixers into the courtyard, along with Legionaries in the back. Combining these three Major Psions with numerous Cabal makes for an incredibly tough boss fight.

PSION FLYERS

Weak Spots: Head

Attacks: Slug Rifle, Psionic Blast Wave

ATTACKS

Slug Rifle:

The rifle is their first means of attack and is much less of a threat than their psionic wave. But with their quick movement and intelligent use of cover, a Psion Flyer can tear through your health, leaving you open for a kill shot.

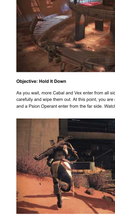
Psionic Blast Wave:

Watch for the Psions to lift off the ground with arms out to the side, signifying that a psionic blast wave is incoming. The wave is fired along the ground toward its target. It is possible to jump over it, but by watching for this tell, you can easily move far enough away to avoid taking damage. This wave harms anyone along the way, so avoid mistakenly moving into its path.

Strategy

The courtyard is a vast open arena, allowing for some long lines of sight. This is great for dealing with the slower Cabal foes, but the Psions are quick and crafty, making them extremely difficult to track. Shotguns, sniper rifles, and other slow weapons are difficult to use against them. Instead, equip automatic weapons like auto rifles and machineguns.

The Psion Flyers are all equipped with shields, one of each damage type. Numus's shield is Void, Kolar has Arc, and Vatch is protected by Solar. It is very helpful to come prepared for this. Ensure that your Fireteam has all three covered in their arsenal. Better yet, equipping guns with two damage types makes for an easier fight.



Like all Psions, the bosses fight mostly from behind cover, popping out to shoot at their opponents before ducking out of sight. It is possible to flush them out with an explosive and then hit them with your gunfire. You can also team up against them to force them out.

The best overall strategy here is to focus fire on the entire team on one Flayer at a time. Otherwise, you are probably just taking down their shields, letting them regenerate when you must move or reload. With one Flayer down, spend some time eliminating the additional enemies before going after the next boss.

Cabal, including normal Psions, consistently join the skirmish, emerging from dropships and through the openings around the sides. It's ideal to keep pursuing a Flayer once you engage it, but you don't want the lesser enemies to overwhelm and surround you. This is a tough battle, so patience management can come in handy. Spend some time at the back of the area, picking off some of the Cabal. Be careful, the enemies will pursue you wherever you are.

This can become a really long fight, if you form your opponents. Eliminate the three Psion Flyers one by one, while also keeping the number of Cabal enemies down. When badly hurt, run and jump to the other side of the courtyard to recover. This becomes especially important if you are the last Guardian standing. Eventually, the last boss falls, clearing out any remaining foes.

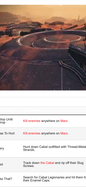
PATROL: PATROL THE BURIED CITY

Level 17 Patrol / Meridian Bay, Mars

Rewards: Relic Iron, Vanguard Reputation

Patrol Missions

Access one of the many Beacons around Venus to acquire one of the following missions.



Dark Drop Until Dawn	Kill enemies anywhere on Mars.	Location: w/Enemies	Kill Enemies
That Was To Hurt	Kill enemies anywhere on Mars.	Location: w/Enemies	Kill Enemies
Recovery	Hunt down Cabal outfitted with Thread-Metal Armor	Location: w/Cabal	Collect Thread-Metal Armor
Screwed	Track down the Cabal and rip off their Drop Screws	Location: w/Cabal	Collect Drop Screws
Just Like That!	Search for Cabal Legionaries and hit them for the ground Cabal Legion	Location: w/Cabal Legionaries	Collect Cabal Legion
On Point	Rip the Hard Point Glass from the hands of any Cabal Phalanx or Legionaries you encounter	Location: w/Cabal Phalanx, Cabal Legionaries	Collect Hard Point Glass
Harness The Power	Track down Cabal Phalanxes and strip them of their Power Harness	Location: w/Cabal Phalanx	Collect Power Harnesses
Multiple Hooks?	Kill Fist Cult's mysterious Psionic, Ransom then collect their Psionic Hooks as a trophy	Cabal Psions	Collect Psionic Hooks
Rots to Ruin	Collect Rots Joints from any Vex.	Location: w/Vex	Collect Rots Joints
Crystal Clear	Hunt down Vex units and recover their Focusing Crystals	Location: w/Vex	Collect Focusing Crystals
Step Down	Locate Goblins in the area and secure these Goblin Transformers	Location: w/Vex Goblins	Collect Goblin Transformers
Tenck There.	Kill any Vex Minotaurs in your sights and recover their Teleport Blinkers	The Hollows	Blu-blinkers Lvl#4
Why it Up	Recover Savior Whips from any Vex Harpies in the Hollows	Location: w/Vex Harpies in the Hollows	Collect Savior Whips
I Don't Get It	The Crystalline seek to learn more about the Light's Nature! Kill the Barriers and Collect Data	Barriers	Record Light Data
Buried Past	The Crystalline needs to know more about the Dark! Kill the Buried Dark and collect samples so we will be ready for it.	Valley of the Kings	Scan Shadow
Self-Service	Dont Cabal Interested in data from the CNIT Center on Mars? Go ahead then research it.	Buried City	Transmit Data
On You Copy?	Dead Orbit has requested an analysis of Cabal Comm Chatter from Meridian Bay	Rubicon Wastes	Scan Cabal
Know Thy Foe	The Future War Cult seems to produce more than their Cabal Tech to aid in research of the enemy	Valley of the Kings	Collect Cabal Tech
I'm a Corpulus*	The Future War Cult wants as much intel on the Hive as they can get their hands on.	Rubicon Wastes	Gather Intel
Ears In The Sky	New Monarchy integrates any salvageable data from Hive Ships into their Tactical Database	The Hollows	Blu-blueprint Lvl#4
Still Standing	New Monarchy wants data on the structural construction of the carbonized structures in the Hollows	The Hollows	Analyze Carbonized Structures
Connection Established	Kuri Lucretia needs you to help re-establish a connection with the Vanguard Relay on Buried City	Buried City	Re-establish Connection
A Sonne Of Tubes	Kuri Lucretia needs to cut information from the Sonne Tube Network	Scaldlands	Download Information
Where's The On-Switch?	Research the Ancient Golden Age Generator that may still be buried in Frankcliff's tunnel system.	Buried City	Transfer Data
ELMT Work	The Shapwright wants an analysis of the Cabal Legionary Exo-Armor	Scaldlands	Analyze Cabal Armor
Caballistic	Banshee-44 wants an analysis of Cabal Psionic Technology from Meridian Bay	Barriers	Analyze Psionic Tech
Formula Retro	The Gunsmith wants gradual of projectiles developed by Clovis Bray	The Hollows	Send Analysis
Now Knowing Ya.	Open doors in Cabal Facilities using Freehold's Ice Tech	Dust Palace	Kill Cabal Target
So Much Hurt	The leader of the Cryo Breed has set up a Cabal Research Facility and is confident Cabal will be able to handle him	Gatehouse	Kill Cabal Target
You're Already Dead	Eliminating the Cavorner leaders the Cryo Tomb Cabal Research Facility is compromised.	Firebase Rubicon	Kill Cabal Target
In The Hat	Hunt down the leader of a Cabal recon crew	Giants' Pass	Kill Cabal Target
Traveler's Most Wanted	A Cabal Legionary has been leading attacks against Freehold and must be killed.	Firebase Rubicon	Eliminate Target
Sweet Vengeance	A Cabal Phalanx leads a team stripping vital resources from Freehold's Outposts. Eliminate them to keep it down.	Dust Palace	Stop Looting
Kill on Sight	A Cabal Target is holding a critical checkpoint. Kill them to make it easier for the advance to proceed.	Giants' Pass	Eliminate Target
Lay it Down	Guardians report a leader the target in this area. Eliminate him for Freehold.	Freehold Station	Kill the Target
Not to Harp On You	Take down a few Harpy in the ruins of Freehold.	Freehold Station	Take Down Target
Tower under Sand	Search the Dust Palace complex for ties or connections	Dust Palace	Explore Dust Palace
Field Report	Provide an assessment of the enemy battlefield.	Giants' Pass	Scout Battlefield
Strength of our Enemies	Scout the Iron Line to form a better estimate of the Fallen numbers and strength	Gatehouse	Scout Iron Line
All Kell Remains	Survey the extent of the damage the Fallen Kell's Ship has done to the surrounding area	Freehold Station	Survey Site
Blind Leading the Blind	Scout Firebase Rubicon for intelligence on the Cabal Research Facility	Firebase Rubicon	Scout Cabal Facility
Belly of the Beast	Navigate its eyes, the Tower has little solid intel on the Cabal Research Facility	Valley of the Kings	Scout Cabal Entrance

Public Events

Check out the maps at the start of the Mars chapter to find where the events occur and how often.

Eliminate the Target

Locations: Scaldlands, The Hollows, Rubicon Wastes, Barriers, Buried City

An enemy appears in the area and slowly makes its way to a certain destination. Your objective is simply to eliminate the threat. This is a fairly easy activity, however a special enemy, with more vitality and aggressive behaviors than the norm. Its progress through five checkpoints is displayed on the left, along with a timer. To complete the event, take down the adversary before the timer reaches 0 and the foe reaches checkpoint 5.

Defend the Warsat

Locations: Scaldlands, Barriers, Buried City

A flash of light represents the touchdown of a Warsat in the area as a one-minute timer starts counting down. To start the event, a Guardian must deploy their Ghost. A circle appears around the satellite. As you stand inside the circle, a meter appears with a number inside starts to fill. Your objective is to guard the Warsat until the number reaches 100. Step out of the circle, and the meter pauses. The more Guardians that are in the circle (standing inside the circle), the faster the meter fills. Enemies constantly emerge at a timer counts down from four minutes.

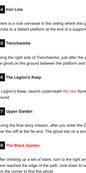
Gold Chests

X: The Barriers

From the Barriers landing zone, go over to the circular Cabal outpost that sits near the exit to Scaldlands. The Gold Chest sits atop a stack of crates.

Z: Barriers to the Hollows

In the tunnel between Barriers and the Hollows, look for a small opening above just before you emerge downtown. Hop into the hole, and look to the right to find the chest.



B: Dust Palace

Inside the Dust Palace, where the first door is opened in the Dust Palace Strike, look for the door labeled with the number 3. Behind the reception desk is the Gold Chest.

V: Iron Line

Inside Iron Line, at the giant gate that leads to the Legion's Keep, run along the left walkway. Jump onto the big pipes in the corner, and look behind the Cabal flag on the walkway on the left and follow it all the way to the other side to find this chest, neatly tucked into the corner.

B: Thanes Junction

Inside the walkway at Thanes Junction, look for the Vex Vex gate in the corner behind the train cars. Behind it is a small room. Go inside, and slip behind the fencing in the far corner. Follow the path to collect the chest.

Dead Ghost Locations

N Barriers

From the Barriers landing zone, head toward the Hollows and stop at the circular outpost. Grab the Dead Ghost that sits on one of the crates inside.

F Scaldlands

Move through the Rubicon gate and take a left. Jump onto the rock outcropping to reach the upper level of the outpost.

F Firebase Rubicon

At the gate that leads to Rubicon Wastes, turn around and find the narrow passageway in the rock. Follow it back to a tree and search behind a rod for the ghost.

N The Hollows

Drive into the Hollows from the Barriers, and drive straight ahead. Jump onto the light near the side entrance and then leap up to the upper balcony where the Dead Ghost lies.

E Dust Palace

Inside the atrium, climb up the curved staircase until you can jump onto the narrow ledge along the right wall. Carefully follow it back to find the ghost just in front of one of the windows.

N Overwatch

In the middle area of the Overwatch, on the left side of the room as you enter from Dust Palace, a Dead Ghost sits next to a computer under a corner desk. This desk sits opposite the door that leads out to the Cortex from the Dust Palace Strike.

E Giants' Pass

Look for a tree that overlooks the checkpoint, and search behind it to find the ghost.

E Valley of the Kings

From Giants' Pass, move into Valley of the Kings and hop onto the outpost that sits on the ledge straight ahead. Leap onto the narrow ledge on the side of the cliff, and carefully move around to the left and drop down to the shelf. The ghost sits toward the wall.

E Valley of the Kings

Enter the Valley of the Kings and follow the path past the big Vex gate. Search the tower shelf of the cliff on the left side of the trail.

M The Drift

Just before you reach Scaldlands from the Drift, hug the left slope. Jump onto the tree and shimmy along the branch to collect the ghost.

M Buried City

In Buried City, use the freestanding wall to jump onto the roof of the Off World Transit station. Find the ghost behind the main sign.

M Freehold Station

In the main area of Freehold Station, where a Cyclops appears during A Rising Tide, a Dead Ghost rests atop the television in the center of the room. Hop onto the nearby divider to reach it.

M Thanes Junction

Deep inside the subway, in Thanes Junction, a Dead Ghost rests atop a pile of rubble near the tunnel center.

M Iron Line

There is a rock crevasse in the ceiling where this ghost hides. Climb to the wall platform and jump across to a distant platform at the end of a support column. Jump again to reach it.

M Trenchworks

Along the right side of Trenchworks, just after the guard tower, climb onto the rock platforms to find the ghost on the ground between the platform and the cliff.

M The Legion's Keep

In Legion's Keep, search underneath the Vex Vex Spire platform to find a Dead Ghost lying on the ground.

M Upper Garden

During the final story mission, after you enter the Darkness Zone, turn to the right and search just over the cliff at the far end. The ghost sits on a small ledge below.

M The Black Garden

After climbing up a set of stairs, turn to the right and keep walking. Just when it starts to look like you have reached the edge of the path, look down to see a stone that you can hop down to. Do so and turn the corner to find this ghost.

CODEX

ABOUT THE CODEX

Guardian, this chapter is designed to arm you with as much intelligence as possible about the enemies of humanity. There are four known hostile races dwelling within the solar system. Each is a dire threat, but for very different reasons. Fight them ruthlessly, suppress their strengths, exploit their weaknesses. Lead your Fireteam to coordinate and conquer on the battlefield.

The Fallen

The Fallen are ruthless scavengers, thrash and looting, they remain on their missions fearless in the face of danger and will not hesitate to sacrifice their own kind.

There are three of ancient nobility in the Fallen, the wise of lost grandeur. The Knife of their scattered Houses still claim to the Throne of the Sun, but are only just and sovereign in their own minds.

The Fallen Houses: House of Shrines, House of Mines, House of Stocks, House of Kings, The Shattered Houses.

When Fallen [slaughter](#) each [kin](#) damage, add a [kin](#) stacks.

The Strongest Launcher and the Great Blades each Launcher deal Kaze damage.

The Sanctity's Great Sword deals Holy damage.

Weak Points

Attacks from the side are shown to be vulnerable.

Shoulder turns to weak points.

Secretes heat as a shield point in the "eye".

Dreg

Can have type 2 [CP](#) Dregs that [Launch](#) to [Launch](#) with a [Kaze](#) [Launch](#)

Can have type 3 Dregs that [Launch](#) to [Launch](#) with a [Kaze](#) [Launch](#)

Can have [Launch](#) [Launch](#) [Launch](#) [Launch](#)

Behavior

Dregs are individually weak, though they retain the speed of all Fallen combatants, making them highly capable foes that can be hard to land hits on.

Dregs prefer to fight from cover, which they actively seek out and use against you. They often can be found in [Launch](#) formations in front of a [Launch](#) who they will protect from harm.

Dregs will [Launch](#) their [Launch](#) [Launch](#) [Launch](#)

The Hive are an ancient, teeming race. Their adversity is the sight benevolent Master. To the Hive, the end result is always the same: to spread their influence to every corner of the galaxy, and to assimilate all life into the Hive.

Hive Hosts: Blood of Crius, The Scarlet Brood, Spawn of Crius, The Hadean Swarm, Venom of Crius

Conflict is not always clearly black and white; there are compromises, shades, and opportunity for you to exploit.

But there are no opportunity for the Hive. They are pure evil, and they want to destroy humanity.

A final fight with the head generator of the Hive ends the Hive must be destroyed.

Hive Weapons

Hive weapons are a variety of damage types.

The Acrodite, Spore Dust Rave Node Mortal rounds, and the Shredder's attacks all deal Void damage.

The Bloodsin, Thrall's Gaze, Cursed Thrall's detonation, and Wizard's energy bolts all cause Arc damage.

Finally, the Wizard's poisonous cloud of darkness, the Knight's Shadow, and the Taint's ground-based attacks all will cause Scorch damage if struck by them.

For all Hallen, Solo heads and Titan shank point.

For Spikes, the shank point is still their hands, though it's more precisely their "eyes."

Thrall

Thrall are mainly mindless berserker units, ravaging headlong into the nearest combat range.

Thrall are the most common Hive unit in the Hive army. Hive society values the swarm mage. Thus, we Thrall are destined to rule in swarm

Tactics

Thrall lack any subtlety whatsoever, which is why they're the best to be moved into swarm of Thrall. Thrall are destined to rule in swarm. Thrall are the most common Hive unit in the Hive army.

However, avoid expending yourself to other hostile Hive units in the area while doing so, as Thrall can also be hostile to each other.

Because Thrall can melee only, a strong strategy is highly advised for Thrall players. Ask the Taint to grant Thrall with plenty of Scorch damage attacks, for example.

Exploit the weapons and protected zones of other grounded units can also serve you well against packs of Thrall.

Cursed Thrall

Cursed Thrall Thrall are capable of detonating explosives at close ranges.

Health: Medium
Combat: Explosive

Behavior

Cursed Thrall are detonation units of common Thrall. Cursed Thrall move more slowly. However, when they get close to their target, they explode, causing damage to themselves and anything nearby.

Cursed Thrall are detonation units of common Thrall, but they tend to be found in the swarm of Thrall. Cursed Thrall are detonation units of common Thrall. Cursed Thrall are detonation units of Thrall.

Unlike with regular Thrall, some using short-range weapons or melee strikes against Cursed Thrall, Cursed Thrall's main form of offense is detonating themselves.

Acolyte

Acolytes are the most common Hive combatants. Acolytes engage in close-combat with Dreaming Thrall.

Health: Medium
Combat: Melee

Behavior

Acolytes are the most common Hive combatants of the Hive forces. Now, pursuing their the wandering Thrall, they will have more threats to the Fallen Kings, hosting all to Eliksnis's fall during these Hive Acolytes.

Acolytes are the most common Hive combatants of the Hive forces. Now, pursuing their the wandering Thrall, they will have more threats to the Fallen Kings, hosting all to Eliksnis's fall during these Hive Acolytes, just like Rasp. Their accuracy and use of the Screaver when they have been seen.

Most infrequently, you may encounter Acolytes that have been empowered by the Hive Wizard. Empowered Acolytes are more powerful than normal Acolytes and deal Arcane damage, just like Rasp.

Tactics

Acolytes are fairly weak targets. Use primary weapons, grenades, or melee strikes to take them down easily.

They act primarily a danger when larger numbers of them engage you in an encounter alongside other Hive combatants, such as Knights and Wizards.

Aim for the head and shoot them all quickly. You can often quickly eliminate the Acolytes in packs of Thrall before they have a chance to attack you.

Acolytes are also a common target for Hive snipers, who use Projective Beam Rifles. Avoid attacking as long as you have decent cover. But don't spend any Acolyte enemies with Bloodsin, as they can easily flank and overwhelm you.

Knight

Knights are the most common Hostile enemies. Knights are Acrolytes. Not only vulnerable Knights are the most common Hostile enemies.

Knights are the most common Hostile enemies. Knights are Acrolytes. Not only vulnerable Knights are the most common Hostile enemies. Knights are Acrolytes. Not only vulnerable Knights are the most common Hostile enemies.

They may also appear armed with either a Shredder or the Cleaver. If they do use a Shredder, be sure to keep your distance and avoid getting hit by its attack. If they use the Cleaver, they will charge at you and attempt to hit you with it.

Health: Medium
Combat: Melee, Scorch
Variants: Cleaver, Shredder

Behavior

Knights are heavily armored Hive combatants. Knights are Acrolytes. Not only vulnerable Knights are the most common Hostile enemies.

Knights are heavily armored Hive combatants. Knights are Acrolytes. Not only vulnerable Knights are the most common Hostile enemies. Knights are Acrolytes. Not only vulnerable Knights are the most common Hostile enemies.

They may also appear armed with either a Shredder or the Cleaver. If they do use a Shredder, be sure to keep your distance and avoid getting hit by its attack. If they use the Cleaver, they will charge at you and attempt to hit you with it.

Knights create combustible shells when they are destroyed, and are attracted to whatever you with a single shot.

On top of their incredible durability, Knights are survivors in wall of darkness. Shooting an incoming Knight will cause it to stagger.

Knights can also go on the offensive and charge you with their melee attacks. After the charge ends, they will unleash Dread. They have a chance of activating a Dreaded Attack. This causes them to regain health. Knights can also go on the offensive and charge you with their melee attacks.

Luckily, the Acrolyte melee does need off after a time. Though it is possible for a Knight to have an Acrolyte melee attack that lasts indefinitely, this is rare. Most Knights will only attack for a few seconds. Knights can also go on the offensive and charge you with their melee attacks.

Tactics

Dispose Shadow Knights as soon as possible. All Hive Knights become active and gain a Projectile Shield. Shadow Knights are also Knights that have the Shadow ability, which makes them harder to fight against when they're alive.

In addition to the Shadow ability, Shadow Knights are Knights that have the Shadow ability. This makes them harder to fight against when they're alive. Shadow Knights are also Knights that have the Shadow ability.

Shadow Knights are also Knights that have the Shadow ability. This makes them harder to fight against when they're alive. Shadow Knights are also Knights that have the Shadow ability.

Shadow Knights are also Knights that have the Shadow ability. This makes them harder to fight against when they're alive. Shadow Knights are also Knights that have the Shadow ability.

Shadow Knights are also Knights that have the Shadow ability. This makes them harder to fight against when they're alive. Shadow Knights are also Knights that have the Shadow ability.

Wizard

Wizards are powerful, ranged Hive combatants. Wizards cast Arc and Scorch attacks from afar.

Health: Extreme (Red Shield), Extreme (Yellow Shield)
Combat: Arc and Scorch, Void
Variants: Red Shield, Yellow Shield

Behavior

Wizards are powerful, ranged Hive combatants. Wizards cast Arc and Scorch attacks from afar. These red-armed Lancelots are difficult to scout in the open. As they can move during and they're difficult to scout in the open, as they can move during and they're difficult to scout in the open.

In addition to the Arc and Scorch attacks, Wizards also summon a single Acolyte to assist them. They're armed with a hot, sealed, chemical weapon. Wizards also summon a single Acolyte to assist them. They're armed with a hot, sealed, chemical weapon.

Wizards come armed with a Void shield. Although you can take them down fairly quickly once you've destroyed their shield, they can regenerate it if you don't destroy them in a timely manner.

Like regular Hive Acolytes, Wizards have Void attacks that can be dangerous if they're not dodged.

Tactics

Wizards are dangerous opponents, and although they look slightly like the Acolytes or Cleaver Knights, they're a completely different type of enemy. Wizards are dangerous opponents.

Wizards are dangerous opponents, and although they look slightly like the Acolytes or Cleaver Knights, they're a completely different type of enemy. Wizards are dangerous opponents.

To take them down quickly, heavy machinegun fire or armor-piercing rounds work well. A Void Hive is faster after you start firing on it with a primary weapon.

Ogre

Ogres are large, armored enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram.

Health: Extreme, Ground Armor
Combat: Taint

Behavior

Ogres are heavily armored Hive Ogres. Ogres are large, armored enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram. Ogres are heavily armored Hive Ogres.

Ogres are heavily armored Hive Ogres. Ogres are large, armored enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram. Ogres are heavily armored Hive Ogres.

Ogres are heavily armored Hive Ogres. Ogres are large, armored enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram. Ogres are heavily armored Hive Ogres.

Ogres are heavily armored Hive Ogres. Ogres are large, armored enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram. Ogres are heavily armored Hive Ogres.

Shrieker

Shriekers are flying, Hive enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram.

Health: Low
Combat: Taint

Behavior

Shriekers are small, unarmored Hive "drones" of a sort. They are controlled and coordinated by others and function in large swarms of 6 and 12 strong.

Shriekers are small, unarmored Hive "drones" of a sort. They are controlled and coordinated by others and function in large swarms of 6 and 12 strong.

Tactics

They are easily dispatched. Shriekers solely fire a defensive, because they are shrieker targets. They are easily dispatched. Shriekers solely fire a defensive, because they are shrieker targets.

When you do spot a Shrieker, wait out briefly (one and take it down from range. A Shrieker detonates 3 sec of its energy when it dies so you don't want it to be too near when they do.

Tomb Ship

Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive. The Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive.

Health: Extreme (Red Shield)
Combat: Taint

Behavior

Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive. The Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive.

Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive. The Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive.

Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive. The Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive.

Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive. The Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive.

Tactics

Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive. The Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive.

Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive. The Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive.

Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive. The Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive.

Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive. The Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive Tomb Ships are large, armored Hive.

Taint

Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram.

Health: Medium
Combat: Taint

Behavior

Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram. Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram.

Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram. Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram.

Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram. Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram.

Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram. Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram.

Tactics

Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram. Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram.

Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram. Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram.

Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram. Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram.

Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram. Taint are Hive ground-based enemies that fire Taint attacks from the battering ram.

THE VEX

The Vex are architects of ancient and complex structures on Venus and Mercury. Linked by a data network unlike any on Earth, they operate on networks dictated by an unfathomable purpose.

Vex Programming: Reason Commander, Reason Prime, Vega Prometheon, Alpha Invasion, Evil Dominion

Bodies of vulnerable metal with tissue of living matter within, the Vex are an enigma, traveling through time and space with their purpose a mystery.

It is not clear if they have arrived here from the future, the past, or from another past or future. What is clear is that they represent a threat to humanity.

They march with a singular purpose on the battlefield, driven by some unknown and unbreakable intelligence, assertiveness and focused on completing their mysterious objectives.

The Vex transform the planets they occupy, terraforming inorganic landscape into massive environmental structures. Their grand designs have no room for the Guardians' presence, and they must be stopped.

Vex Weapons

The Vex's Sida rifle and Line rifle, as well as the Hydra's dying explosion, all deal Solar damage.

The Torch Hammer, Slap Grenade, and Goblin and Hobgoblin melee strikes all deal Void damage.

Finally, the Minotaur's melee strikes deal pure Kinetic damage.

Weak Points

Unlike the other humanoid races, the "humanoid" Vex (the Goblin and the Hydra/Hydra's head weak points that are located in the center of their torso.

Harpies and Hydra both have weak points in their "eyes."

Minotaurs have no weak points.

The Vex Mythoclast, Goblin Mythoclast, Hobgoblins, and Minotaurs, but bosses. Vex spawns them to enter a heroism state where they fire faster (albeit with less accuracy) and charge your position.

Teleportation

The Vex possess sophisticated gateway technology, and this extends to their combat units, many of which one arrive with preprogrammed destinations.

Goblins, Hobgoblins, and Minotaurs all have the ability to Teleport, teleporting up to a range from place to place. You can often observe the behavior if you engage a group of them at long range— they'll blink rapidly between positions.

At shorter ranges, Goblins and Minotaurs have a combat ritual emphasizing their teleportation ability, but Hobgoblins are notably more aggressive (and dangerous) than Goblins with their range of weapons.

Goblin

The foundation and workhorse troops of the Vex. Goblins are promising, ineffectual combatants.

Location: Any Vex
Variants: Torch Hammer

Behavior

Goblins are close-ranking automatons. Armed with the Sida Slap Rifle, they march steadily across the battlefield, firing as they move.

Goblins display less of a self-preservation instinct than other races, but they still execute assembly and take cover from your attacks. Goblins will aim to protect their powerbase (and do so more effectively than Cabal), but they'll abandon it if you're close enough to threaten and execute their programming.

Goblins are more mission-guards at long ranges via their Teleportation, and at closer ranges, you may occasionally see them execute a short-range retreat to move to cover.

While individual Slap Rifle Goblins do not present a serious threat, the more rarely encountered Torch Hammer Goblins do.

Goblins equipped with the Vex's explosive weapon are considerably more dangerous: more than a priority target.

Tactics

Goblins move fairly slowly and are easy to dispatch with Primary Weapon fire. Just be sure to target their vulnerable, red head.

If you wish to cover when numerous Goblins are present, you can swiftly and safely take down many. Avoid underestimating large groups of Goblins, especially on higher difficulty modes. With enough of them present, Goblins can lay down a serious wall of firepower.

If you want enough Goblins to assemble together, they make great targets for grenades and areas of effect super abilities. Supers are particularly notable because Goblins are usually too slow to evade them, and they're a great way to score some of Goblins in one shot. you can generate quite a few Orbs of Light for your Fireteam.

Hobgoblin

Long-range sharpshooters, Hobgoblins fulfill suppression role in Vex squads, supporting the forces from a distance.

Location: Line Rifle
Variants: Sida Rifle

Behavior

Hobgoblins typically take up positions at long range, using their scope-class Line Rifles to inflict heavy damage to exposed Guardians.

When they take any incoming fire, Hobgoblins instantly enact an emergency withdrawal, warping themselves to safety and executing completely immune to incoming damage for a short time.

Like other ranged weapons, the Line Rifle has a distinctive glance as it charges to fire. If you spot it, get to cover quickly. You may get a single ranging shot if you're lucky, but stay in the open, and you can certain to be hit.

Line-carrying Vex may encounter Hobgoblins armed with the Slap Rifle. Hobgoblins are more accurate and dangerous with this weapon than Goblins, but you can afford to break from cover more frequently to attack them. Use your mobility to your advantage.

All Hobgoblins use Slap Grenades. Void charges that can flush you out of cover. However, you are also able to use these weapons if you keep your distance. Be aware of their potential damage if you close the gap!

Tactics

To dispatch Hobgoblins, bait out their shields with a light hit, then follow up with a dual-barrage when they drop out of shield.

Taking off a Hobgoblin's head removes the ability for the Hobgoblin to use its Stasis Shield.

It is also possible to instantly dispatch a Hobgoblin if you strike with enough force in a single shot. Rockets, Heavy Grenade Launchers, and Snipers are all up to the task.

Because you typically encounter Hobgoblins at long range, your main weapon rifle or precision Primary weapon will be eliminating them swiftly.

Take down Line Rifle Hobgoblins before you focus on Goblins, as their suppression fire can keep you pinned in place. This is bad news if there are other Vex around.

Harpy

The Roaring Harpy is a vocal and nimble predator, deploying it skin to annihilate its targets.

Location: Vex Sky Fortress
Variants: None

Harpy — Lives: 1st variant

Behavior

Harpies are hovering Vex drones that use their aerial maneuverability to bypass cover and attack from above. Harpies are also capable of short bursts of flight to close distance.

The behavior is easily spotted, as a Harpy's hovering combat sprint is quite similar when it stops and starts. Harpies also have a distinctive, high-pitched roaring noise, so you'll hear them coming. Their behavior is quickly take them down is just as they deploy but before they open fire.

Harpies are more aggressive than many other Vex when they're coming from their Sky Rifles, so don't ignore them if they are present in large numbers.

Sky Rifles are effective, Harpies gain up on them, which pushes them from dangerous nuisance to just plain dangerous. Bring a ready source of Arc damage to knock them out of the sky quickly.

Harpies do not make use of Shieldbearing.

Tactics

Harpies are not particularly sturdy, so you can take them down with Primary Weapon fire fairly easily. Unfortunately, they serve as a dangerous distraction when more serious Vex threats are present.

This does not apply to Mythic difficulty, where they gain their Arc shields—be sure to bring an Arc Special Weapon or machinegun to dispatch them swiftly.

Harpies are more vulnerable immediately as they deploy. When stationary in mid-air with their eyes aimed directly at you, they make for an easy shot.

However, they are also easy enough targets to destroy even when not aimed right at you as it's not difficult to turn and fire at a Harpy that you can aim a hovering position. you may be able to hit the Harpy's weak point in the "eye."

Hydra

The Hydra is a massive floating Vex unit, armed with a pair of either Torch Hammers and protected by a floating barrier of rage that destroys incoming attacks.

Left unchecked, it continuously bombards your position. Lethal in the open and dangerous even if you are in cover, they're best dispatched from a distance before you're up close and personal.

Finally, when the Hydra is destroyed, its core erupts in an explosion, damaging anything nearby—even enough you should take the core position at close range and be punished damage when it detonated.

Like Hecatos, Hydras do not use Mithecalling for mobility.

Tactics

Thankfully, both the Hydra and the shield that protects it are easy to snove. Plus, the shield only inserts a Fireteam as a potentially challenging or just rights—it can be destroyed by Void or under depending on the terrain.

The Hydra is extremely dangerous, so make it a priority target for Heavy Weapons and super abilities. Dispatching it before it deploys its shield is ideal.

If it spam the or proximity Primary Weapons can also be a boon depending on the terrain. It is extremely vulnerable to Void and Arc if you can get into a flanking position. you may be able to hit the Hydra's weak point in the "eye."

Minotaur

A towering Vex brute unit, armored with Void Shotgun, the Minotaur is a heavy Vex assault unit.

Location: Torch Hammer, Vex Lasers
Variants: Sida Rifle

Behavior

Minotaurs are dangerous and durable Vex units. They serve as anchors for larger groups of Vex, either as frontwarding core of a Vex Mythoclast or Torch Hammer, or acting as heavy firepower to close into melee range and smash you at point blank.

Minotaurs are much more aggressive in attack using their teleport ability than Goblins. They are also particularly adept at dodging incoming rockets, snipers, air grenades by teleporting past them.

Often, attempting to send such an attack causes the Minotaur to teleport several times in quick succession, dashing with a flourish of close range and its enormous hammer at the ready.

Minotaurs are protected by Void Shields, so bring a ready source of Void damage to destroy them. Their Void Shotguns are also a very powerful weapon. Combined with their inherent durability, this makes them a very strong enemy.

Destroying a Minotaur's head has two effects: it disables their ability to regenerate their Void Shield, and it causes them to go berserk, spraying shots more rapidly but less accurately as they move in their direction.

The Minotaur's melee weapon is the explosive Torch Hammer, and its shockwave blasts can force you out of light cover and cripple you in the open. Use short jumps and movement ability to evade the worst of the blast damage.

Minotaurs may appear on the battlefield armed with Slap Rifles. If so, be wary, as they are marginally more accurate and dangerous with them than Goblins are.

Tactics

Whenever possible, whip a Minotaur's shield of range and quickly destroy its head to prevent it from regenerating its shield and to cause it to enter berserk mode. Minotaurs are very durable Vex enemies and often lead threatening than their well-armed suppressive fire and quick teleports.

Be very careful if you get to close-medium distance with a Minotaur. This is exactly the range that they can most extremely rapidly with a few teleports. While Minotaurs normally seem like fairly slow and plodding units, you won't think that when they blink toward you and rush into melee in seconds.

It is well worth using the big guns on Minotaurs. However, because they are adept at evading slow-moving high-power attacks, a machinegun is recommended over a rocket launcher.

If you do plan to use rockets, try to bait a teleport with a grenade first, or fire at them from long range before they are fully aware of your presence.

THE CABAL

Brutally efficient and unrelenting, the Cabal are the greatest known military force in the system.

Their origin is as much a mystery as their end game, but it is said they have conquered more planets than the Guardians have visited and they are preparing for annihilation.

While they are massive in size and well-protected by heavy armor they can be made to bleed.

Cabal Enchantments: Sand Eaters, Dust Giants, Siege Dancers, Bone Crushers, Sky Burners, Ice Reapers

The Fallen are a broken race of scavengers, the Vex are unfathomable, and the Hive are pure darkness.

The Cabal are none of these things. They are a sophisticated military culture, armed, armored, and organized for warfare.

Through they are physically imposing, do not mistake their strength for unintelligent or slow giants. They are a disciplined and dangerous fighting force.

It is fortunate for humanity that they are mired in a conflict with the Hive and Dark, for they view the solar system as simply one more in a long line of planets, one that you must stand against.

The Cabal respect nothing but power which is the battlefield. Show them yours.

Cabal Weapons

The Cabal favor close range damage with a single exception: the Psion's pre-fast attack inflicts Arc damage.

Weak Points

All Cabal units are weak to precision headshots.

Legionary

Arc-resistant opponents. Legionary come into battle with their army pistol (**Legionary Sidearm**).

Variants: Projectile (**Walkbuster**)

Legionaries are the most commonly encountered Cabal troop type. Equipped with the Cabal's standard-issue Gray Rifle, Legionaries tend to stick to a medium distance, hammering you with fire from range.

Legionaries do make use of cover, but because they are so physically large, they are often easier to flank than smaller units hastened by unless the available cover is large enough to fit their increased size.

While Legionaries move fairly slowly, they are equipped with jump packs that allow them to counter-attack from above.

They often use these jumps to escape an unfavorable situation or (more threateningly) to jump over cover and close in on you.

Be wary of Legionaries armed with the Projection Rifle. This rapid-fire explosive weapon makes any Legionary wielding it a serious threat that you should deal with swiftly.

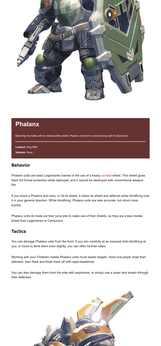
Tactics

Legionaries are easy targets, so aim for headshots as often as possible to dispatch them swiftly.

Be wary of them jump jet maneuvers. As long as you maintain sufficient distance from a group of Legionaries, you can avoid their headshot shots (the weapons are super-accurate!). Stay alert and aim for their head when they launch you into a surprise flanking jump.

Avoid getting pinned on a flatlight with other Cabal units while jump jet-capable troops are present. If you stay in place while Legionaries leapfrog to your flanks or rear, you can quickly find yourself in a nasty battle.

One quick compound is the other never have units because of their large size and tendency to use cover. Legionaries are also frequently accompanied by Phalanx units, which can be used to shield them from damage. You can very easily overpack together in large groups, unlike the lesser versions of other races.



Phalanx

Notorious, but useful, as an unassuming melee shield. Phalanx come from a shortcoming clad of Cabal forces.

Loadout: Gray Rifle
Variants: None

Behavior

Phalanx units are Legionaries trained in the use of a heavy combat shield. This shield gives them full frontal protection while deployed, and it cannot be destroyed with conventional weapon fire.

Phalanx units are always accompanied by other Cabal units.

Besides their shields, Phalanxes are no more effective at melee and defends while benefiting over if you shoot a Phalanx and miss, or hit its shield, it takes no shield and defends while benefiting over. Phalanx units, like Shielded Walking, Phalanx units are less accurate, but shoot more quickly.

Phalanx use shields to create run their jump jets to make use of their shields, so they are a less mobile threat than Legionaries or Centurions.

Tactics

You can damage Phalanx units from the front. If you are carefully at an exposed limb-blindfiring at you, or move to their flank when engaging, you can take out their shield.

Working with your Fireteam makes Phalanx units much easier to handle. Have one player draw their attention, then flank and finish them off with rapid headshots.

You can also damage them from the side with explosives, or simply use a super and smash through their defenses.

Centurion

An Ascent Guardian, Centurions make up the upper ranks of Cabal forces in the field.

Loadout: Gray Rifle, Solar shield
Variants: Gray Rifle

Behavior

Centurions wield the Wish Projection Rifle, protected by a Solar shield, and equipped with jump jets. Centurions are a tactical threat.

Centurions are tougher, more dangerous Legionaries. Their shields make them a tougher foe to engage at close range, and their jump jets mean they are aggressively durable at long range, where they can continuously pressure you.

Besides their shields, Centurions are more often armed with a Projection Rifle, and the continuous bombardment of explosive rounds they deliver is a serious threat.

Be aware that Centurions can also come equipped with a Gray Rifle. When armed in this manner, they are faster and more accurate than their Legionary counterpart.

Tactics

While the general behavior of Centurions is similar to Legionaries, their improved durability and increased weapon effectiveness make them considerably more dangerous.

Bring Solar-powered weaponry or spammable ammo to knock down their shields. If you do them much harm, you must actually use the Solar jump jets to get behind cover. Ingenuous their shields, and resume pounding you from a distance.

If you can keep your distance, picking off the newly bedefend-friendly targets in the area and taking out their shields with Solar weapons is a good tactic. Be aware that Centurions can also be armed with Void defensive fields and don't hesitate to burst a super or Heavy Weapon ends on Centurions if the opportunity presents itself.

Colossus

Massive even among the giant Cabal, the Colossus provides devastating heavy fire support on the battlefield.

Loadout: Heavy Wrap Thrower
Variants: None

Behavior

The Colossus is a seriously dangerous enemy. Armed with a heavy rapid-fire weapon, the Colossus can tear an unprepared Guardian apart in seconds if you get caught in the open.

Besides their primary weapon, Colossi can also launch seeking rockets at distant targets in zone. Nothing you can't dodge if you're paying attention, however.

Finally, if you find yourself at close range with a Colossus for some reason (not a great place to be!), they have a 360-degree ground slam that can deal heavy damage.

Tactics

Despite their strengths and their danger, they do have one major weakness: mobility.

Colossi are slow and lumbering, even for Cabal troops. If you can manage to stay at long range and hammer their heads with pinpoint shots, you can take them down before they have a chance to make their presence felt.

However, in any situation where other Cabal units are engaging you and a Colossus is allowed to reach them, you must immediately shift your priorities to the Colossus.

Even if the Colossus doesn't have a direct line of sight for its Heavy Drop Thrower, it can still bombard you with rockets from a distance. If you have your cover, these can easily force you to relocate.

Using your supers and heavy Weapons on a Colossus the moment it shows up is a very good idea. On higher difficulty levels, get your entire Fireteam to focus fire and down these adversaries as quickly as possible.

Psion

Psion Hunters, at the same commitment to offer nurturing Cabal forces, providing fast homing fire support.

Loadout: Gray Rifle, Psionic Blade
Variants: None
Boss: Vorgeth, Prime Attack

Behavior

Psions are rapidly moving, evenly combatants, preferring to remain at a distance and hide behind cover, where they can fire with greater accuracy and several more homed shots.

This alone would only make them a minor threat, but they also have the power to burst a massive amount of damage in a short time with their Psionic Blade. Psions can charge this weapon for around 5 to 6 in total if it goes into a Psion while you are occupied with other Cabal forces.

Psions are mobile fighters, and they provide a marked contrast to the giant and easily hit Cabal forces. You must pay a lot more attention to spot and kill Psions with headshots at range.

Psions are difficult. Psions gain a shot shield. This seriously increases their threat level, since now they are durable and have their jet boot to inflict serious damage. Bring a good source of Void damage, and be sure to use it on Psions. Psion Psionic Prime refined seamlessly to increase their shields can make them a nightmare to fight.

Tactics

Psions are more difficult to spot and hit than the other Cabal, but they make very distinctive sounds. Keep your ears open to avoid getting smashed by an unexpected jet blast.

Because of their psionic shockwave, Psions are a dangerous target to melee. You can get in close and pummel them, but if there are multiple Psions present, it isn't uncommon to engage one at point-blank range and have a second nearby Psion blast you.

You can, however, waste the psionic blast. If shields survive the ground, crawling over low cover, but if you jump in time, you can avoid the damage entirely.

Harvester

The heavily interventor assembly is a mighty Cabal weapon platform.

Loadout: Solar Thunder
Variants: None

Behavior

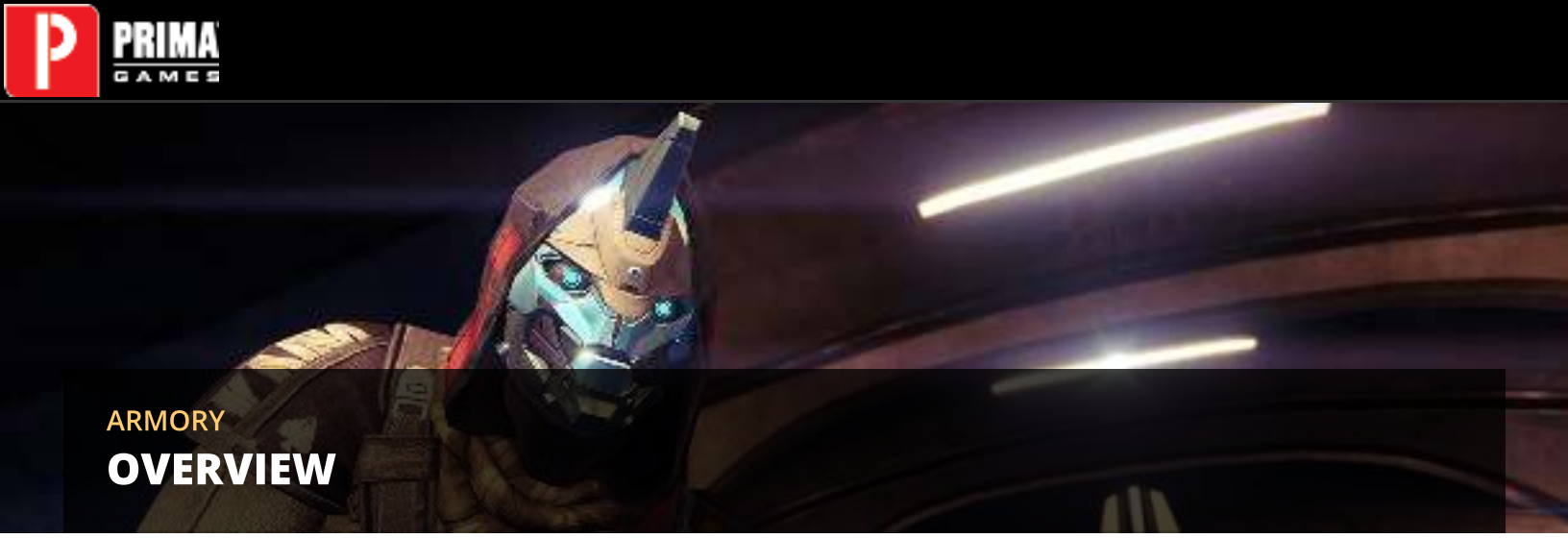
Anywhere on the surface of Mars, you can expect to encounter these Cabal troop transports. Arriving with a barrage of Solar fire from their turrets, they quickly deploy combat-ready Cabal forces onto the battlefield.

Harvesters typically only bombard you with turret fire while they are deploying troops, but they may remain on the battlefield during certain encounters, continuing to pound your Fireteam with supporting fire.

Tactics

It's possible to destroy the Harvester's turrets. If a Harvester has deployed its troops and remains on the battlefield, you must eliminate its firepower to engage the Cabal safely.

Because the Cabal are packed together and vulnerable for a moment as they deploy, this is an ideal moment to use your most powerful weapons. Grenade launchers, Rocket Launchers, and Supers can all bond the, and be aware that an overly aggressive play can take down you in a very bad situation if you don't eliminate all of the deployed forces.

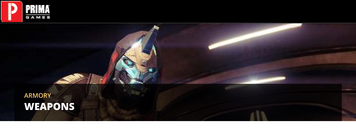


ARMORY

OVERVIEW

Welcome to the Armory. This section examines all of the arms and armor available to outfit your Guardian. The proper equipment can greatly enhance the power of your Guardian, and knowing what to look for in a weapon or piece of armor is important. There is an entire constellation of weapons available for you to find and earn out there in the solar system, and this chapter breaks down the core mechanics behind every weapon you can find in the game.

This chapter also discusses the mods that can appear on weapons and armor, and it outlines how you can assemble complementary sets of armor that work best with your weapon choices and your specific specialization. Over time, you assemble an arsenal of weapons and a literal locker filled with armor choices. No weapon or piece of armor is perfectly suited for every situation in Destiny, so learning what to use and when to use it is a vital skill for an aspiring Guardian.



ARMORY

WEAPONS

A Quick Word about Balance

Destiny will change over time. This is a simple truth about the online world of Destiny. It is not a static place, so events will come and go, new content will be added, and old content will be polished. And when it comes to weapons in particular, your deadly tools of destruction on the battlefield in PvE and PvP conflict, you can expect outliers to be tuned, tweaked, and adjusted.

If a weapon is wildly powerful to the point where other choices don't actually feel like truly viable options, expect it to get toned down a touch. Likewise, if a weapon you love consistently underperforms, expect it to be bumped up a notch or two. This is, of course, true across the entire game for all aspects of gameplay, but we're mentioning weapons in particular because they are so critical to the gameplay experience.

When you're playing an FPS, your gun is often the language you use to speak to the game. Speak loudly!

With a few notable exceptions for those weapons known as Exotic, the weapons in Destiny are somewhat fixed but somewhat randomly generated. Two weapons of the same name can have completely different mods. Weapons with different names have different basic stats.

However, while the stats and the mods change from weapon to weapon, all weapons in the game belong to basic templates called archetypes.

Essentially, for each different weapon class in the game (from auto rifles to machineguns), several different archetypes define how a weapon behaves in broad strokes. It doesn't make every weapon of that class and archetype exactly the same, but it does mean that if you enjoy the way a particular archetype handles, you should look out for more weapons of that basic template.

These archetypes are not explicitly shown anywhere in the game, but the name of any given weapon is always a weapon of a certain archetype. This chapter includes tables showing the links between weapon names and their base archetypes.

Additionally, you can learn to recognize the ones you most enjoy using over time, and you can use the charts in this chapter to aid in spotting archetypes at a glance.

What this means as you hunt for the very best gear in the game is that you can search for specific auto rifles that have a fire rate, recoil pattern, and range that feels comfortable to you.

It is also very likely that two or more of the archetypes for any given weapon class will suit your personal tastes. You may also find that you prefer some weapons for PvE and some for PvP.

Keep in mind that while the archetypes define a range of stat possibilities for a weapon, the combination of the extremes of those ranges and the random mods that appear on a weapon can make one weapon handle very differently from another within the same archetype.

And a Word about Damage...

Before you freak out about the possibility of wildly powerful weapons destroying you in PvP, understand this: every weapon in the game has a tightly controlled damage range. The rule of thumb is that weapons with lower fire rates have higher damage, and vice versa, but overall, all weapons have carefully tuned damage values.

Player abilities and weapon mods can affect damage, but in PvE (and PvP where Level Advantages), your level and your Attack stat are usually the greatest influence on your damage output, rather than the random mods you can find on weapons.

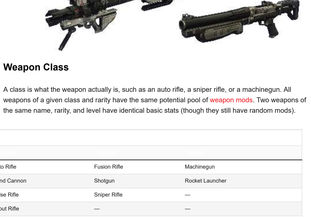
In PvP outside matches where Level Advantages are enabled, level and Attack stats do not affect damage, so whether you are using a Level 5 Common weapon or a Level 20 Exotic, you will deal the same damage. In the case of normal Shooter PvP, temporary damage mods are one of the few ways you can increase damage on your weapon, and almost every such mod requires you to earn #wdamage bonus.

Weapon Attributes

Take a breath, Guardian, it's time to dive deep. This section delves into the specifics of how the weapons in Destiny are assembled. This isn't simply a list of all the weapons that you can find. Instead, it is a look at the weapon DNA for every possible gun in the game.

For general PvE play and casual PvP, you do not need to know every detail about your weapons. But once you reach Level 20 and you begin exploring the upper reaches of PvE difficulty and competitive PvP, you're going to want every edge you can get.

This information is intended to help you make decisions about your weapons for the long haul—what to equip, why to equip it, what to look for, and how to choose the weapons that best suit you (as well as how to find more of them). First, you should learn about the basic parts that make up a weapon.



Weapon Class

A class is what the weapon actually is, such as an auto rifle, a sniper rifle, or a machinegun. All weapons of a given class and rarity have the same potential pool of weapon mods. Two weapons of the same name, rarity, and level have identical basic stats (though they still have random mods).

Auto Rifle	Fusion Rifle	Machinegun
Hand Cannon	Shotgun	Rocket Launcher
Pulse Rifle	Sniper Rifle	—
Scout Rifle	—	—

Weapon Archetype

As the "heart" of the weapon, the archetype defines the stat ranges a weapon can have. There are many weapons of each archetype in the game. So, while two "Balanced" auto rifles possess similar attributes, within those ranges, one can have a minimum value for one stat and the maximum for another.

Check the archetype charts in this chapter to see all the various stat ranges for the different weapon classes in the game.

Use the archetype name tables to look up which weapons belong to which archetypes as you find them. Also, use the tables when shopping for weapons in the Tower, especially when you are considering spending limited currencies.

Use the mod stat charts to see how you can affect the stat ranges of a given archetype. The correct mods can push a weak stat to a strong one, but they might be wasted on a weapon that already has a good stat range.

Balanced	Well-balanced and usable.	Balanced	Well-balanced and usable.	Balanced	Well-balanced and usable.	Balanced	Well-balanced and usable.
Lightweight	Quick handling and reload, smaller magazine, and weak range.	Lightweight	Quick handling and reload, smaller magazine, and weak range.	Lightweight	Quick handling and reload, smaller magazine, and weak range.	Lightweight	Quick firing finesse, quick reload, short range.
Stable	Accurate, solid handling, lower range.	Stable	Accurate, solid handling, lower range.	Precise	Steady, accurate, improved range.	Precise	Steady, accurate, improved range.
Precise	Slow firing, accurate, improved range.	Precise	Accurate, improved range, puts rounds on target.	Rapid	Rapid firing, short range.	Powerful	Slow firing, long range, big kick.
Rapid	Spray bullets, poor range, harsh recoil.	Rapid	Fast firing, deep magazine, poor range.	Marksman	Slow firing, long range, big kick.	—	—
—	—	Marksman	Long range, accurate.	—	—	—	—

Balanced	Well-balanced and usable.	Balanced	Well-balanced and usable.	Balanced	Well-balanced and usable.		
Lightweight	Quick charge, short range, quick handling and reload.	Lightweight	Quick firing, short range, quick handling and reload.	Lightweight	Quick firing finesse, quick handling and reload.		
Precise	Stable, easy to keep on target, slow charge.	Precise	Slow firing, accurate, improved range.	Precise	Steady, improved range, reduced recoil.		
Rapid	Excellent charge, short range, deep magazine.	Powerful	Very slow firing, long range, big kick.	Marksman	Slow firing, long range, big kick.		
Powerful	Slow charge, long range, big kick.	—	—	—	—		
—	—	—	—	—	—		

Balanced	Well-balanced and usable.	Balanced	Well-balanced and usable.
Stable	Accurate, lower range, reduced handling and reload.	Precise	Fast, accurate rockets with low blast radius.
Precise	Long range, accurate, improved reload.	Rapid	Quick firing, small blasts, larger magazine.
Rapid	Spray bullets, close range, harsh recoil.	Powerful	Powerful rockets, harsh recoil.
Powerful	Ponderously slow, devastating bullets, long range.	Heavy	Powerful but slow rockets.
—	—	—	—

GUIDE

WEAPON STATS

Weapon stats define how a weapon behaves. All [weapons](#) of the same name have the same base stats. Note that because two [weapons](#) of the same name can have different mods, they can still end up with different final stat values!

Also, there are a few weapon stats that are "hidden" (that is, not visible on the in-game stat display): Optics, Handling, Recoil, and maximum [Inventory](#) ammo stats aren't shown on your weapon. Note that a higher maximum [Inventory](#) ammo stat decreases the amount of ammo you spawn with when you begin an activity.

Rate of Fire	How quickly the weapon fires
Impact	Damage dealt per shot
Range	Distance at which you can deal 100% of your Impact damage
Stability	Dampens recoil
Reload	How quickly you reload
Magazine	The size of your magazine
Charge Time	Time to charge a fusion rifle
Blast Radius	The size of the blast zone from a rocket
Velocity	How fast a rocket travels

Optics	Zoom factor, multiplies Range stat
Handling	How quickly you ADS, raise, and lower your gun
Recoil	Affects direction of gun kick
Inventory	Bonds ammo reserve, affects initial spawn ammo and max possible capacity

Rate of Fire

How quickly your weapon fires repeated shots.

Rate of fire applies to full-auto firing mode for auto rifles' 3rd semi-auto [weapons](#), it applies to how quickly you can pull the trigger. High rate of fire [weapons](#) can have issues with recoil control. Either seek out [weapons](#) with high Stability stats, or use them at shorter distances.

Impact

Base damage dealt per shot.

Remember that in PvE and PvP where Level Advantages are enabled, your Attack and your Level stats modify this amount.

Against higher-level targets, you deal lower damage, and vice versa against lower-level targets. There are very few exceptions directly affected the Impact stat. Most have conditional triggers you must fulfill before you can get the damage boost.

As a general rule while leveling, if you have two [weapons](#) (of the same class) with Attack values that are similar, the weapon with the higher Impact will still hit harder on enemies around your level. Once you are looking at [weapons](#) a few levels higher that have considerably higher Attack values, even a terrible, low-Impact weapon starts dealing less damage than a weaker but faster-firing weapon.

Also, don't go trying to compare Impact values directly across weapon classes. They are very much apples and oranges (for example, sniper rifles hit harder than auto rifles).

Range

The distance at which the weapon remains effective.

Range determines the distance that your shots hit for 100% damage before they begin falling off to 50% damage. Range also affects the minimum and maximum size of your "bloom" circle when [aiming](#) (and a small fraction of that circle is used for ADS accuracy, as well).

Range is a very important stat for long-range [combat](#), for obvious reasons. What is not obvious is that sights provide a range multiplier, and so the exact same weapon with or without a long-range sight can perform far, far differently when shooting distant targets. Beyond the maximum range of your weapon, damage falls off steadily until you reach 50% of your normal damage amount. For [weapons](#) with poor Range stats, this can make them very inefficient for fighting distant targets. Choose a weapon (and a sight) that suits the mission or PvP map you are entering!

Range also plays a role in accuracy when you are firing your weapon, so [weapons](#) with a good Range stat tend to be easier to handle when you're firing at distant enemies.

Fusion rifles do not suffer damage falloff, so sights are not as vital for improving long-range damage. However, range affects the [aiming](#) circle, so a fusion rifle with a good Range stat can help you have a much tighter Hammer Forged eyepiece, making it easier to hit a target at medium range with more of the shot. "Range" is also essentially the same stat for Rocket Launcher's projectile speed.

Important! Sights Multiply Range while ADS

Don't mess this bit up when you equip your weapon with a sight and go into ADS: the zoom factor provides a direct multiplier to the base range of the weapon. Equipping a 2x zoom sight multiplies the distance from which you can deal maximum damage. Unsurprisingly, sniper rifles are king here, but even a hand cannon with a long-range sight can deal more damage to target with, this gives them the best long-range performance of any weapon.

For primary [weapons](#), switching between non-ADS sights or a scope can completely change the character of a weapon. You can switch to irons for close-quarters [combat](#), and use a more powerful scope for long-range [combat](#). Of course, more intense magnification also tends to harm your ability to fight effectively at close range, and you often pay a cost in Stability or Handling characteristics for more sophisticated sights, or sometimes even Range.

Stability

How hard your weapon kicks when you fire it.

Stability represents how much your weapon jerks in your hand when you are ADS. It also affects view kick when you hipfire a weapon (though Range has control over how large your bloom circle is, too).

High-stability [weapons](#) are generally much easier to handle, and other than Impact, this stat has the greatest effect on long-range damage. Landing more precision hits and missing fewer shots both improve your damage output.

Prize primary [weapons](#) with high Stability stats and mods that grant bonus Stability, as these make for lethal mid- to long-range tools. Special and heavy [weapons](#) don't always need amazing Stability scores. Depending on the weapon in question, you may find that handling the recoil doesn't trouble you.

Reload

How quickly your weapon can be reloaded.

Reload is a simple but important stat. [Weapons](#) in Destiny do not reload more slowly whether your magazine is empty or not.

In PvE, Reload can improve your sustained damage output, giving you more time firing and less reloading, and occasionally saving you from a lurking enemy. In PvP, it can save your life if an opponent rounds the corner just as you finished a battle.

There are also quite a few player abilities and [weapon mods](#) that interact with Reload, either powering it up or giving you bonuses for reloading.

Reload Cancelling

Here's a useful trick for speeding reloads: you do not have to wait for the full reload animation to complete before the ammo is actually in the magazine. The instant you see the ammo counter increase, your gun is considered reloaded, even if you cancel the remaining animation time.

For almost all [weapons](#), the time that the ammo actually reloads coincides almost perfectly with the sound effect and the animation of the magazine being inserted into the weapon.

You can cancel the remaining animation by sprinting, switching [weapons](#), melee quickly, meleeing, or throwing a grenade. The most practical application of this technique is sprinting. By reloading and then sprinting out of the full animation, you save time that you would otherwise spend waiting. This sounds really minor, and it is most of the time—except in PvP, where fractions of a second count.

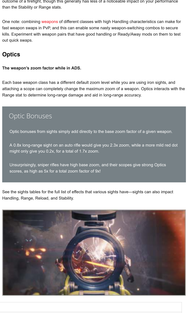
If you reload-cancel all of your reloads, it very simply "sprinting" one step, you can functionally speed the reload time of all of your [weapons](#). With practice, this technique becomes completely second nature. You won't even think about it consciously, as you'll be performing it automatically after every reload.

Don't try this if you're still actively engaged in [combat](#) (whether in PvE or PvP). However, in any other situation, it shaves a bit of time off every reload.

Magazine

The amount of ammunition your weapon can hold.

This is a simple but important stat. Not every weapon of the same archetype has the same amount of ammo, and mods can boost the number even higher. Sniper rifles and rocket launchers have less variance in their magazine sizes; both [weapons](#) have much smaller magazines compared to other weapon types.



Charge Time

How quickly the weapon fully charges its lethal burst of energy.

This stat is exclusive to fusion rifles. A quick charge time makes for an easy to use close-range fusion rifle. But in PvP, don't expect to beat a shotgun at point-blank range, even with a very short charge.

In PvE, the charge time can influence how you utilize cover, with longer charge times allowing you to stay behind hard cover while you prime the charge, stepping out for just a moment to unleash a powerful blast.

One critically important point: changing the Charge Time stat affects damage. If you have a slow charge time, you're going to hit harder, but if you have a fast charge time, your shots are weaker. You must decide if you want all your damage dealt in one big, slower burst, or distributed across several weaker but faster blasts.

Blast Radius

Both the size and the potential damage of a blast.

This stat is exclusive to rocket launchers. Blast damage falls off from the center of the explosion. A large blast both increases the number of targets you can hit and improves the damage dealt to opponents not directly at the center of the blast.

Velocity

The speed at which rockets travel once fired.

This stat is also exclusive to rocket launchers. High-velocity rockets are much more effective at hitting nimble targets at medium range, while slower ones can be unreliable when aimed at distant targets.

Keep in mind that fusion rifles do have a "hidden" Velocity value, as well: their Range stat affects the speed of the fusion blasts. Fusion beams travel much faster than rockets, but they are slow enough that hitting distant targets can be difficult.

Handling

A combination of the time it takes to enter ADS fully, and to stow or draw a weapon.

These three traits are referred to as ADS, Away, and Ready. Some mods can specifically modify one of the Handling "children" independently of the overall Handling parent stat. A weapon with good handling characteristics feels light and snappy. You ADS quickly, bring your weapon up from anything faster, and can switch to and from it quickly.

In PvE, good handling simply makes a weapon feel good, and comfort matters when you're fighting for hours on end. In PvP, however, Handling characteristics have a very slight and subtle but important role in [PvP combat](#). Fractions of a second can tell in a fight contest, so Handling stats can influence the outcome of a firefight, though this generally has less of a noticeable impact on your performance than the Stability or Range stats.

One note: combining [weapons](#) of different classes with high Handling characteristics can make for fast-weapon swaps in PvP, and this can enable some really weapon-switching combos to secure kills. Experiment with weapon pairs that have good handling or Ready/Away mods on them to test out quick swaps.

Optics

The weapon's zoom factor while in ADS.

Each base weapon class has a different default zoom level while you are using iron sights, and attaching a scope can completely change the maximum zoom of a weapon. Optics interacts with the Range stat to determine long-range damage and aid in long-range accuracy.

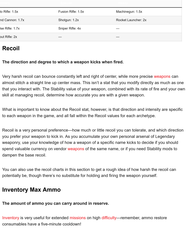
Optic Bonuses

Optic bonuses from sights simply add directly to the base zoom factor of a given weapon.

A 0.5x long-range sight on an auto rifle would give you 2.5x zoom; while a more mild red dot might only give you 2.0x, for a total of 1.5x zoom.

Unsurprisingly, sniper rifles have high base zoom, and their scopes give strong Optics scores, as high as 5x for a total zoom factor of 8!

See the sights tables for the full list of effects that various sights have—sights can also impact Handling, Range, Reload, and Stability.



Auto Rifle: 1.3x	Fusion Rifle: 1.3x	Machinegun: 1.3x
Hand Cannon: 1.7x	Shotgun: 1.2x	Rocket Launcher: 2x
Pulse Rifle: 1.7x	Sniper Rifle: 4x	—
Scout Rifle: 2x	—	—

Recoil

The direction and degree to which a weapon kicks when fired.

Very harsh recoil can bounce consistently left and right of center, while more precise [weapons](#) can almost stitch a straight line up center mass. This isn't a stat that you modify directly as much as one that you interact with. The Stability value of your weapon, combined with the rate of fire and your own skill at managing recoil, determine how accurate you are with a given weapon.

What is important to know about the Recoil stat, however, is that direction and intensity are specific to each weapon in the game, and all fall within the Recoil values for each archetype.

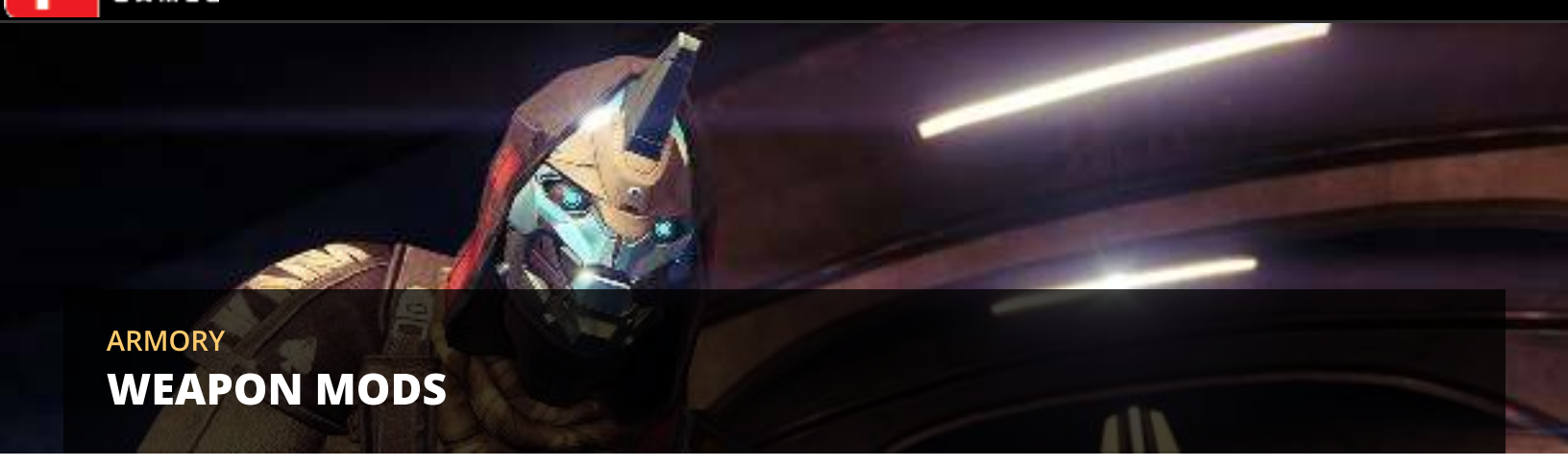
Recoil is a very personal preference—how much or little recoil you can tolerate, and which direction you prefer your weapon to kick in. As you accumulate your own personal arsenal of Legendary weapons, use your knowledge of how a weapon of a specific name kicks to decide if you should spend valuable currency on certain [weapons](#) of the same name, or if you need Stability mods to dampen the base recoil.

You can also use the recoil charts in this section to get a rough idea of how harsh the recoil can potentially be, though there's no substitute for holding and firing the weapon yourself.

Inventory Max Ammo

The amount of ammo you can carry around in reserve.

[Inventory](#) is very useful for extended [missions](#) on high [difficulty](#)—remember, ammo restore consumables have a five-minute cooldown!



ARMORY

WEAPON MODS

Now comes the fun stuff: weapon mods influence all aspects of your weapon, from raw stats to functional gameplay changes. If you find two of the exact same weapon with different mods, they can handle completely differently.

Choosing a weapon in Destiny comes down to figuring out which weapons you like to use and which archetypes fit your playstyle. Once you know what you love, you need to find the right weapon, of the right archetype, with the right mods. Needless to say, this can take awhile…

But while you're hunting for the perfect weapon with the perfect mods, take some time to digest the information here. Some mods are well suited to PvE or PvP (or both!), some work better on certain weapon types, and others just come down to personal preference.

MOD CATEGORIES

Damage Type

A damage type can be Kinetic, Arc, Solar, or Void. Special damage types are vital when you are dealing with shielded enemies in PvE, but they have no effect in PvP. Remember that on Mythic missions in PvE, damage to enemy shields that is not of the proper element is penalized by 50%!

Sights or Barrel

Most weapons get a choice of three different random optical attachments. Remember, scopes have a dramatic impact on the behavior of weapons due to the zoom multiplier affecting the Range stat!

Shotguns and rocket launchers get a choice of three different barrels. Barrels modify weapon behavior a bit differently than the optics. You can choose and switch between any of the three sights or barrels available on your weapon at any time.

Vendor Weapons

The weapons on offer from the various vendors in the Tower have a fixed set of mods. It is possible to find the exact same weapon out in the field or as a random reward for various activities, but the odds are low, given the huge range of possibilities.

If you see a Legendary weapon of an archetype that you prefer with mods you like, jump on it!

Exotic Mods

One of the things that makes an Exotic weapon powerful and exciting is its Exotic mods. Exotics break some of the rules laid down here—you can find Exotic gear that has completely unique abilities.

How unique? How about a fully automatic hand cannon, or a sniper rifle that cloaks you while aiming? This is one of the reasons why you can only equip one Exotic weapon and piece of armor at a time! You can bend the rules, Guardian, but you cannot break them completely.

Primary Ability Mod

This is a mod from a list specific to the weapon class. Once unlocked, it is permanently active. These mods are generally effects that you must trigger to activate, though some are always effective.

First Upgrade

Boost this weapon's Attack power. Found on Uncommon or better weapons.

Stat Mod

This slot gives you a choice of three different powerful mods that affect the weapon's stats in a major way. While optics and barrels have some minor stat shifts, this slot can peg a weapon's stats in one category all the way to the cap (or beyond, in some cases).

As with optics or barrels, you can switch between any of the three stat mods at any time as needed.

Found on Rare or better weapons.

Secondary Ability Mod

A second bonus mod, also specific to the weapon class. As with the first ability mod, it is permanently active once unlocked. This second mod is only found on Legendary and Exotic weapons.

Second Upgrade

Boost the weapon's Attack power again. Found on Rare or better weapons.

Ascend

Only present on Legendary and Exotic weapons, this is a three-stage boost to the weapon's Attack power—at the cost of some rare Materials.

WEAPON ARCHETYPES

The archetype name tables let you be any Rare or Legendary weapon by its name to its mod attribute. This allows you to make use of the archetype stat charts, as well as the mod stat charts.

Remember, while two weapons may share the same archetype, they can and will have different stats within the ranges of that archetype. Likewise, two weapons of the exact same name have the same stats, but they can have different mods.

Important Weapon Archetypes

These lists outline the current metagame in Destiny, and you will find more not listed here. When you find a weapon not on the list, it is still possible to determine its core archetype if you examine its stats carefully.

Use the archetype stat charts, and compare the stats of a new weapon you find to an existing weapon that you know the archetype of. Simply comparing the Rate of Fire stat alone can typically narrow the range of possibilities to two different archetypes, and examining the stats that cannot overlap will usually get you to the final archetype.

Once you have a good idea of the archetype, you can then use the stat chart charts to compare the maximum potential stat ranges based on the mods present on your new toy.

Primary Archetypes (alphabetical)

Bronzed Miyamoto-D	Rapid
Caseotaptic	Rapid
Deep Fix 776	Lightweight
Doctor Nope	Rapid
Eclipse-1/MX2	Rapid
Forcing Function	Rapid
Gelahad-E	Balanced
Grim Citizen VI	Precise
Her Right Hand	Balanced
Hex Caster ARC	Rapid
Painted SUROS CQB-67	Precise
Problem TBF	Lightweight
Sahara-MX5	Rapid
Shadow Price	Precise
Shinigami-E	Stable
Silvered Hushwind-D	Stable
SUROS ADM-50	Precise
Surrender A	Precise
Unwilling Soul-09	Rapid
Vanquisher VIII	Precise

A Little Voice	Powerful
Equuleus	Powerful
Hard Luck Mk. 52	Balanced
Hoss Mk.51	Precise
LOCK_WRETE	Lightweight
Lost High Fiver	Precise
Merciless	Balanced
Mos Ganon V	Lightweight
NFT*_BISCUIT	Balanced
Painted Big Chief Mk. 45	Powerful
Red Hand IX	Balanced
Regulator Mk. 56	Powerful
Renegade Mk.55	Precise
Silvered Maverick Mk. 41	Balanced
Sir Isaac	Precise
The Chance	Balanced
The Dust You Know	Balanced
Venation III	Balanced

Bad Seed Dawn	Balanced
Baryon MSc	Precise
Black SUROS SHM-42	Rapid
Caliena MSc	Rapid
Cold Comfort	Lightweight
Corona MSc	Stable
Crackerjack.beta	Precise
Dead Ait SIP3	Stable
Eono 33	Stable
Fair and Square	Marksman
Hothire	Lightweight
Lump Distribution	Lightweight
Painted SUROS BZL-45	Precise
Payment IV	Balanced
Primed Starfall MSc	Balanced
Silvered Centinuum MSc	Balanced
Strange Suspect	Balanced
Super Pew VLD	Marksman
SUROS .PR5-55	Rapid
The Conduit	Lightweight

A-1F104.RyI	Marksman
Acheron SR5	Precise
Bronzed Yamadoki SR4	Precise
Caelum	Precise
Crusader I	Precise
Crypt Dweller SR1	Lightweight
Cryptic Dragon	Balanced
Foresight 3	Precise
Gladius 77	Balanced
Naraka SR5	Balanced
Primed Yamadoki S4	Balanced
Proxima Centauri II	Marksman
Pulsar V.Arce	Lightweight
Rainmaster V4	Balanced
Thanatos SR5	Precise
The Aries Nemesis 64	Marksman
The Calling	Precise
Vesta Noblesse	Precise
Wyndor X9	Precise
Xbalba SR5	Rapid

Special Archetypes (alphabetical)

77 Wizard	Powerful
Andromeda	Powerful
Angelic Acid	Lightweight
Dämmerung P55	Lightweight
Final Rest II	Balanced
Futile Gesture	Precise
Helios FR5	Rapid
LIGHTBreeze	Balanced
Nox Caritor V	Balanced
Nox Fury V	Powerful
Painted Helios FR4	Rapid
Primed Nox Rexus IV	Powerful
Prism Schism	Lightweight
Purifier VX	Precise
Silvered Eos FR4	Rapid
Spike FR5	Rapid
Spindenil 3AA	Powerful
Tecteun Force	Balanced
The Calming	Rapid

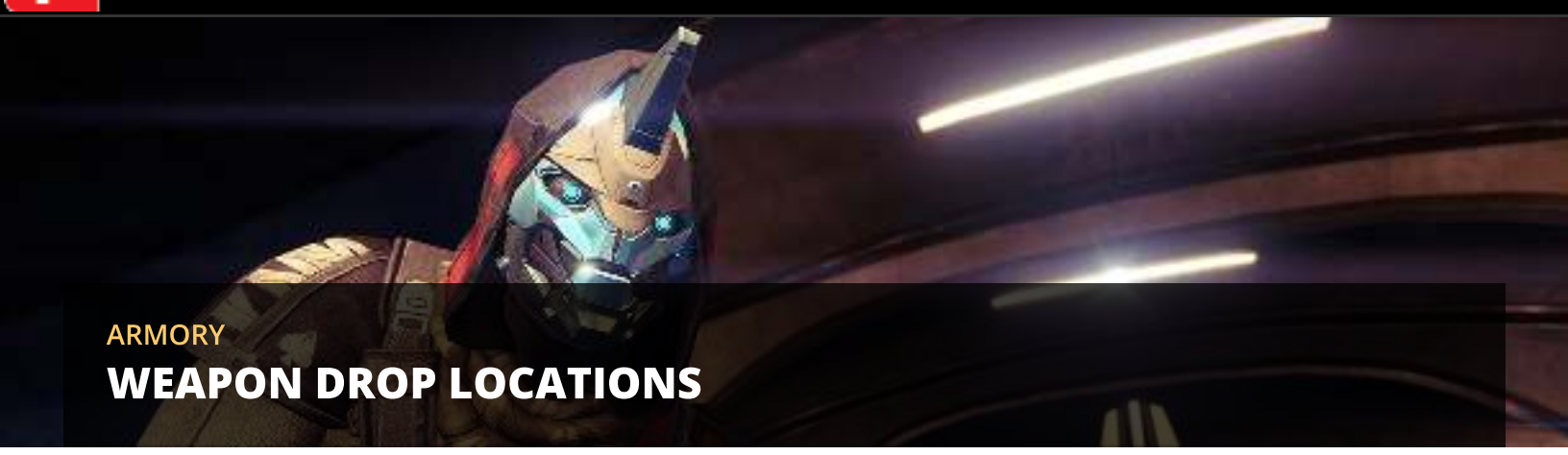
Agnus III	Powerful
Black Chaenia Exc	Lightweight
Chaenia Exc	Lightweight
Double Nickel	Balanced
Her Eyes	Precise
Hide and Seek-42	Balanced
Impulse Exc	Balanced
Invisible Hand M7	Lightweight
Judgment VI	Precise
LOCKJAW	Precise
Sagitta	Lightweight
Sidewinder Mk.53	Precise
SUROS MK9-51	Balanced
The Comedian	Balanced
The Crash	Balanced
Two for the Road	Powerful
Vector Exc	Lightweight

Allowance VCX	Precise
Amina-E7	Precise
Ardiant-81	Precise
Avenue A	Balanced
Broken Truth.LR1	Balanced
Caracara.LR5	Precise
Doom Echo XI	Precise
Epitaph 2261	Balanced
FINAL BOSS	Precise
Heracon.LR5	Precise
Painted Sankumanati-C	Precise
Parapet.LR5	Lightweight
Prudence II	Lightweight
Segon.LR5	Lightweight
Sojon-E	Marksman
Silvered Boudicca-D	Marksman
Silvered Caracara.LR4	Precise
The Chosen	Precise
The Majestic	Balanced
Tomyris-E2	Marksman
Vulpecula	Precise

Heavy Archetypes (alphabetical)

BFF 2.0	Powerful
Dentist Gravity-A	Stable
Formerly Penitent	Rapid
Genghis-E	Rapid
Genghis-E	Rapid
Hannibal-E	Balanced
Hondoghuis	Precise
Painted Artemisa-D	Precise
Prestige IV	Rapid
Red River Mk. 40	Precise
Spirit of Alliance	Balanced
SunbJohnnie-3	Powerful
Tomentane-E1	Precise
The Culling	Rapid
THE SWARM	Stable
Wolves' Bane	Powerful
Xenses-E	Powerful
Xenses-E1	Powerful
Zombie Apocalypse WF47	Precise

Admiralner III	Heavy
Afterthestar C/L-A	Precise
Bishop R5/3	Precise
Chamberlain SA/5	Balanced
Despot SA/5	Rapid
Disruptor 5000	Balanced
Duchess R5/5	Precise
Exodus Plan R5/1	Precise
Happy Boomer	Rapid
Herald SA/5	Powerful
Lacerta	Powerful
Overlord SA/5	Balanced
Painted Carnevil 84v9	Heavy
Primed Khan R5/4	Heavy
Steel Oracle Z-11	Heavy
Sultan SA/5	Powerful
The Cure	Precise
The Dreamseeker	Powerful
Unfriendly Giant	Balanced
Whisper C/L-A	Heavy



ARMORY

WEAPON DROP LOCATIONS

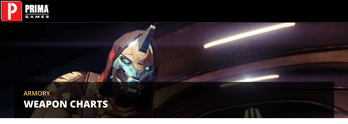
This set of tables is a quick summary of where you can find certain weapons in the game. Keep in mind that you can find many of these weapons in Engrams, if you're lucky!

Important! Drop Locations

Legendary Crucible vendor items can drop in PvP, and Vanguard vendor items can drop in Strikes.

Engrams can potentially contain any Legendary item. Similarly, when you rank up and receive items from a factional vendor, you can earn items they sell. And remember, Engram contents are not 100% guaranteed—you might find a Legendary item in a Rare Engram.

Vendor	Rarity	Weapon	Archetype	Name	Description
Crucible Quartermaster	Legendary	Auto Rifle	Precise	Grim Citizen III	The grief and horror of Twilight Gap drove some of the finest gunsmiths in the City to elevate their art.
Crucible Quartermaster	Legendary	Auto Rifle	Rapid	Hex Caster ARC	The engine of devastation slumbers within, waiting for a worthy finger on the trigger.
Crucible Quartermaster	Legendary	Hand Cannon	Precise	Lord High Fixer	The Lord will hold court today.
Crucible Quartermaster	Legendary	Pulse Rifle	Marksman	Fair and Square	A formidable burst-fire precision rifle, custom-rigged for Crucible combat. Scrupulously devoted to fair play.
Crucible Quartermaster	Legendary	Pulse Rifle	Balanced	Strange Suspect	Certainly not one of the usual suspects.
Crucible Quartermaster	Legendary	Scout Rifle	Balanced	Cryptic Dragon	Those who doubt the existence of dragons are always the first devoured.
Crucible Quartermaster	Legendary	Scout Rifle	Marksman	The Aries Nemesis X4	Killing's never just business; you have to make it personal. Keep the hate close.
Crucible Quartermaster	Legendary	Fusion Rifle	Powerful	77 Wizard	The Exo called Gaunt is a gunsmith famous for his Wizards.
Crucible Quartermaster	Legendary	Shotgun	Lightweight	Invisible Hand M7	Built so light, it sometimes feels like it's not even there.
Crucible Quartermaster	Legendary	Sniper Rifle	Precise	FINAL BOSS	Become the monster.



ARMORY

WEAPON CHARTS

The following charts covering all of the weapons in Destiny are designed to aid you in making decisions: which weapon you should buy with limited currency, which mods you should seek out, and which sights, barrels, and stat mods you should equip. You can acquire all of this information and more through a combination of playing the game and examining the charts contained here.

And remember that ultimately, while it is very useful to be able to compare the stats of weapons and see how they stack up to one another, what really matters is how good a weapon feels in your hands while you're playing Destiny.

Use this information to inform your decisions about purchasing new weapons and hunting for the ever elusive perfect gun, but don't let it blind you into assuming that a single superior stat always means a better gun. Tradeoffs is the name of the game, maximizing whichever stats matter most to you and minimizing the ones that affect you less.

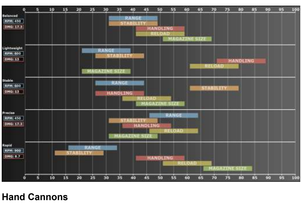
Weapon Archetype Stat Charts

The following charts show the relative stats of every weapon archetype in the game. This allows you to compare multiple stats between the different archetypes at a glance so you can see what makes up a weapon's "personality."

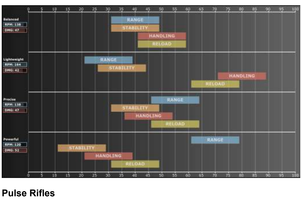
Don't forget that rate of fire, damage, and recoil all play a very important part in affecting the feel of a weapon. Likewise, mods can have a huge effect on the stats of a weapon. The mod stat charts below will outline some of those changes and show you what the stats translate to in-game, rather than displaying relative values.

PRIMARY WEAPONS

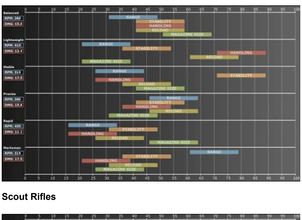
Auto Rifles



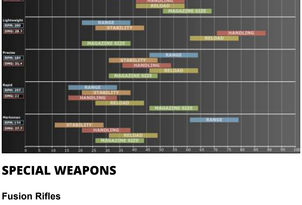
Hand Cannons



Pulse Rifles



Scout Rifles

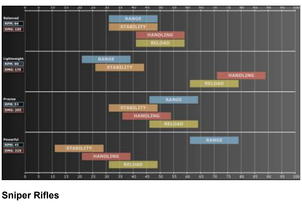


SPECIAL WEAPONS

Fusion Rifles

Fusion rifle damage varies based on the charge time of the weapon in question. A faster charge means less damage per burst, but more blasts over time. A slower charge gives you fewer, more powerful blasts.

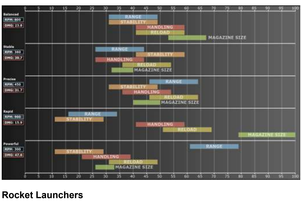
Shotguns



Sniper Rifles

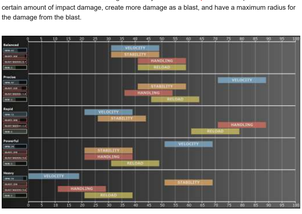
HEAVY WEAPONS

Machineguns



Rocket Launchers

Note that rocket launchers inflict damage differently than other weapons. Their explosions deal a certain amount of impact damage, create more damage as a blast, and have a maximum radius for the damage from the blast.



ARMORY

MOD STAT CHARTS

The following charts have been created to show you two things: first, the effect that Legendary stat mods can have on a weapon of any archetype, and second, what the stat ranges translate to in terms of actual in-game effects. Some weapons do not have permanent mods for specific stats, but there may be temporary stat effects that you can get from your Primary or Secondary Mod slots that do affect that stat.

Because you can tweak stat mods as you see fit, you can tinker with the overall attributes of your weapon, particularly when you combine the changes by modifying the sight or barrel on your weapon, as well.

Important! Mod Stat Charts

These charts show you the effects of the stat mods in the game, which are the always-active mods that can have a dramatic impact on a weapon's performance. Additionally, these show the base stats for Legendary-quality weapons. If you are using an Uncommon or Rare weapon, its stats will be lower, but still in the same proportions.

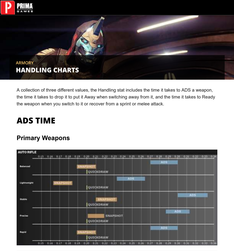
Remember that primary and secondary mods can affect various stats, but many of them have temporary or conditional effects to trigger their bonuses. To remind you of these effects, the possible primary and secondary mods that can impact the stat in question are listed directly below the charts.

All charts shown here reflect stat values and mods available on Legendary weapons. If your Uncommon or Rare weapon has the same mod, the effects are identical, but remember that your weapon's base stats will be lower than those of a Legendary.

Temporary Damage Mods

This is a short collection of mods that can impact your damage. Other than the very small permanent bonuses from barrels on shotguns and rocket launchers, there are no permanently active mods that give large damage bonuses. You have to work for them!

Name	Description
Reactive Reload	Reloading after a kill grants 33% bonus damage for three seconds.
Crowd Control	15% bonus damage for three seconds after scoring a kill.
Glass Half Full	Bottom half of magazine does more damage, scaling from 0% to 6% per shot.
Headseeker	25% bonus precision damage on third hit of a burst.
Final Round	33% bonus damage on last shot in magazine.
Luck in the Chamber	33% bonus damage on one round in the magazine.
Reactive Reload	Reloading after a kill grants 33% bonus damage for three seconds.



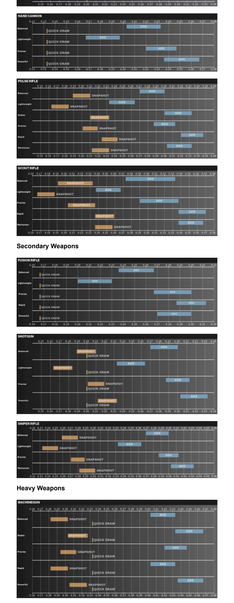
ARMORY

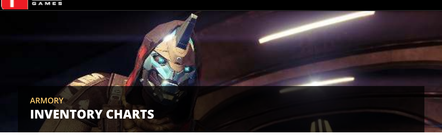
HANDLING CHARTS

A collection of three different values, the Handling stat includes the time it takes to AOS a weapon, the time it takes to drop it to put it Away when switching away from it, and the time it takes to Ready the weapon when you switch to it or recover from a sprint or melee attack.

ADS TIME

Primary Weapons


BOLT RIFLE
Hammer
Lightweight
Barrel
Pump
Tactical
Rapid
0.0 0.1 0.2 0.3 0.4 0.5 0.6 0.7 0.8 0.9 1.0 1.1 1.2 1.3 1.4 1.5 1.6 1.7 1.8 1.9 2.0 2.1 2.2 2.3 2.4 2.5 2.6 2.7 2.8 2.9 3.0 3.1 3.2 3.3 3.4 3.5 3.6 3.7 3.8 3.9 4.0 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 4.6 4.7 4.8 4.9 5.0
SHOTGUN
SNIPER
SHARPSHOOT
SCOPE IN/OUT
SCOPE SNEAK
SHOTGUN



ARMORY

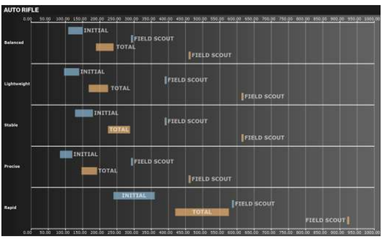
INVENTORY CHARTS

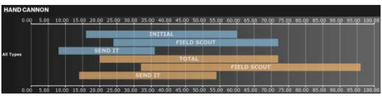
Double Down	Boosts ammo available when you spawn.
Performance Bonus	25% chance to grant bonus ammo into inventory on a kill.
Return to Sender	25% chance to add a round to your inventory ammo on a kill.
Surplus	Doubles amount of ammo gained from each ammo pickup.
Vacuum	Increase ammo pick-up radius.
Metal Detector	Increased chance for ammo drops.
Shoot to Loot	Shoot ammo to pick it up!
Tripod	Add an additional rocket to the rocket launcher magazine.

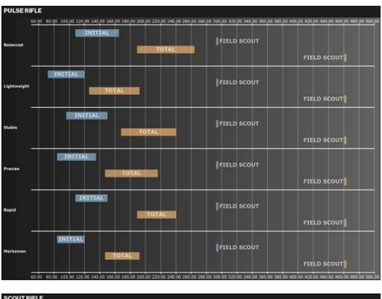
Initial ammo is your initial ammo load upon spawning during an activity. Total ammo is your maximum possible inventory ammo size. Heavy weapons do not spawn with any ammo initially.

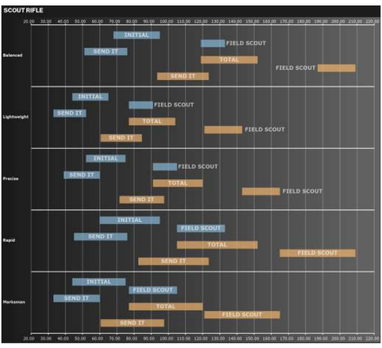
INVENTORY AMMO COUNT

Primary Weapons

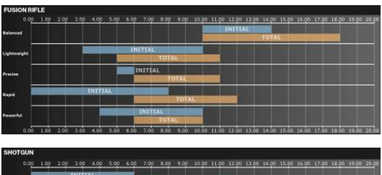


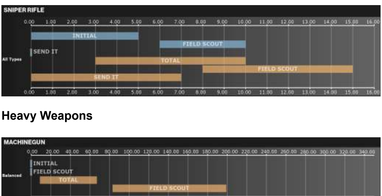




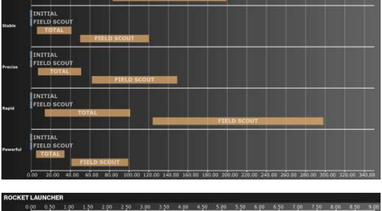


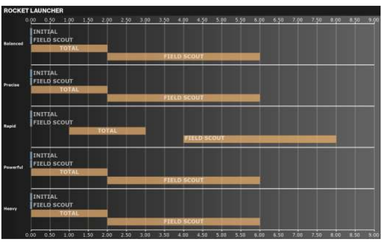
Secondary Weapons

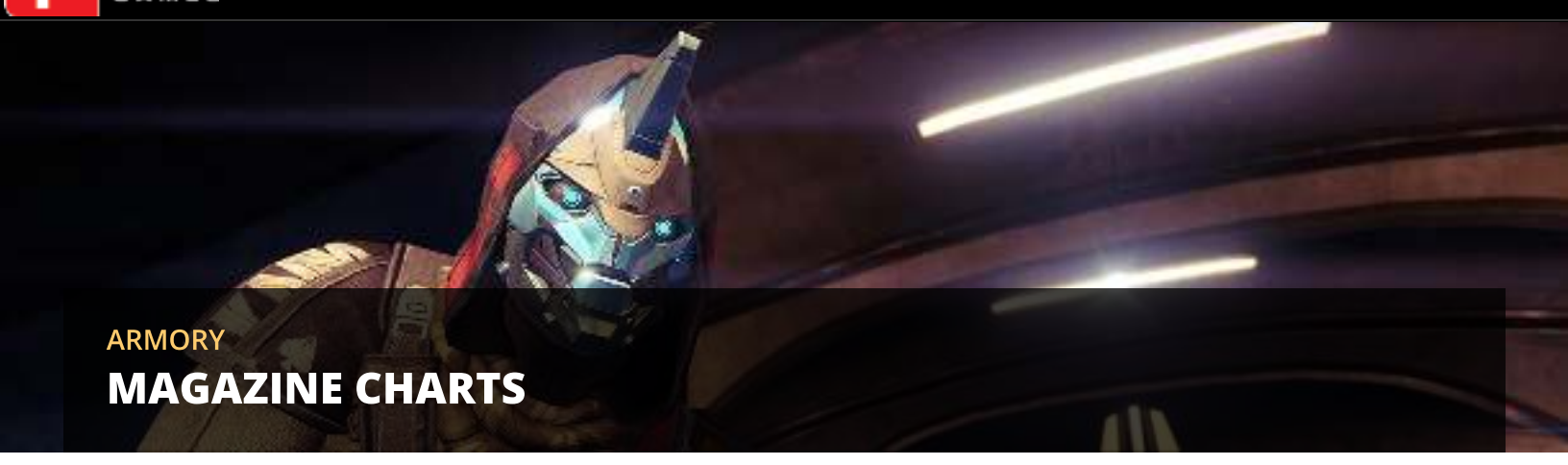




Heavy Weapons







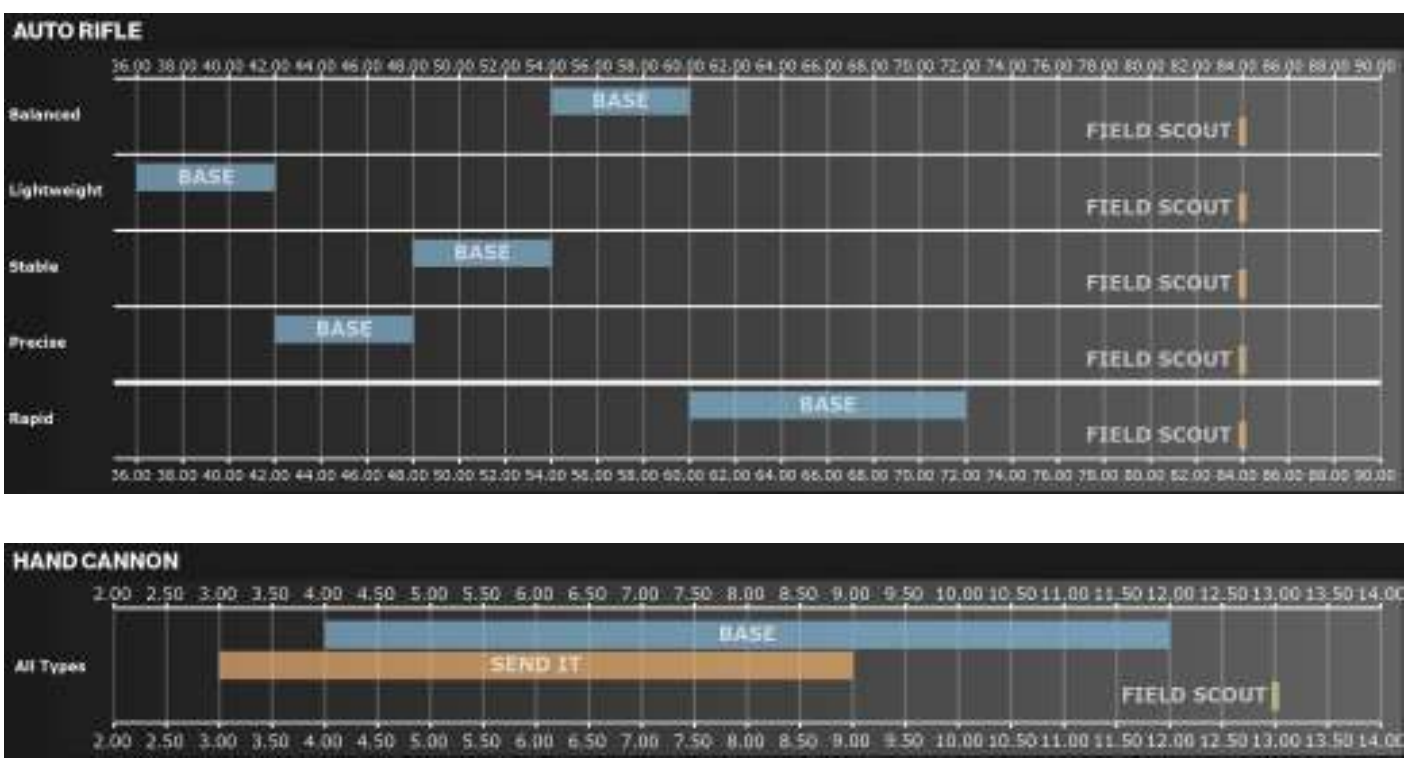
ARMORY

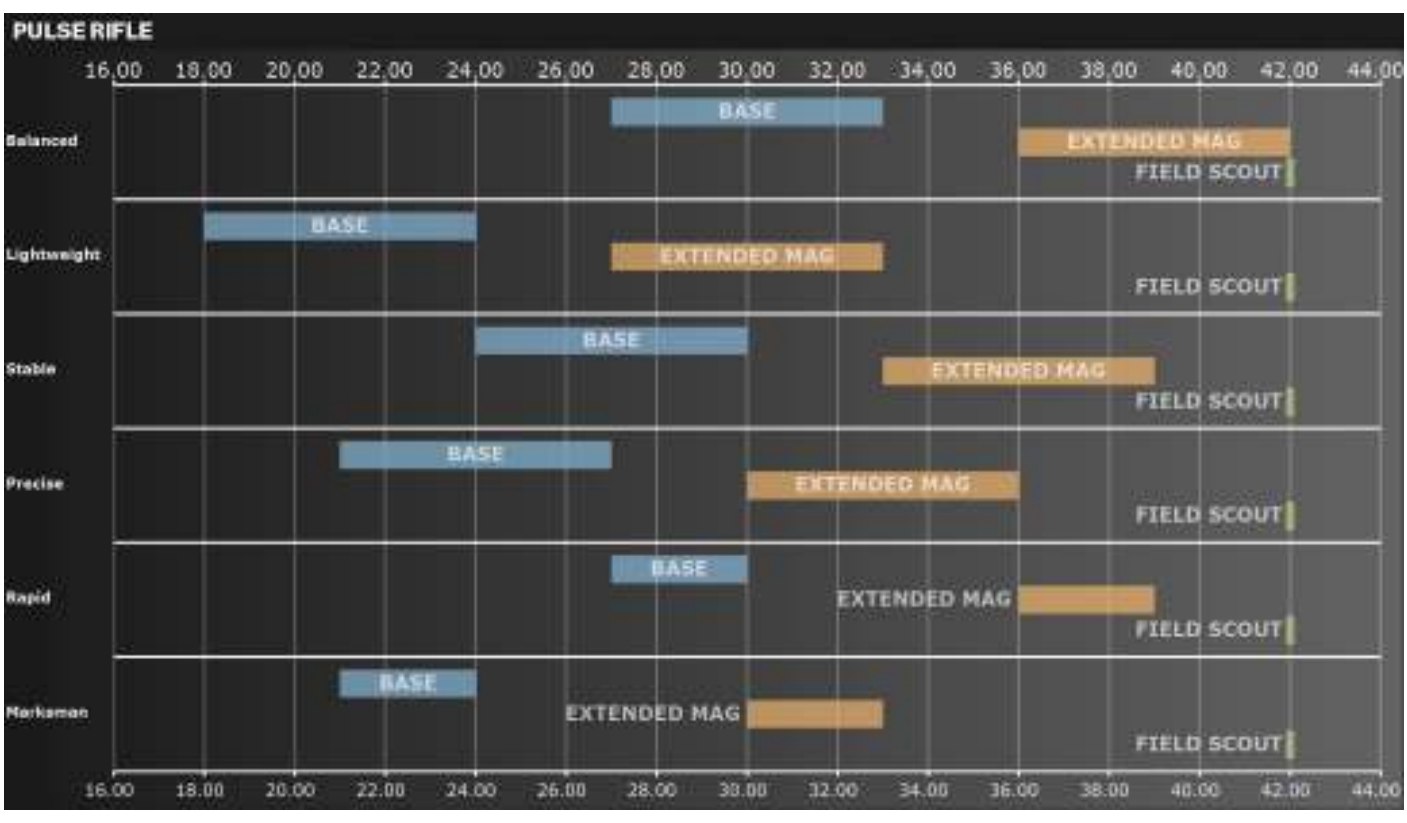
MAGAZINE CHARTS

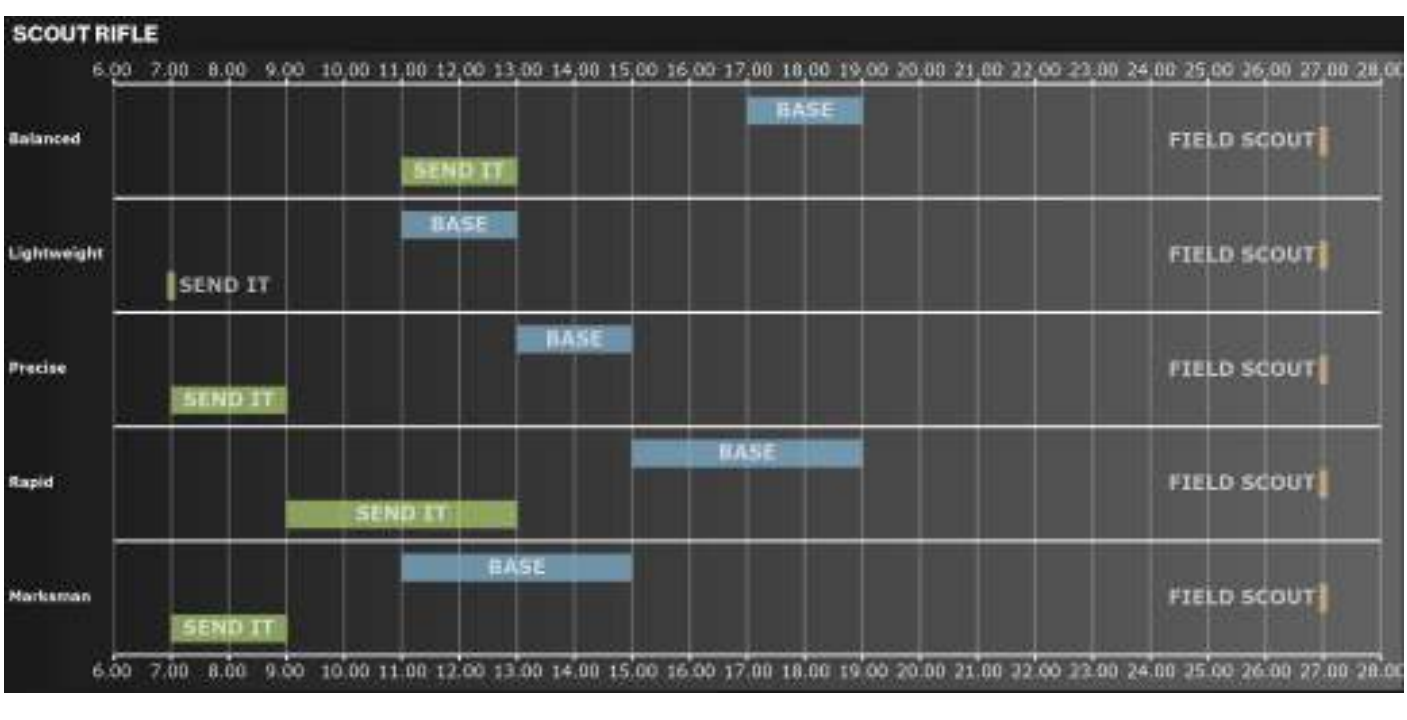
Name	Description
Mulligan	5% chance to reload a round into the magazine per shot
Life Support	Restore 50% of magazine and Reload 150% faster after a near death kill

MAGAZINE AMMO COUNT

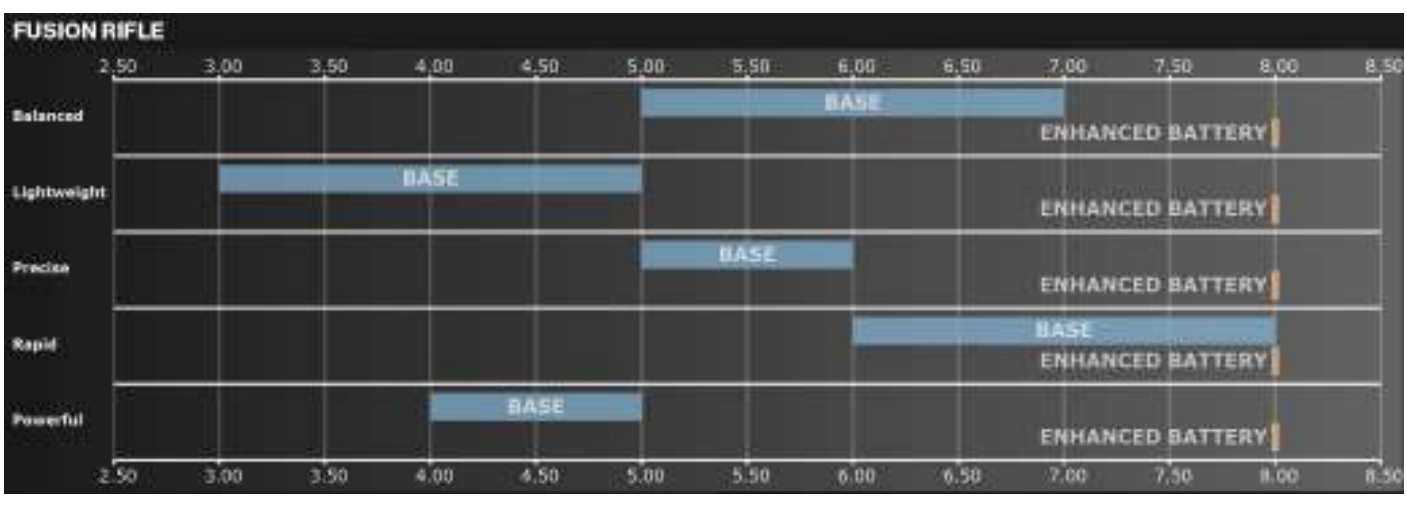
Primary Weapons

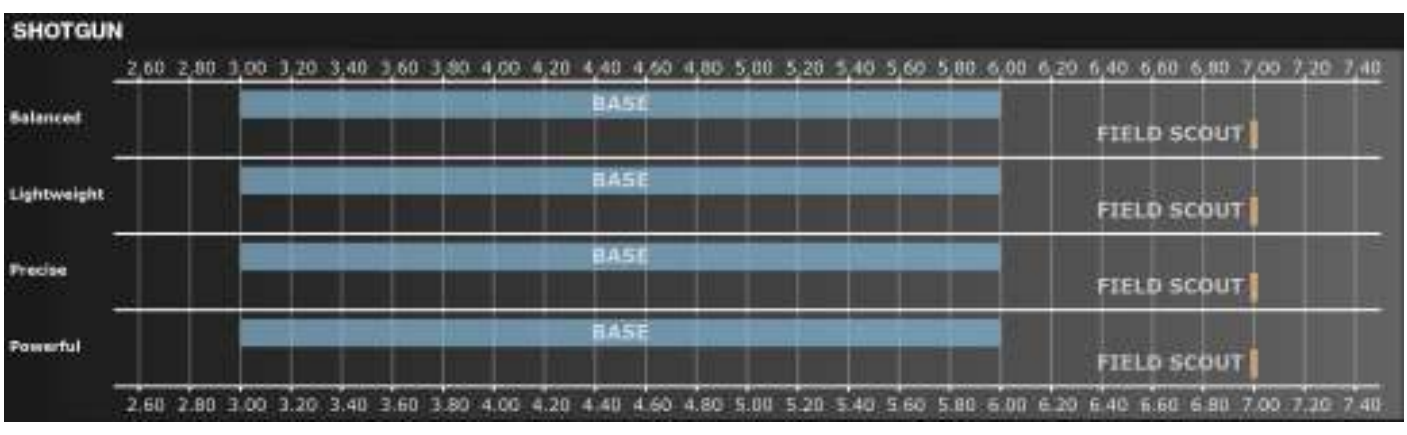


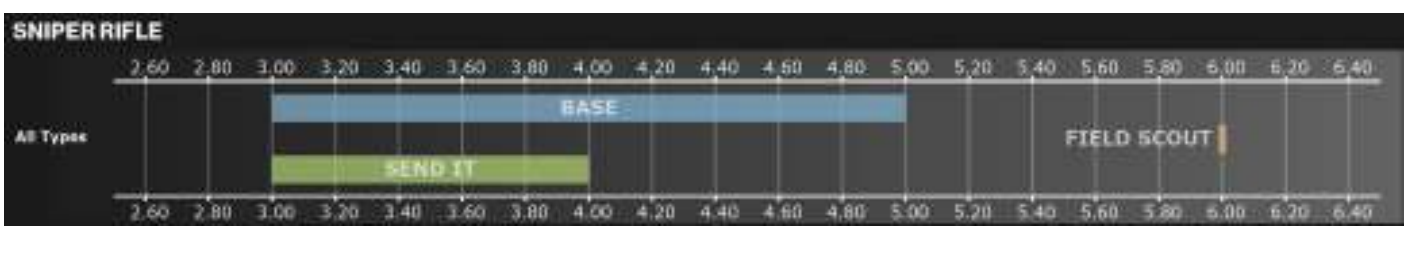




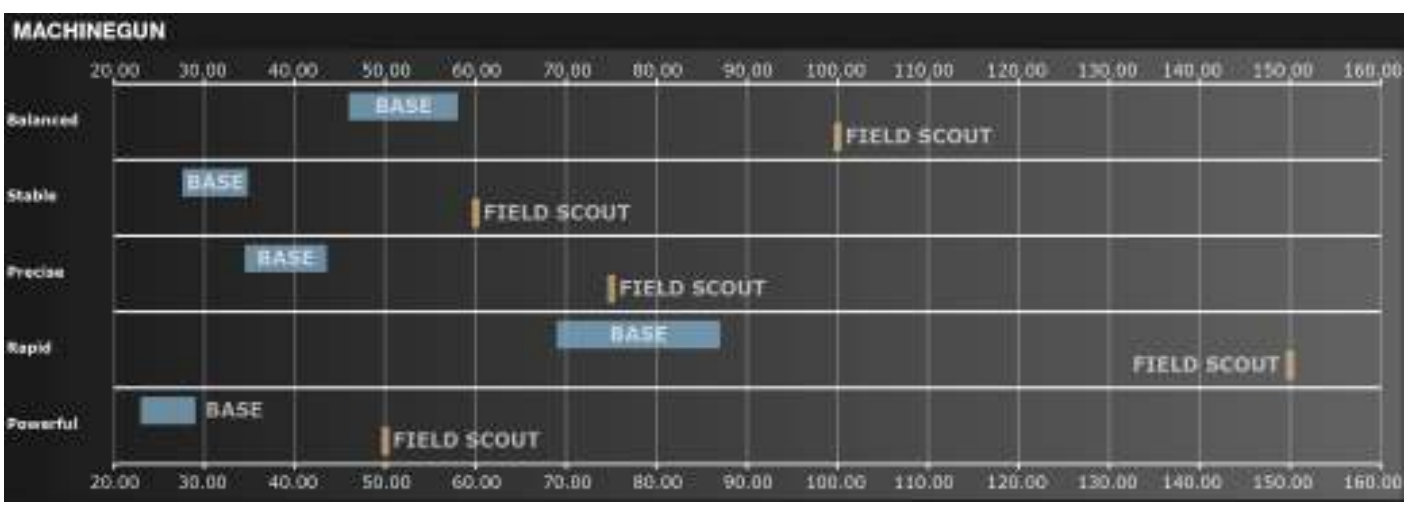
Secondary Weapons

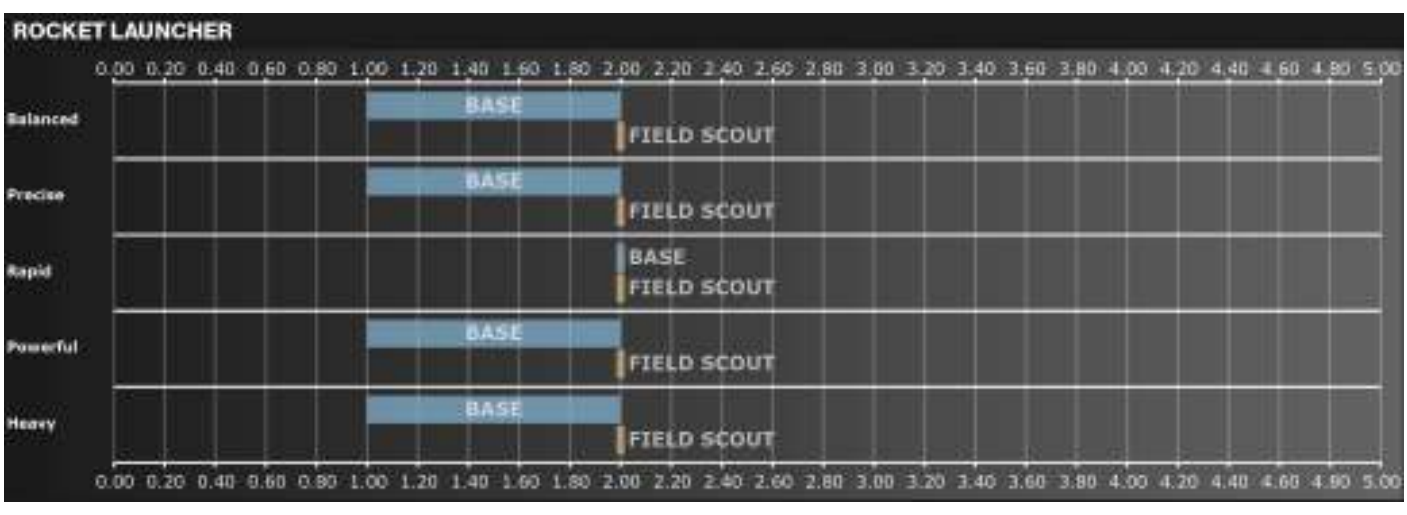


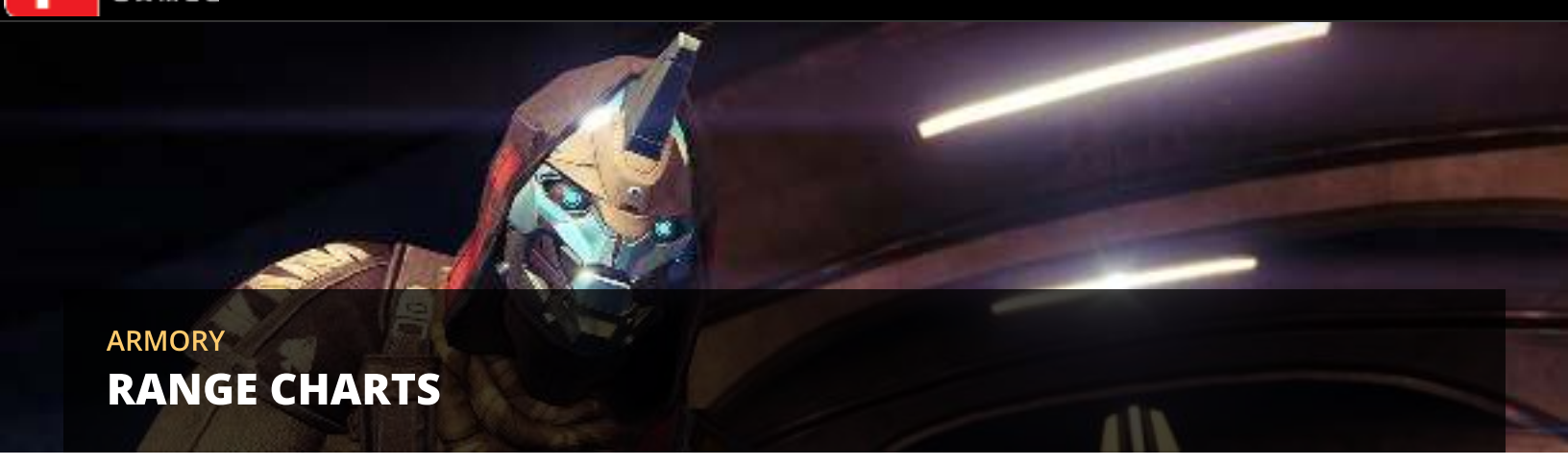




Heavy Weapons







ARMORY

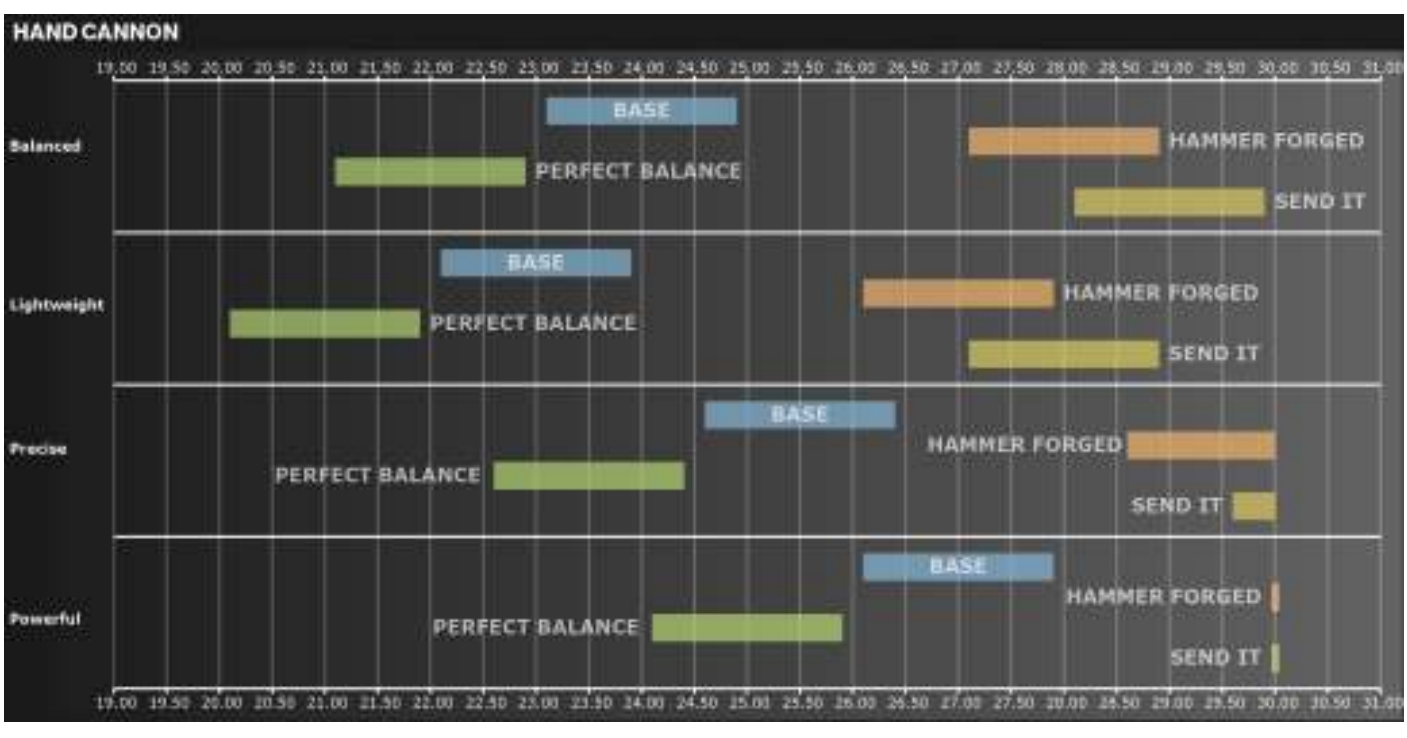
RANGE CHARTS

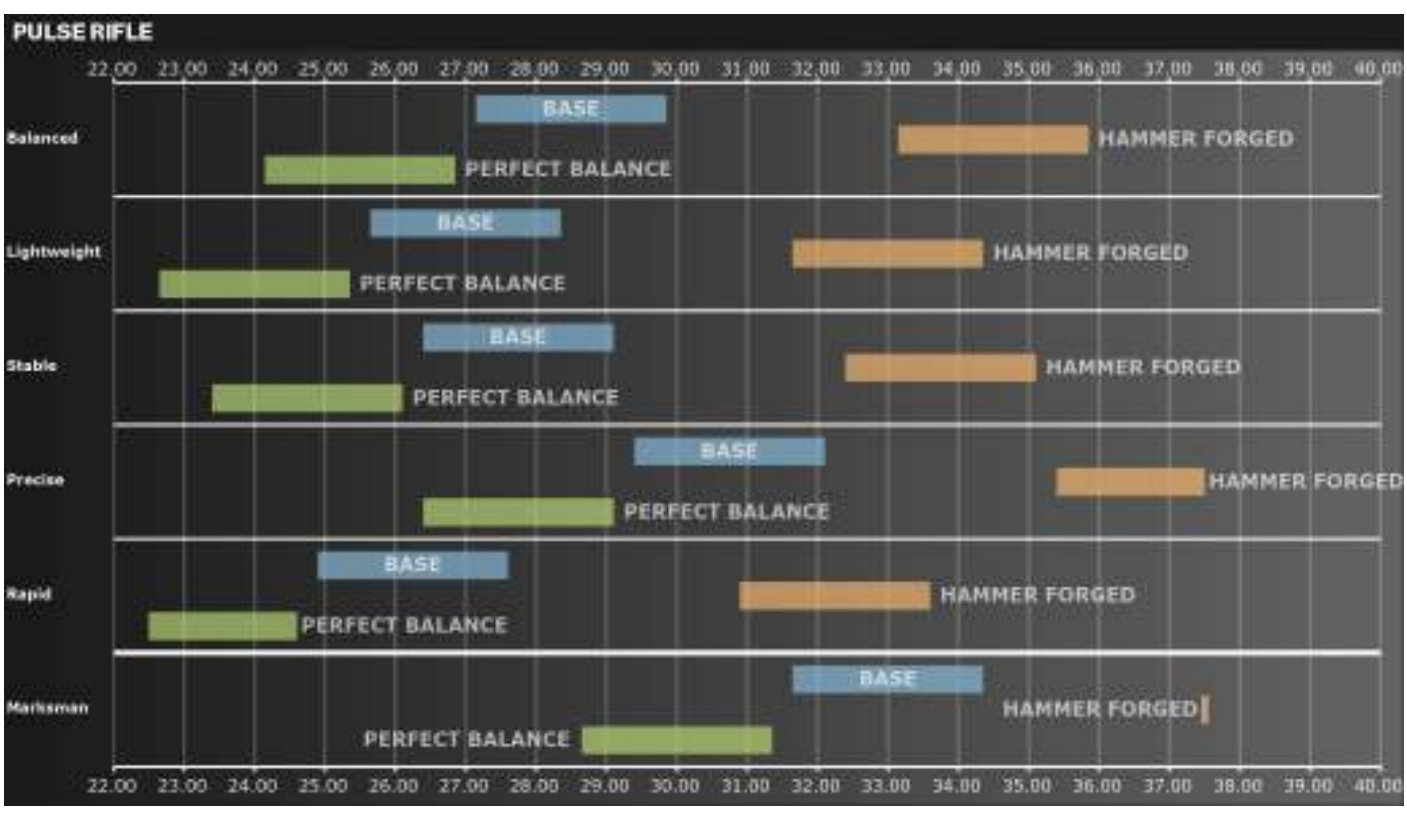
Name	Description
Rangefinder	10% bonus to Range, 20% bonus to damage falloff distance.

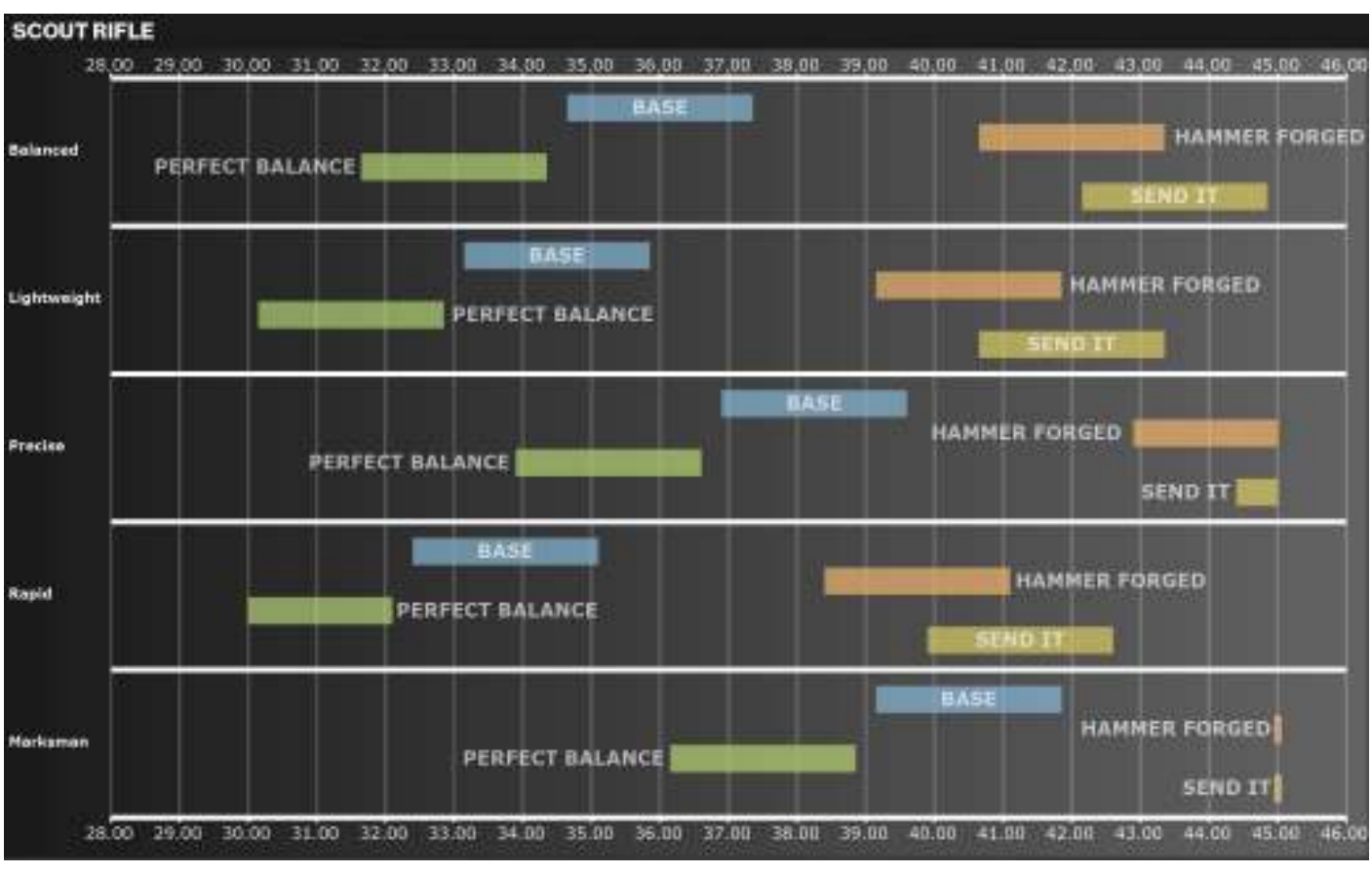
Note that sniper rifle ranges may seem low, but remember that they have 4x zoom scopes by default. Therefore, their base ranges are 4x these numbers while in ADS, not counting any scope or mods you equip that improve magnification. Just don't bother hipfiring at distant targets.

RANGE IN METERS

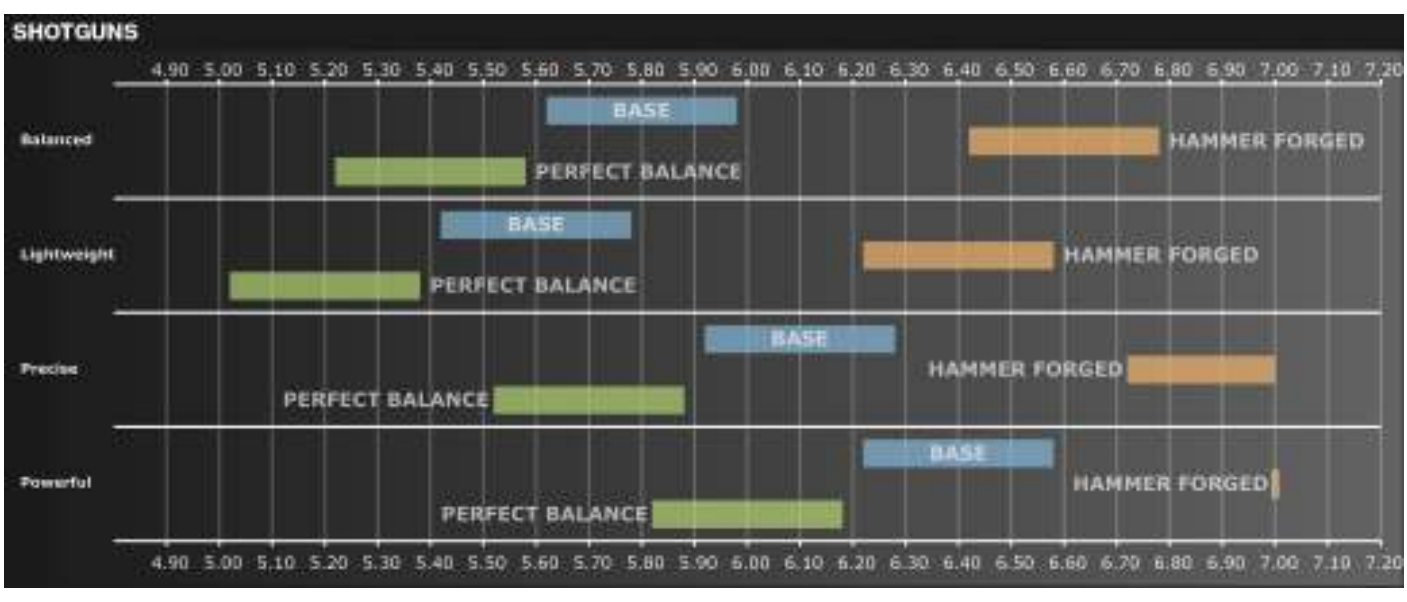
Primary Weapons

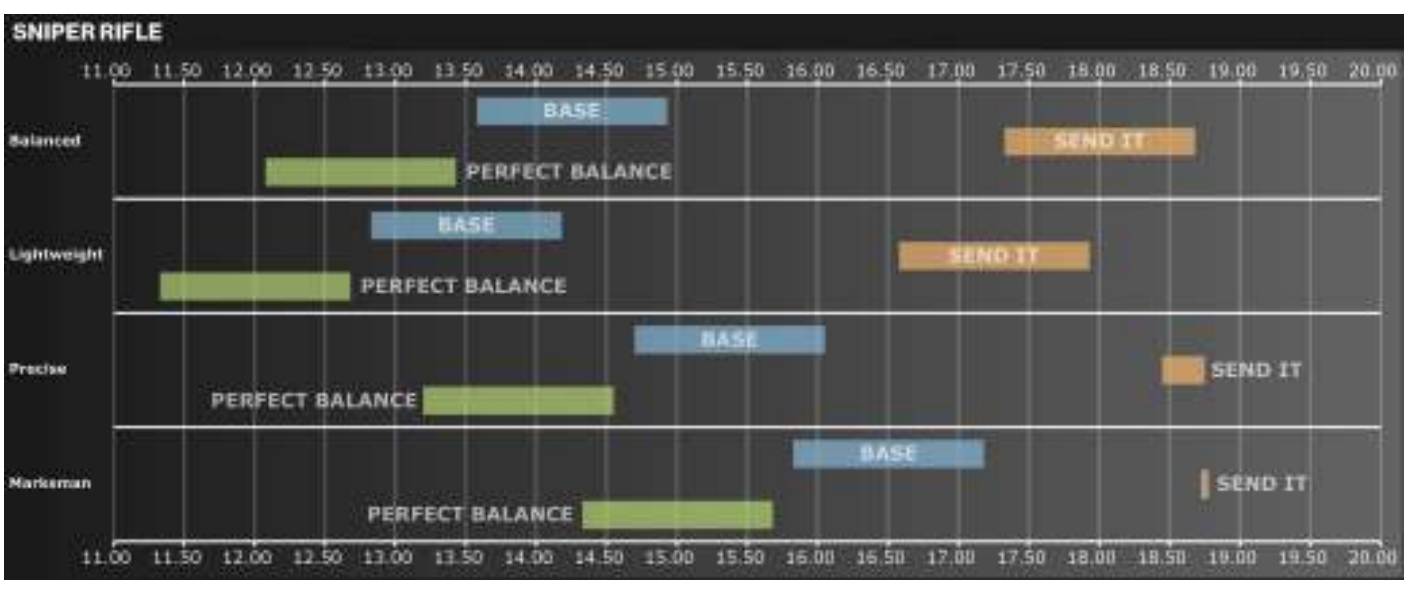




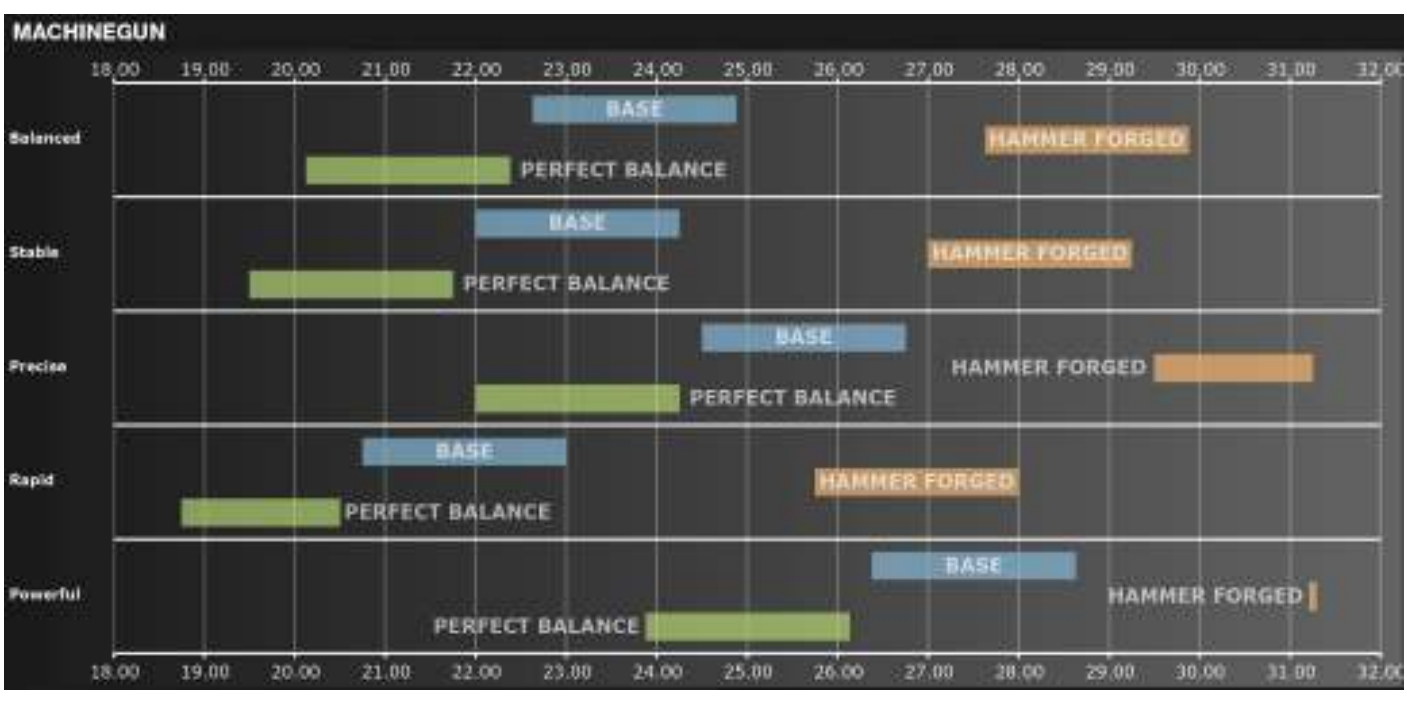


Secondary Weapons





Heavy Weapons



ARMORY

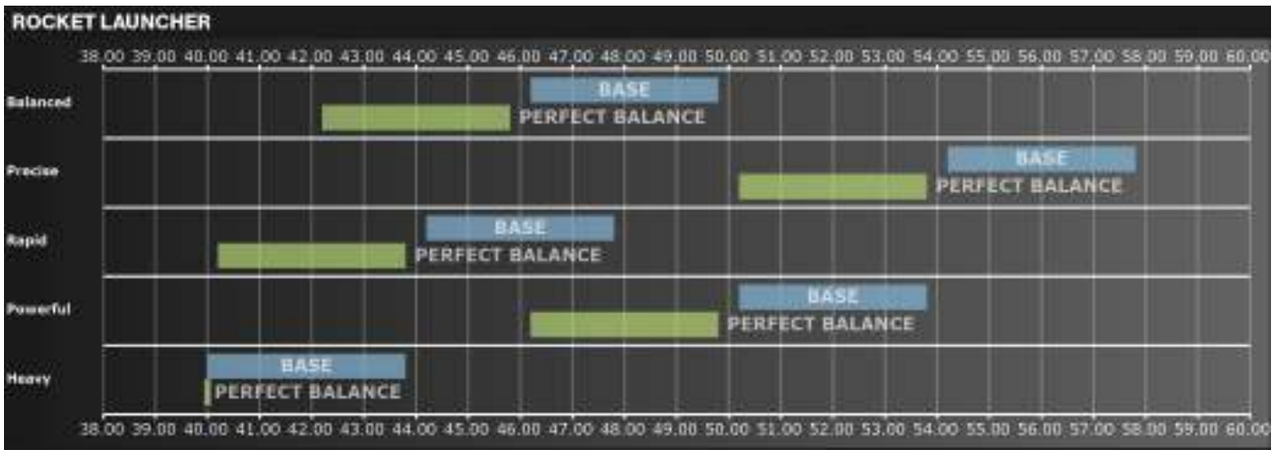
VELOCITY CHARTS

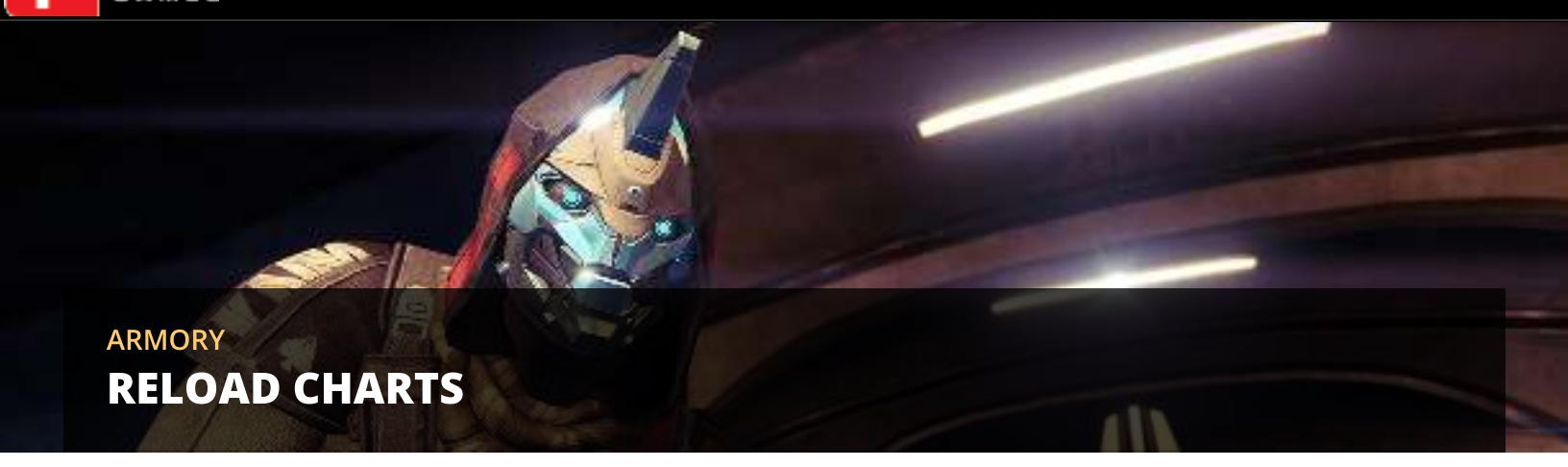
Fusion rifles and rocket launchers don't really have "range," per se. Fusion rifles suffer no damage falloff, though Range stats do affect their bloom reticle size, which is meaningful for hipfiring. Rocket launchers, obviously, fire rockets that don't care about distance.

These charts show the speeds at which fusion rifle blasts and rocket launcher rockets travel.

SPEED IN METERS/SECOND

Fusion and Rocket Speeds





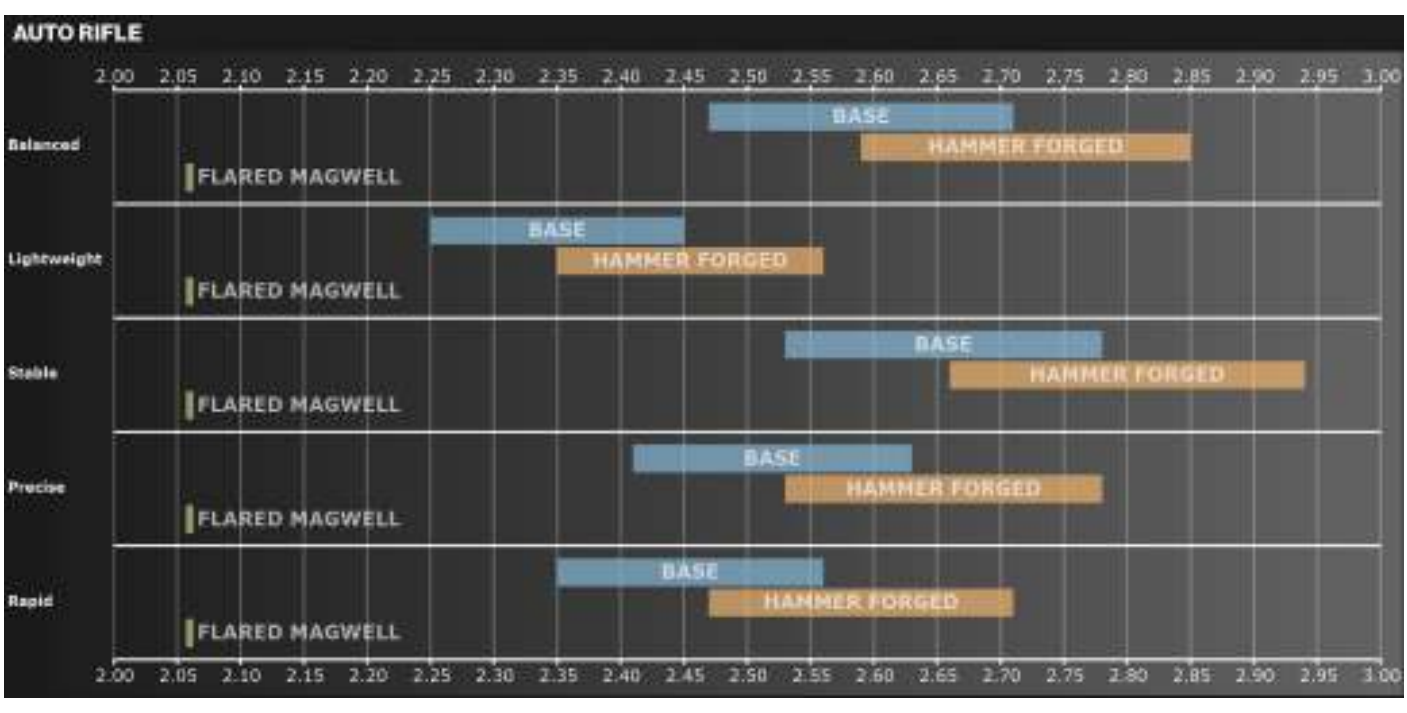
ARMORY

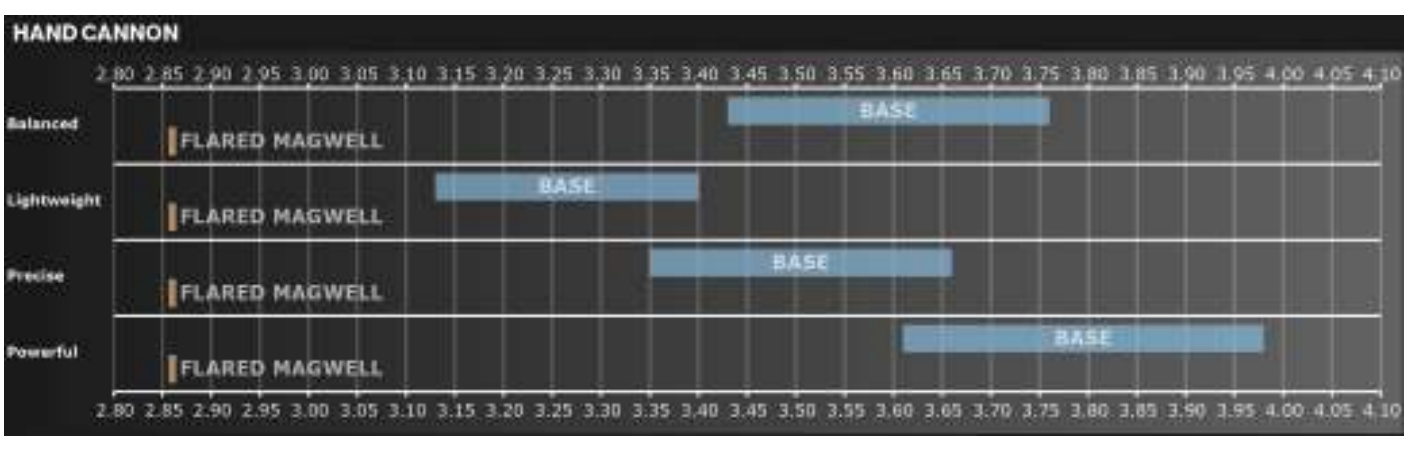
RELOAD CHARTS

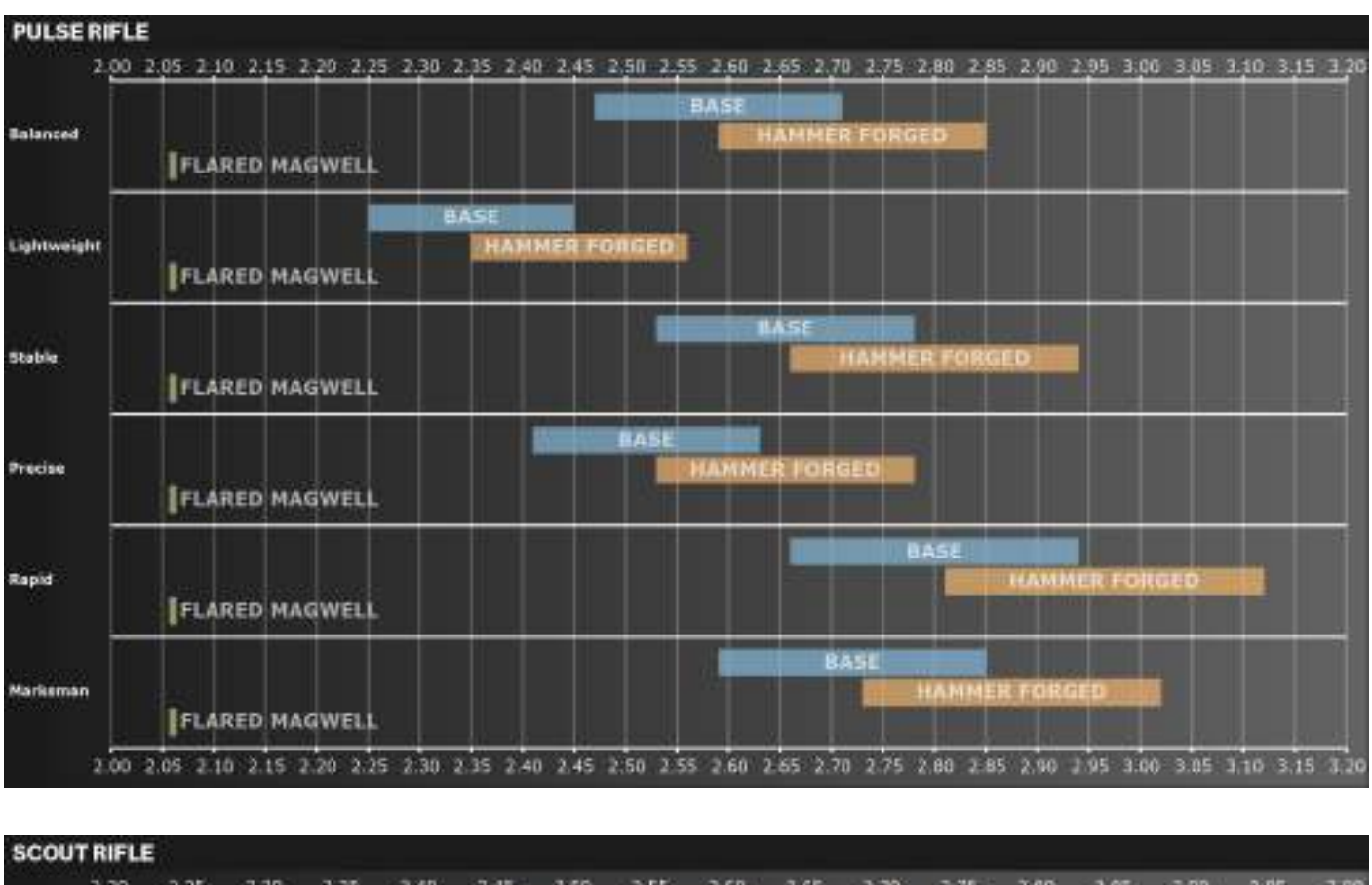
Name	Description
Cascade	150% reload speed after a melee kill.
Outlaw	150% reload speed after a precision kill.
Feeding Frenzy	120% reload speed after a kill.
Life Support	Restore 50% of magazine and reload 150% faster after a near-death kill.
Spray and Play	50% faster base reload when magazine is empty.
Who's Next	150% faster reloads after a kill.

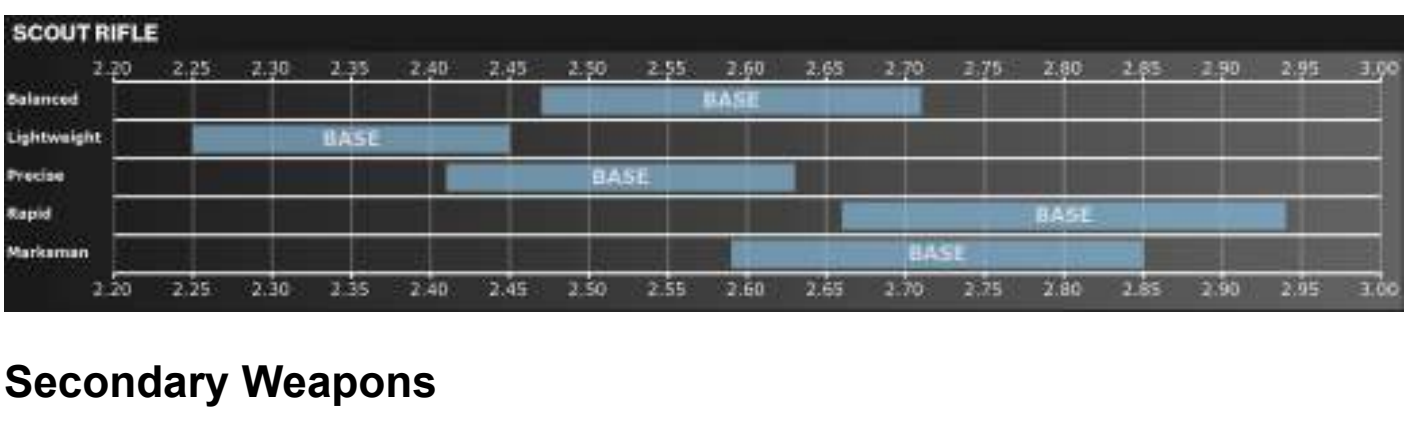
RELOAD TIME IN SECONDS

Primary Weapons

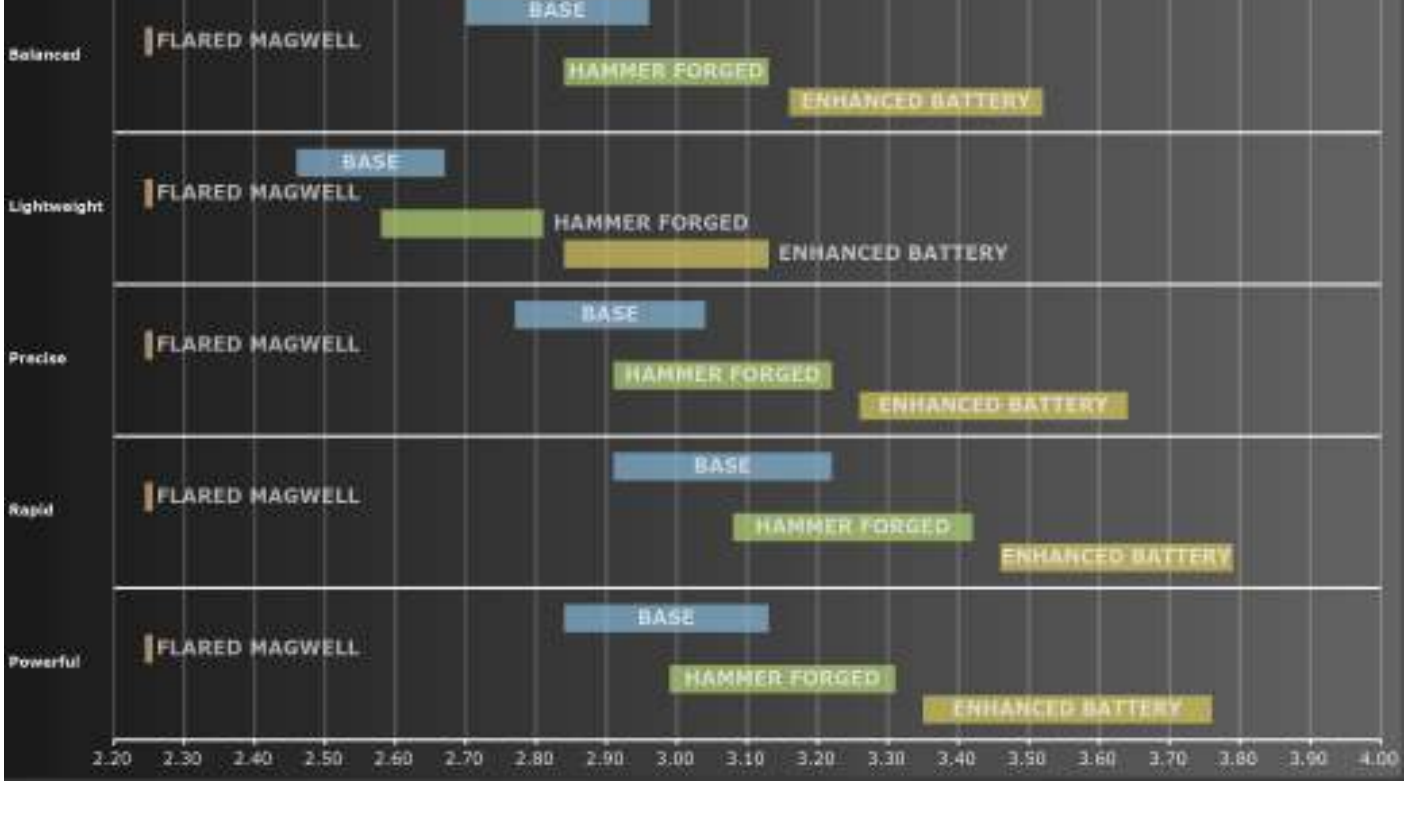


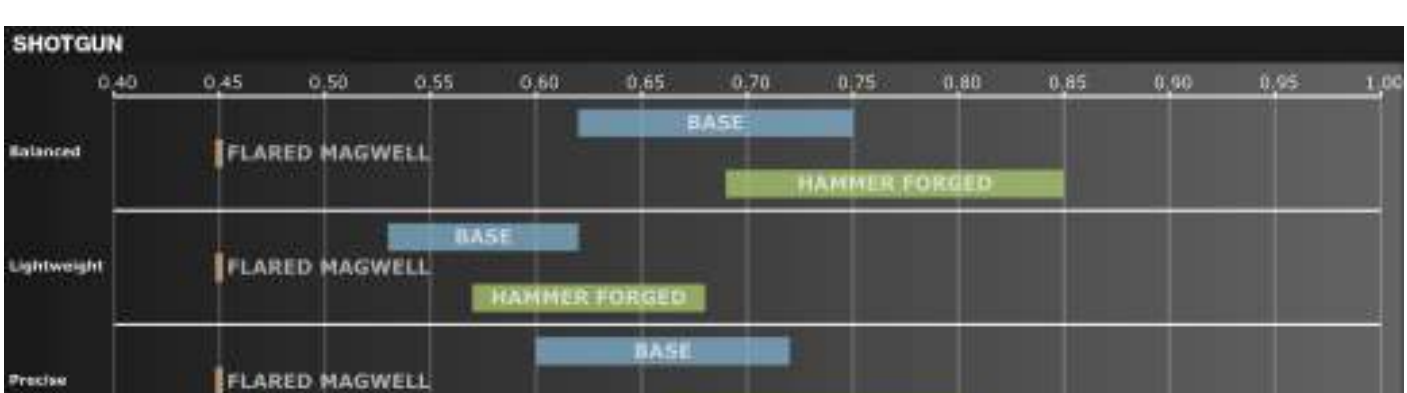




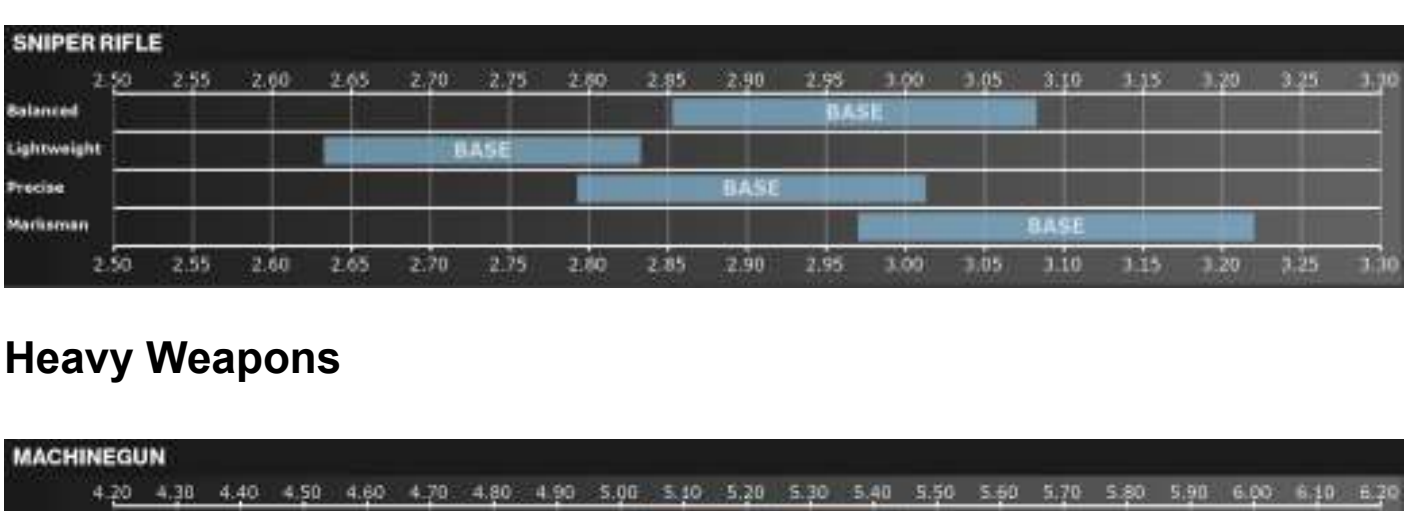


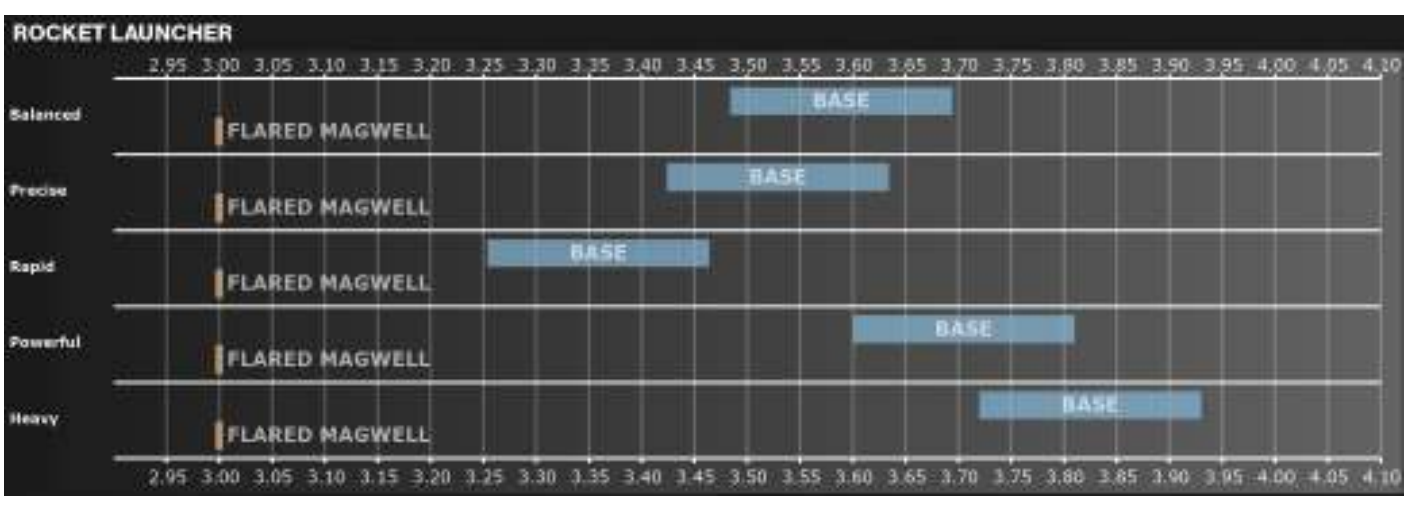
Secondary Weapons

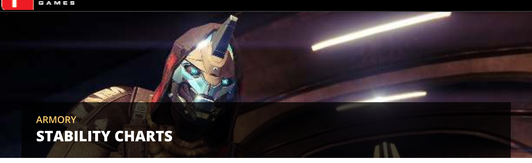




Heavy Weapons







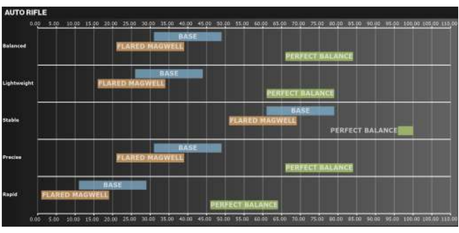
ARMORY

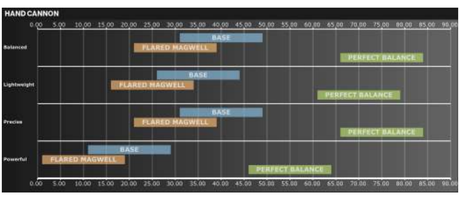
STABILITY CHARTS

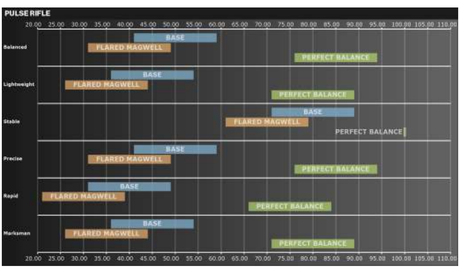
Persistence	Accuracy improves as you fire.
Zen Moment	Stability increased with each hit.

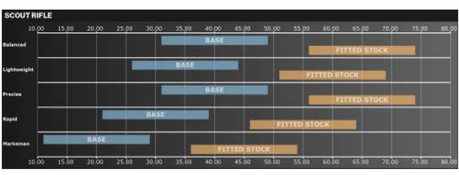
RELATIVE STABILITY VALUES

Primary Weapons

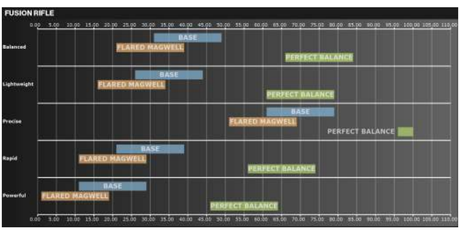


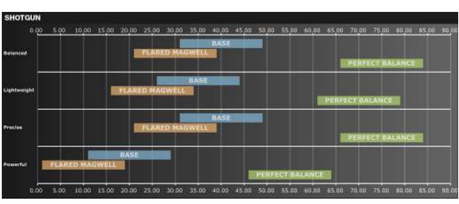


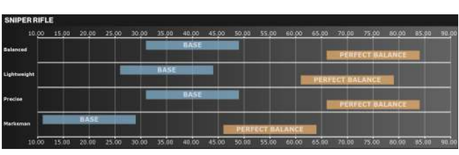




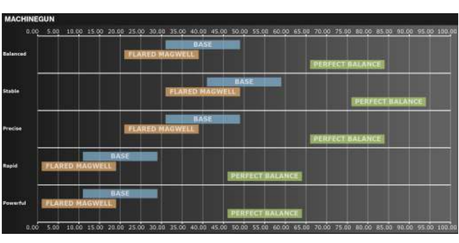
Secondary Weapons

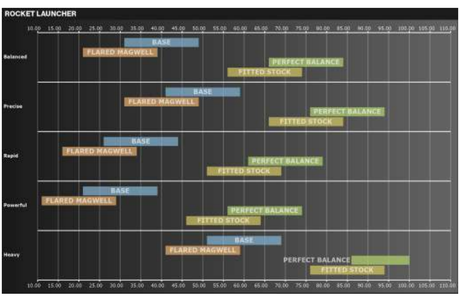


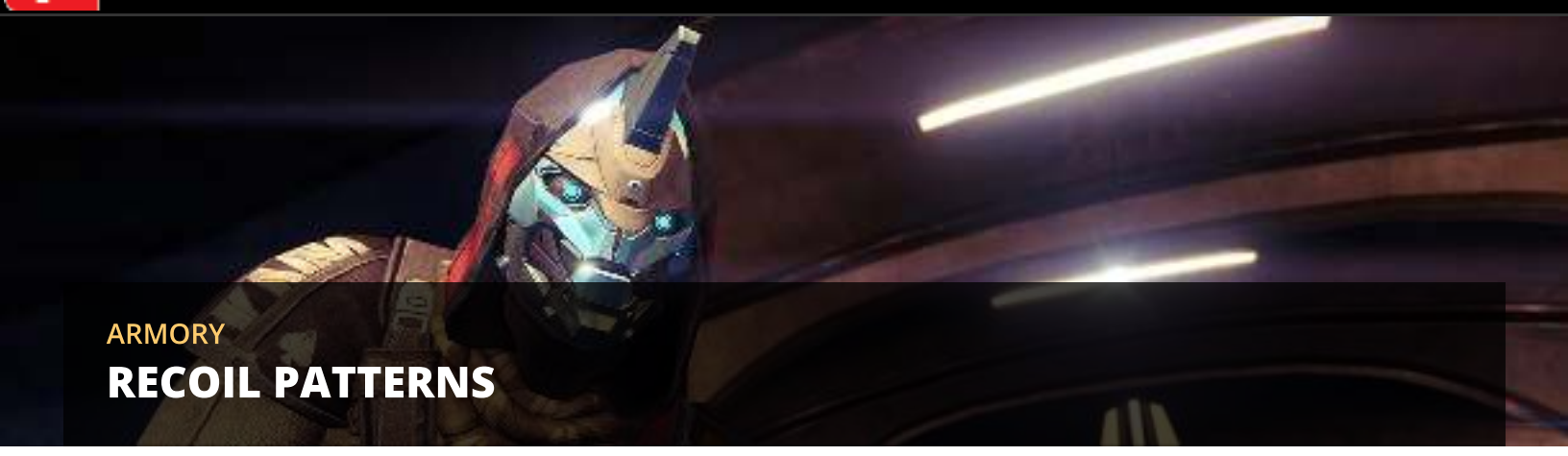




Heavy Weapons







ARMORY

RECOIL PATTERNS

These recoil patterns should give you a rough idea of the basic recoil intensity and direction for a given weapon. Weapons that have very wide patterns can kick out far to the left or right. Tighter vertical patterns are generally easier to handle.

Remember that improving Stability or moderating your rate of fire reduces overall recoil. There are a few mods that also have an effect on recoil or accuracy but don't explicitly modify Stability.

Name	Description
Counterbalance	Stabilizes recoil.
Hip Fire	Increased accuracy when hipfiring.
Unflinching	Heavily reduces Flinch.
Secret Round	Missing a shot in a burst grants a fourth round.
Take a Knee	Accuracy improves when firing crouched.

PRIMARY WEAPONS

Auto Rifles

Hand Cannons

Pulse Rifles

Pulse Rifle - Balanced
Pulse Rifle - Lightweight
Pulse Rifle - Marksman
Pulse Rifle - Precise
Pulse Rifle - Rapid
Pulse Rifle - Stable

Scout Rifles

Scout Rifle - Balanced
Scout Rifle - Lightweight
Scout Rifle - Marksman
Scout Rifle - Precise
Scout Rifle - Precise
Scout Rifle - Rapid

SECONDARY WEAPONS

Fusion Rifles

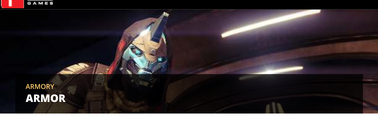
Shotguns

Sniper Rifles

Heavy Weapons

There are no recoil plots for rocket launchers, for obvious reasons!

Machineguns



ARMORY

ARMOR

In comparison to weapons, armor is considerably simpler, though it's no less important to your success! You have four types of armor in Destiny: helm, gauntlets, chest armor, and leg armor. You also have one cosmetic Class Armor slot.

Armor is Class-specific, and you almost always find armor for your Class in the wild. It is rare but possible to find an armor item for another Class. Don't worry: you can store it in your Vault and access it on that Class when you want to use it!

Armor has three basic effects. First, it provides your basic level of Defense, protecting you in PvE and PvP where Level Advantages are enabled. Armor also boosts your three Armor stats: Discipline, Intellect, and Strength. And finally, armor provides you with access to armor-only mods.

Armor mods can provide boosts to your melee, grenade, and super abilities, as well as a reload speed increase to one weapon type, inventory ammo bonuses, and add effects when you pick up an Orb of Light.

Once you reach Level 20, armor can boost your Light level, which is the only way to achieve an effective level higher than 20. Experience earned at 20 gains you Motes of Light whenever you would have normally gained a level instead. Raising your Light level is necessary for accessing activities that have level requirements beyond 20. Once you first hit Level 20, expect to spend some time hunting down Legendary gear to raise your Light level.

ARMOR STATS

Armor Stat Caps

The total stat bonus on your armor for any given stat is translated into a percentage bonus. This percentage bonus caps at 100%, though it is possible to go beyond 100% in total across the three stats (for example, a 50% bonus from Discipline, Intellect, and Strength, or a 100% bonus from one stat and 50% from another).

Exactly how high can you get? That depends entirely on the quality and level of your armor. While player levels cap at 20, there is more powerful gear to be found out there, and a full set of Legendary armor with an Exotic armor piece can get you quite a stat bump.

Armor stats are a simple numeric bonus, such as "+5 to Discipline" or "+30 to Discipline and Strength" on higher-level armor. However, what the number actually does for you depends on your level. At Level 5, 20 points of Strength can give you a bigger boost than at Level 10 or Level 15.

All stats are translated to a percentage boost to one of your recharge timers: grenades, melee, or super. To see this bonus in the game, move your cursor over the stat on your inventory screen. The takeaway here is pretty simple: to keep your bonuses strong (and growing), you must upgrade your gear as you level.

Armor can boost a single stat, or it may boost two. This gives you the option to focus your armor toward maximizing one recharge timer or splitting it between a few. Choose whichever option best suits your build and your personal preference.

Armor Stat Bonuses

Stat boosts on armor are clamped within a range for any given level of armor (very similar to the way weapon archetypes have stat ranges that define their minimum and maximum values). This means that you might find a piece of armor that can have a value between 5 and 8 at lower levels, or 40 and 50 at high levels.

The ranges are generally fairly small, so any piece of level-appropriate armor will boost your abilities to a point suitable for activities of that level. However, if you really want to maximize your power, you can most certainly hunt for "perfect" armor.

Discipline

Reduces grenade cooldown time.

A high Discipline value is helpful if you use grenades frequently, especially if your Class build is focused on grenade usage. Grenades are extremely useful in both PvE and PvP, making Discipline a safe choice if you aren't sure where to focus.

Intellect

Reduces super cooldown time.

Your super is a very powerful tool in more difficult PvE missions, and always in PvP. Whether you choose to boost your super recharge rate over your grenades or melee depends largely on how your Class spec is configured. Some supers, like a Void Titan's Ward of Dawn or a Warlock's Radiance, can be incredibly powerful support tools. Other supers, like a Hunter's Golden Gun or Arc Blade, can inflict lethal burst damage in PvP.

Strength

Reduces melee cooldown time.

For the brawlers among you, a high Strength score can give you access to extremely fast full-power melee strikes. This is very powerful in PvP for close-range combat. However, it is riskier in difficult PvE missions, as point-blank range is one of the least safe places to be.

Note that a Bladedancer Hunter has a mod that cuts her melee recharge time down to almost nothing. In that specific case, your points are generally better invested elsewhere for greater returns.

HUNTER ARMOR PROGRESSION

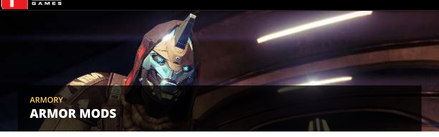
Your progression in Destiny is more than just numbers in the background, of course: you also get to flaunt your style.

TITAN ARMOR PROGRESSION

Your progression in Destiny is more than just numbers in the background, of course: you also get to flaunt your style.

WARLOCK ARMOR PROGRESSION

Your progression in Destiny is more than just numbers in the background, of course: you also get to flaunt your style.



ARMORY

ARMOR MODS

Chest armor and **leg armor** have boosted inventory ammo capacity, while **helmets** typically have grenade-boosting modifiers. Gauntlets always have a faster reload mod on them.

Less commonly, you may find mods that improve super charge times or interact with the Orbs of Light that friendly Guardians generate.

Unique Armor Mod Effects Do Not Stack

Just a warning: you can only have one of each different mod type, so if you find a reduced melee recovery piece, a second won't reduce your recovery time further. The same goes for a grenade throwing distance boost or a health from orbs bonus.

The two exceptions to this rule are ammo inventory bonuses and (potentially) reload speed. Reload speed can theoretically stack, but at the moment, you can only find it on one armor slot. Perhaps an Exotic piece down the line will remedy this!

Defense Boosts

All armor also gets access to upgrades that increase the basic Defense stat of the armor piece, similar to the Attack upgrades on weapons.

Grenades

INCREASED GRENADE THROW DISTANCE

A very useful mod in both PvE and PvP, this gives your grenades some extra velocity on the throw, which can significantly increase the distance you can throw them. Remember that grenades inherit your existing momentum, so sprinting and jumping can impart extra range if you're really going for a long bomb.

One quirk: if you do decide to use this mod, you may experience some discomfort switching between armor sets with or without it. Your grenades suddenly being thrown a different distance can completely ruin your aim until you adjust. In general, if you make heavy use of grenades and stack Discipline, this upgrade is just as important as the melee speed armor mod for melee lovers.

BONUS MELEE ENERGY ON GRENADE HIT

For grenade and melee lovers, this mod gives you 3% melee energy back every time you hit an enemy with a grenade. Note that this has an internal cooldown of six seconds, so you can't drop a lingering grenade on a pack of adversaries and instantly fill your melee bar!

This mod is generally a bit more useful in PvE than PvP simply because of enemy density. In most cases, throwing range is more relevant in PvP (though not universally true, like on smaller maps).

Melee

REDUCED MELEE RECOVERY TIME

A vital mod for melee lovers, this mod reduces the time it takes to recover from melee swings by 25%. This makes a huge difference in PvP, and it can also be helpful in PvE if you get swarmed at close range. Note that the recovery time only affects your ability to perform another melee attack; it does not help with getting your gun ready faster after a melee swing.

BONUS GRENADE ENERGY ON MELEE HIT

A flat bonus of 6% grenade energy for a melee hit, this is a nice upgrade for a Discipline/Strength split build or a pure Discipline build where you simply want the absolute fastest possible grenade recharge.

Orbs of Light

Orb armor mods grant you bonuses when you pick up a friendly Orb of Light. This applies to any Orb of Light anywhere in the game, be it PvE, PvP, in a public space with a random player, or in a private Strike area with your Fireteam.

Orb mods are most useful if one or more players in your Fireteam are running Intellect builds. An organized group that coordinates super usage can benefit greatly from using these mods in difficult missions. These mods are generally a bit less useful if you solo often or don't play with heavily coordinated groups. In those situations, you may find that you get more benefit from other armor upgrades.

HEALTH REGEN ON PICKUP

This mod gives you a small 10 health boost immediately and allows health regen to continue for 1.5 seconds even if you are taking damage. This is a very powerful mod with a coordinated team—you can turn idle orbs on the battlefield into emergency health restore pickups.

BONUS GRENADE ENERGY ON PICKUP

A flat 6% grenade energy boost for each orb you pick up. To get the most benefit from this mod, lob a grenade just before you dive into a pool of orbs.

BONUS MELEE ENERGY ON PICKUP

Identical to the grenade mod, this is a flat 6% melee energy boost for each orb you pick up. If you are purely melee-focused, you can add this to the grenade and melee mods to have the absolutely maximum possible number of melee boosts on your armor. Otherwise, consider using one of the other two orb mods, as they are typically more useful in a wider range of situations.

Super

GAIN SUPER ENERGY WHEN KILLING AI COMBATANTS

This boost gives you 5% more super energy on top of what you would normally get for killing any enemy during a mission. Note that this mod does not apply to opponents in PvP.

Keep a piece of this gear around for PvE, but swap it to the second grenade-specific super armor mod for PvP, or a different armor mod entirely.

GAIN SUPER ENERGY FOR KILLING ANY ENEMY WITH GRENADES

This mod gives 7% more super energy on top of the base bonus for killing any enemy with a grenade. If your build is grenade-focused, or (even better) if you've split between Discipline and Intellect, this is a perfect mod to add to your suite.

Weapon

FASTER RELOAD SPEED

+10 Reload.

Specific to gauntlets, this mod boosts your Reload stat with one class of weapon (typically a primary weapon on most armor). It is possible to find gauntlets that boost specific special or heavy weapons, or even ones that boost Reload for an entire weapon class rather than a specific weapon.

When configuring an entire armor and weapon loadout, keep an eye on the reload mods available for your weapons. You may or may not need the added bonus from your gauntlets, or you can shift it to a different weapon class.

BONUS INVENTORY AMMO

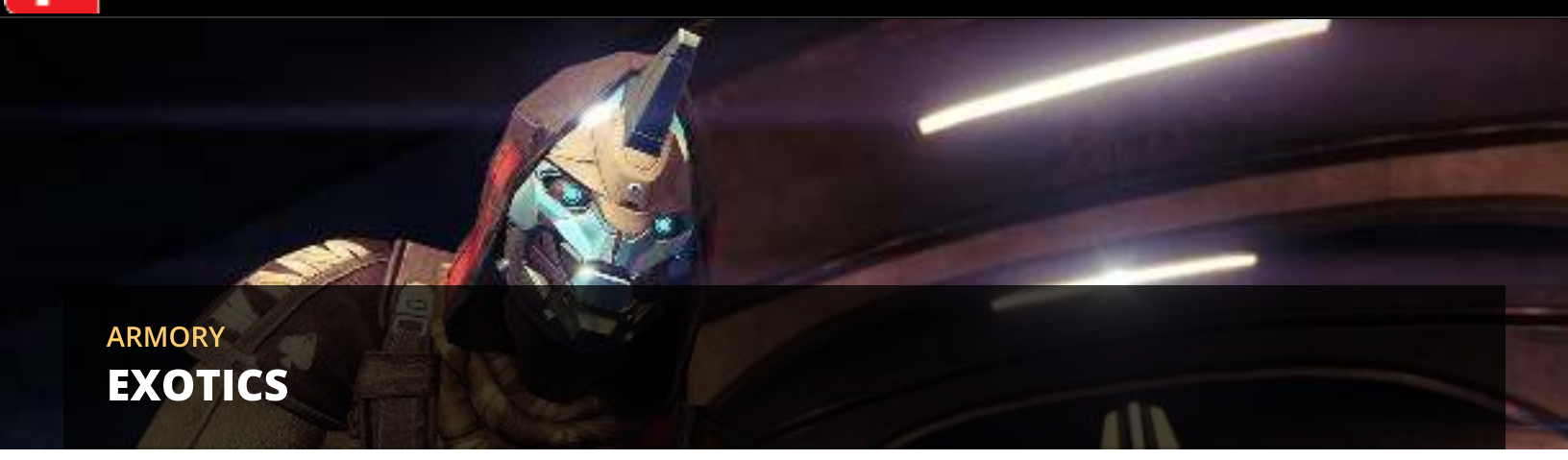
Found on chest armor and leg armor, these mods grant you more backpack ammunition, ideal for lengthy and difficult missions. Similar to reload armor mods, these bonuses come in a variety of forms. You can find bonus ammo for a specific weapon, or you can more rarely find mods that boost the ammo capacity for an entire weapon class.

The amount gained varies depending on the type of weapon. For example, you get more of a bonus to a primary weapon than a rocket launcher.

CLASS ARMOR

There is one final piece of Class-specific armor: Class Armor is purely cosmetic, with one exception. Acquiring a piece of Class Armor from a specific Faction in the game allows you to represent that Faction on the battlefield. This gives you a means of earning New Monarchy, Dead Orbit, or Future War Cult reputation while you complete activities.

Keep in mind that PvE activities normally earn you Vanguard reputation, but equipping yourself with one specific Faction's Class Armor changes your rep gain to that Faction instead.



ARMORY

EXOTICS

There is a class of equipment beyond Legendary. Powerful and rare, they are known as Exotics. Scattered throughout the world of Destiny, these mighty relics offer abilities not found on any other equipment, with completely unique effects on both armor and weapons. Some effects on armor are specific to certain Classes and even to specializations.

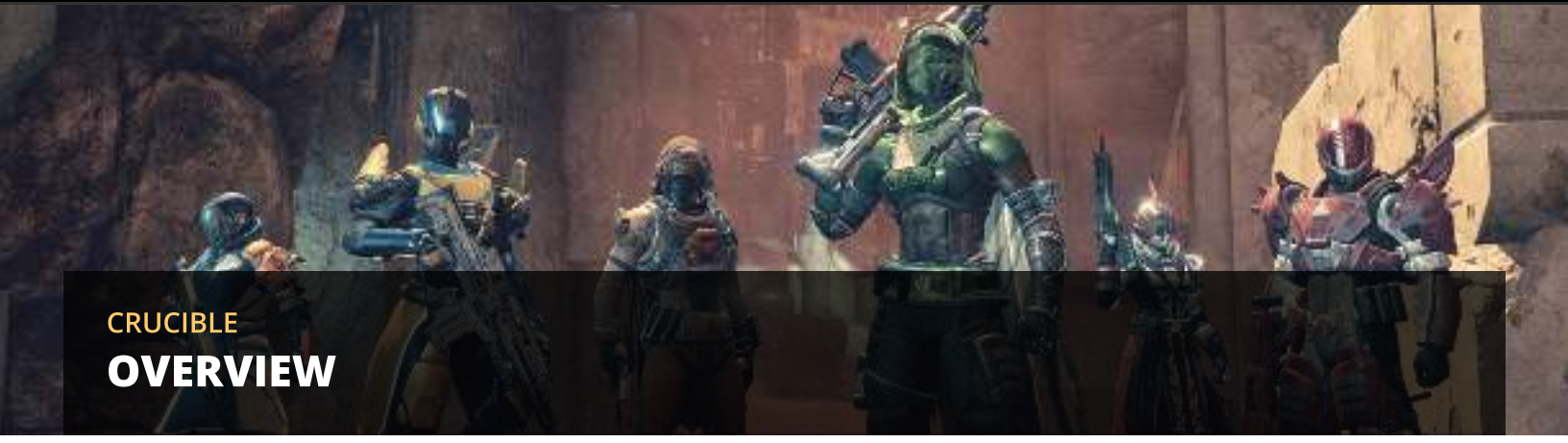
You can find an Exotic via several different ways, but the important thing to know is that you can potentially find one almost anywhere in the game. You can earn Exotic Engrams from completing high-level Strikes, from PvP, from Raids, or from Faction reputation rewards.

You can buy some Exotics with Strange Coins, and you might even be lucky enough to stumble across an Exotic bounty, with a lengthy list of challenging tasks that you must complete to earn a guaranteed Exotic at the end.

Exotic abilities can prove to be the “capper” on a build, with an entire set of Class abilities, armor stats and upgrades, and weapons and their mods all working together to make you even more dangerous on the battlefield.

Exotic Limits

You can only equip one Exotic weapon and one piece of Exotic armor. Choose wisely!



CRUCIBLE

OVERVIEW

To burn away your impurities, to strengthen you, to arm you with the skills to conquer the Darkness. This is the true purpose of the Crucible. Live fire contests against your fellow Guardians test you to your utmost limits, you must become smarter, faster, and more dangerous than any foe of humanity you face upon the battlefield. This chapter is meant to introduce you to organized PvP against other Guardians. Train, learn, and become a better player.

PVP GUIDE

Welcome to [Bungie's](#) Destiny PVP guide! We'll be introducing you to the core mechanics of Destiny's PVP, and then we'll be diving into the specifics of each game mode. Whether you're a [Crucible](#) veteran or a fresh [Guardian](#), there's something for you in this guide.

THE SINGLE MOST IMPORTANT PVP TIP

Here it goes:

Aim better. Or [control](#) your aim better.

That's the single most important thing you can do to make your [Guardian](#) a [Crucible](#) champion.

Fine, you want more than that. Let's talk about [Light](#) and [Power](#) levels, [Abilities](#), [Super](#) moves, and [Exotic](#) [Gear](#).

OKAY, THAT WAS A LIE

Back to the serious stuff. Let's talk about [Guardian](#) survival.

There's [Vitality](#), but you don't have to worry about that. Your [Health](#) and [Shields](#) will [regenerate](#) automatically, so you don't have to worry about [healing](#) yourself.

Instead, you have to worry about [Shields](#) and [Health](#). Your [Shields](#) will [regenerate](#) automatically, but your [Health](#) will not. Your [Shields](#) are the first ones to take damage from [weapons](#) and [Abilities](#), and they're the only ones that will [regenerate](#).

Once your [Shields](#) are down, you're in the red. Your [Health](#) will not [regenerate](#) on its own. You can heal yourself by picking up [Health](#) [Orbs](#) dropped by [defeated](#) [enemies](#), or by [healing](#) your [Fireteam](#) members.

Once you're out of [Shields](#), you're in danger. Watch your [Health](#) and [Shields](#) carefully.

Now you're a [Guardian](#) who knows how to survive. Let's learn how to [fight](#).

LOADOUTS

In PVP, each [Guardian](#) is [equipped](#) with three [weapons](#), one for each [slot](#): [Primary](#), [Special](#), and [Heavy](#). Each [weapon](#) has a [Light](#) level, which determines how much [damage](#) it does. Your [Guardian's](#) [Light](#) level is the average of your [Primary](#), [Special](#), and [Heavy](#) [weapons'](#) [Light](#) levels, plus your [Armor's](#) [Light](#) level. Your [Guardian's](#) [Light](#) level is displayed next to your [Guardian's](#) name.

Your [Armor](#) also has a [Light](#) level, which is the average of your [Armor's](#) [Light](#) level. Your [Armor's](#) [Light](#) level is displayed next to your [Guardian's](#) name.

Your [Guardian's](#) [Light](#) level is the average of your [weapons'](#) [Light](#) level and your [Armor's](#) [Light](#) level.

Your [Guardian's](#) [Light](#) level affects the [damage](#) you do and the [damage](#) you take. Higher [Light](#) levels do more [damage](#) and take less [damage](#).

Each [weapon](#) has a [Power](#) level, which determines how much [damage](#) it does. Your [Guardian's](#) [Power](#) level is the average of your [Primary](#), [Special](#), and [Heavy](#) [weapons'](#) [Power](#) levels, plus your [Armor's](#) [Power](#) level. Your [Guardian's](#) [Power](#) level is displayed next to your [Guardian's](#) name.

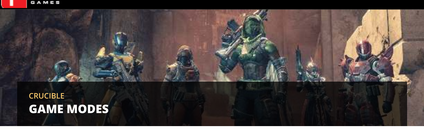
Your [Armor](#) also has a [Power](#) level, which is the average of your [Armor's](#) [Power](#) level. Your [Armor's](#) [Power](#) level is displayed next to your [Guardian's](#) name.

Your [Guardian's](#) [Power](#) level is the average of your [weapons'](#) [Power](#) level and your [Armor's](#) [Power](#) level.

Your [Guardian's](#) [Power](#) level affects the [damage](#) you do and the [damage](#) you take. Higher [Power](#) levels do more [damage](#) and take less [damage](#).

UI NOTES

Your [Guardian's](#) [Light](#) level is displayed next to your [Guardian's](#) name. Your [Guardian's](#) [Power](#) level is displayed next to your [Guardian's](#) name. Your [Guardian's](#) [Light](#) level is displayed next to your [Guardian's](#) name. Your [Guardian's](#) [Power](#) level is displayed next to your [Guardian's](#) name.



SCORING

Note that "Zone Captured" applies to both Control and Salvage.

Kill	Kill an opponent	+100

Assist	Assist a teammate	+50
Crossfire	"Assist" an enemy (FFA)	+25
Support	An ally buffed with your Radiance or Ward kills an enemy	+15
First Place Kill	Kill the top scoring player in the match (minimum score 1000)	+50
Headshot	Kill an enemy with a precision shot	+10
Melee	Kill an enemy with a melee attack	+10
Grenade	Kill an enemy with a grenade	+10
Throwing Knife	Kill an enemy with the throwing knife	+10
Heavy	Kill an enemy with a heavy weapon	+15
Super	Kill an enemy with an offensive Super	+25
5 Kill Streak	Kill five enemies in a single life	+25
10 Kill Streak	Kill 10 enemies in a single life	+50
15 Kill Streak	Kill 15 enemies in a single life	+100
Turret	Kill an enemy with the turret	+25
Vehicle	Kill an enemy with a vehicle	+25
Interceptor Destroyed	Destroy an enemy Interceptor	+75
Pike Destroyed	Destroy an enemy Pike	+50
Sparrow Destroyed	Destroy an enemy Sparrow	+5
Turret Destroyed	Destroy an enemy turret	+50
Revive	Revive an ally (Skirmish and Salvage)	+50
Self-Resurrect	Resurrect yourself (Radiance)	+25

Zone Neutralized	Neutralize a Control zone	+25
Zone Control x1	Kill bonus for holding one zone in Control	+50
Zone Control x2	Kill bonus for holding two zones in Control	+100
Zone Control x3	Kill bonus for holding three zones in Control	+200
Zone Captured	Capture a Control zone	+75
Zone Assault	Kill enemies while neutralizing/capturing a zone in Control	+25
Zone Defense	Kill enemies that are in or near an allied Control zone	+25

Probe Assault	Kill enemies near the enemy probe	+25
Probe Defense	Kill enemies near your team's probe	+25
Probe Deployed	Capture a Salvage zone	+100*
Probe Neutralized	Neutralize the enemy probe	+150*
Relic Salvaged	Your team salvaged a Relic	+200*

* Scores apply to all team members.

CLASH

6v6. Classic team deathmatch.

Earn points for kills and aiding teammates.

CONTROL

6v6. Control zones for additional point bonuses for your team.

Capture and hold zones, and then rack up kills against the enemy team while your point bonuses are active.

Capturing zones awards points and super energy.

COMBINED ARMS

6v6. Control or Clash played only on large maps with vehicles present.

Identical to Control or Clash, but because you are assured of fighting vehicles, bring a loadout suitable for destroying them, or seek to avoid them entirely.

RUMBLE

6 player free for all.

The highest score wins. Unlike team play modes, you can have a lower k/d ratio and still come out on top in Rumble. Aggression is encouraged!

Crucible Playlists

Control, Clash, Rumble, and Skirmish are the default, always active playlists for Crucible.

Salvage and Combined Arms come and go alongside special events.

SKIRMISH

3v3. Team revives enabled.

This is a small-scale tactical team deathmatch.

Revive your teammates to score points and maintain your team cohesion.

Deaths have a longer respawn time than in other modes.

SALVAGE

3v3. Secure objectives, team revives enabled.

A mix of Skirmish's tight team deathmatch tactics and Control's objective focus, Salvage demands that you locate and secure artifacts to score points.

Capture the artifact by deploying your Ghost near it, and stop the enemy team from capturing an artifact by deactivating their Ghost.

GENERAL GAME MODE ADVICE

STRAIGHT FROM BUNGIE

As one more treat for you, there are some words of advice from Kevin Yanes, a member of Bungie's PvP Design team over the next few pages. Kevin shared his thoughts on all aspects of PvP, including game modes, Class builds, and weapons.

Control

"Players in this game mode should focus on crowd control and zoning. The easier you can shut down lanes or apply pressure away from your zones, the better your team will have holding it. It's okay to sacrifice your life if you're in the heat of battle and you're keeping enemies away.

"Objective players should opt to use weapons like **Fist of Havoc**, **Nova Bomb**, **Ward of Dawn**, and **Arc Blade**, as they shine in Control due to team clumping. Using your super to clear out a capture point is a great way to win the fight over defense.

"More aggressive kill-focused players should opt for **Golden Gun** and **Radiance**, as those supers excel at killing a large number of enemies over a longer period of time. A good team composition will have a combination of both in the offense and defense.

"Grenades that leave a field or spawn seekers are key in this mode. These grenades can keep your enemies off capture zones long enough for you to escape after it."

Clash

"In this game mode, players are allowed to be more selfish. Players should maximize their own kill potential over others. While playing team-focused abilities may help your team out, you'll feel fewer opportunities to contribute with random players due to less team clumping.

"**Striker Titans**, **Blackdancer Hunters**, and **Voidwalker Warlocks** should look for chokepoints to maximize their super's lethality. Focus points like the **Storm** and heavy ammo can be used against the enemy team, as they are more vulnerable to **Fist of Havoc** and **Nova Bomb**.

"**Defender Titans** should try to use their **Ward** as a stake in the ground to take the power positions in each map. By starting in a power position, your teammates (if necessary) can use your ward as a respawn point.

"**Sunsinger Warlocks** and **Gunslinger Hunters** are for the more independent players. These Classes will have an easier time finding good situations to use their super in, as each super excels at taking down single targets because of their long-distance capabilities. These Classes often are the favorites in Clash, as they fuel the chaos and can feed off of it.

Skirmish

"Teamwork-focused Classes and players shine in Skirmish. Due to the harsh respawn penalty and lower score to win, players will find themselves clumping together and trying to team fight as much as possible.

"**Defender Titans** should use their turret to leverage the advantage by going their team shields or damage boosts. A clutch **Ward** can stop a **Nova Bomb** or **Golden Gun** from completely clearing your team.

"**Sunsinger Warlocks** can really turn the tides with their supers, as the high grenade count will be advantageous on smaller maps regardless. **Sunsingers** looking to maximize teamwork should pick **Song of Flame**, as wells and fires will create a bottleneck for nearby allies.

"As mentioned before, **Striker Titans**, **Blackdancer Hunters**, and **Voidwalker Warlocks** can capitalize on the team clumping to clean out entire enemy teams. **Nova Bomb Vortex** has the capability to destroy **Wards** and leave behind a damaging area of effect for those trying to run and (at the very least) snickered.

"**Blackdancer Hunters** and **Striker Titans** will be able to **Arc Blade** and **Fist of Havoc** right into a team and clean them out before they realize anything had happened. Additionally, **Arc Blade's Razor's Edge** and **Fist of Havoc Shockwave** can penetrate a **Ward** while a player maintains distance.

"High-lethality classes like **Gunslinger Hunters** are still viable in Skirmish and should be used to take point and engage team fights. Having at least one of these types of Classes on your team is ideal to success."

Salvage

"Salvage plays extremely close to Skirmish, with the exception that there is even more clumping due to the salvage points. Strategy remains the same, outside of having more chances to punish clumping."

Rumble

"Rumble is the place for highly independent Classes. Classes like **Blackdancer Hunters**, **Gunslinger Hunters**, and **Sunsinger Warlocks** rule in Rumble due to their high-single-target lethality.

"**Gunslinger Hunters** have an easier time pointing up on Rumble maps, as they can Tricerine one enemy to an area and follow their detonation. Tricerine at the feet, Tricerine at the head after Tricerine detonate and can react appropriately. **Golden Gun** is a great way to take advantage of the chaos in a Rumble fight.

"**Blackdancer Hunters** have a great grenade in **Arc Bolt**, allowing them to check corners and chain to other players at close range. **Arc Bolt** is a great way to capitalize on chaotic close-range encounters, as the high chance to hit the enemy with **Arc Bolt** will be startling the fight at a health disadvantage.

"**Arc Blade's Escape Artist** allows players to vanish and surprise enemies at close quarters. This is great greatly synergizes with the Rumble mode's fast pace.

"**Sunsinger Warlocks** shine in fighting-focused **Radiance's Radiant Skin**, **Firebolt Grenade**, **Viking Furnace**, and **Touch of Flame**. This build layout specifically gives the ability to take more damage in a Rumble fight, paving the way to victory with **Arc Bolt** and **Arc Blade** as finishers.

"**Firebolt Grenade** in combination with **Touch of Flame** allows **Sunsingers** to check corners for enemies and then start a fight at health advantage. **Sunsingers** should opt to only engage on fights where Burn has given them the health advantage.

"**Defender Titans**, **Striker Titans**, and **Voidwalker Warlocks** will have to try and be hardest to maximize their effectiveness, as their kits are geared toward team play and player clumping."

Combined Arms

"In Combined Arms it's important to know when and where vehicles spawn. Brave souls should make a break for the Interceptor and rain rockets on an enemy Control Point. The Salvo will provide the support ground troops looking to advance and get access to focus on you rather than those capturing the point. Players who grab Rifles can harass foot soldiers and even shimmy onto some vehicles to commandeer them.

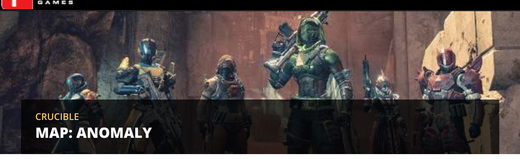
"If vehicles aren't your cup'o'tea a good solution for dealing with them while on foot is getting to Turrets located throughout each map. These can be effective at putting a stop to careless Fire Brothers as well as those that look at well placed rockets and shout out which color can also make short work of vehicles, just don't miss. When in doubt players can snack back for the tunnels to Bastion and Icebergs and passages in Frell Light to avoid the fire of the Interceptors and Pikes... happy hunting."

FAVORED CLASS LOADOUTS

Here are some of Kevin's favorite Class setups for PvP:

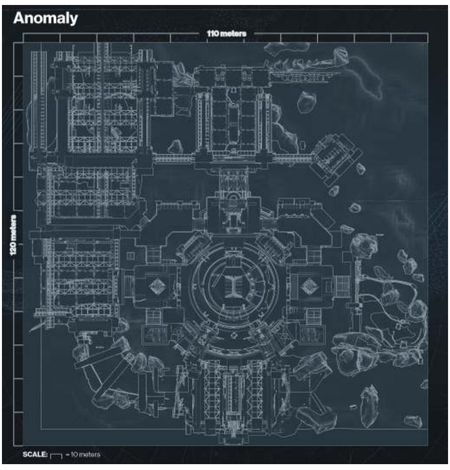
MOD COMMENTS

Here are some of Kevin's thoughts on the various mods you can find on weapons for PvP:



Time of Day

All Crucible battlegrounds can be set at any time of day or night. Beyond simply changing the aesthetics of the battlefield, the changes in lighting can have a slight impact on visibility. Keep your eyes peeled at night…



LAYOUT

A small, roughly symmetrical map, Anomaly takes place on Earth's Moon, set at a research base. Within the facility, old but still functional machinery analyzes… something in the center of the base. But you should be more concerned with the other Guardians out for your blood in the tight hallways. Anomaly consists of two "rings," one set within the other.

The innermost ring is the area immediately surrounding the artifact in the center of the base. The outer ring stretches through hollowed out but unused caves at the rear of the facility and a loading dock area at the front.

Several passages connect the two rings, and you can also move through the center below the artifact itself (though being situated in the center of the map is generally a bad place to be).

Shooting across the center is possible, but it is difficult to score killing shots, and focusing across the middle leaves you open to being flanked while you are distracted. Picking off a wounded target or helping a teammate during a fight is worthwhile, but you generally want to avoid going after a full-health target with anything other than a sniper rifle.

TACTICS

Anomaly is a mix of short- and mid-range combat, and it is rare not to have at least one target on your Motion Tracker at all times. It is possible to play a slightly longer-range game if you stick to the outer ring, but this isn't always easy depending on the game mode you are playing.

The inner ring can provide you with a quick route from one side of the outer ring to the other, but be wary of conflict in the narrow halls and tight spaces around the artifact. Bring your close-range weapons, and always be ready for face-to-face melee encounters.

If you choose to haunt the outer ring, it is possible to guard the approaches to your position with long-range weapons, often giving you the jump on any opponents who are moving swiftly and are not aware of your presence.

When fighting in either the inner or outer ring, position yourself near one of the "bolt holes" that travel between the two rings. You can sometimes use these to escape an unfavorable situation, but just be careful that an enemy using them doesn't ambush you.

The inner ring is a high-conflict zone in general, so be wary of traveling through it unless you're intentionally seeking out risky combat. Getting jumped shortly after you end a fight there is common, as is interference during a fight.

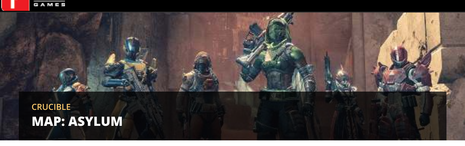
Another point: be watchful for multi-kill opportunities, as the narrow halls and transition points can cause traffic jams. Make sure it's you hammering the enemy team with supers or heavy, and not the other way around.

MOTION TRACKER

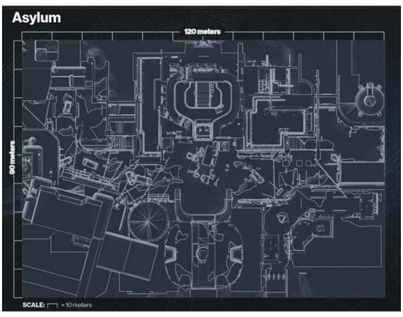
In the outer ring, it is fairly easy to determine where an enemy is located via the Motion Tracker, but on the inner ring, don't get overwhelmed if your Motion Tracker lights up and makes you feel surrounded. You probably are surrounded, but foes outside the inner ring can't necessarily harm you.

Keep your eyes on the screen while you move through the middle, and only use the Motion Tracker to confirm if there is an enemy presence somewhere ahead of you as you transition from one area to another. You need every millisecond in the close-quarters encounters here.

Also, be careful about trying to be sneaky with crouching or cloaking in the interior ring. If timed well, you may ambush someone entering the center, but due to the high traffic, you also have a pretty good chance of getting shot while you're squatting in a corner.



MAP: ASYLUM



LAYOUT

Asylum takes place in the overgrown remnants of a Venusian city.

A long linear map in the buildings along either side of an overgrown street, Asylum features a mix of close- and medium-range urban combat.

The street in the center is best used as a quick transition between buildings on either side. This is a very unsafe place to travel, with multiple windows and ledges overlooking it and multiple doors on the street level opening on to it.

The buildings have a mix of terrain inside, with narrow hallways, staircases, and open rooms providing a range of engagements from close to medium.

Most of the buildings have at least one window or doorway that overlooks the street in the center of the opposite building across the street.

TACTICS

Because the buildings are two-floor structures, expect attacks from enemies above you. Be very careful with your transitions from the ground floor to the second floor, particularly near the middle of the map.

You are exposed to many potential avenues of attack, the worst of which involving opponents already on the second floor waiting for you to take an obvious staircase. Whenever possible, use your Jump abilities to change floors in an unusual position.

The safer method is to change floors at the end of the street—both sides of the street have entrances to the buildings, and you can get to the second floor with the entire map in front of you. This minimizes your exposure and gives you an easy read on your Motion Tracker.

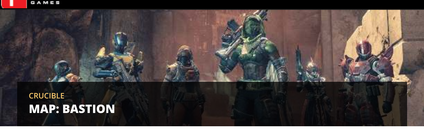
Speaking of the street, if you are at either end of it, you have a decent line of fire with minimal exposure on your flanks. It is possible to pick off some targets with long-range fire fairly safely; just don't stay out there for too long.

MOTION TRACKER

At either end of the street, you can get a good read on targets approaching you. When sweeping a building from end to end, you can usually get a decent sense of enemy positions ahead of you as you move through the building.

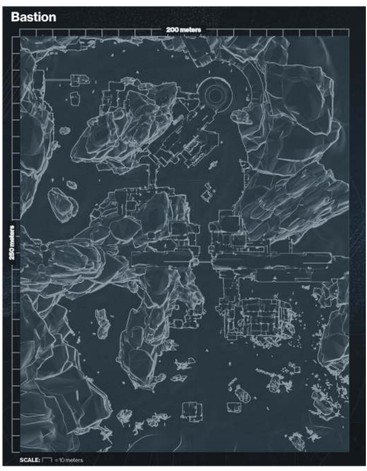
If you're traveling through the street, you can expect to have your Motion Tracker light up with furious red all around you. Don't bother trying to pinpoint every hostile location; just get out of there as quickly as possible when this occurs.

If you are camping in one of the building interiors on the second floor, pay attention to dim Motion Tracker alerts—if you're attentive, you can spot a hostile prowling on the lower floor. From some positions, you can usually guesstimate where they entered, and that can give you an idea of which approach they'll attempt if they come up to the second level.



CRUCIBLE

MAP: BASTION



LAYOUT

Set on the surface of Mars between a Cabal landship and a Vex-corrupted series of rocky complexes, Bastion is a large outdoor map. Bastion has two primary areas of conflict: the sandy exterior roads and the rocky interiors. The roads make a rough figure eight in the bulk of the map, with two connected rings circling the two largest interior Vex-marked areas, while the dunes closer to the Cabal side of the level are more open. The two interior areas within the rings are connected by a bridge over the roads below, and both have several entrances and exits out to the roads.

Near the dunes portion of the map, there is a small ruined exterior stone structure. Beside this is a cavernous area hewn out of the Martian stone. The map slopes gently uphill from the dunes area to the "top" of the figure eight, though the elevation changes are more severe between some of the interior and exterior areas.

TACTICS

The roads are a dangerous place to be, whether or not any vehicles are active. The long clear lines of fire mean you are extremely exposed to snipers and long-range gunners, and you may not have time to get to cover before you are downed.

If you plan on playing an infantry game, stick to the rocky areas, and move between the different parts of the map by traveling through the interiors or hugging the walls as you move along the roads.

If you intend to make heavy use of the vehicles, patrol the roads and keep your distance from the entrances to the interiors (and the turret near the dune structure).

As long as you avoid getting too close to potential grenade or super attacks, you limit your exposure to danger, and you can harass and contain the opposing team. This is particularly useful if you are coordinating with your teammates: if an enemy is focused on you, your teammate can flank them, and if they push the target into the open, you can pick them off with ease.

While the exterior areas very much favor sniper, scout, and pulse rifles, the interiors are perfectly suited to any type of close- or medium-range weapons. This means you can choose your engagement distances on Bastion, despite the size of the level.

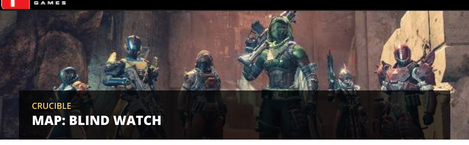
Don't forget to switch your scopes around: putting on a decent magnification sight is a good way to extend your range while keeping a favored weapon.

MOTION TRACKER

You can use the Motion Tracker to easily detect enemies in the interior areas, particularly if you're patrolling the map on a vehicle (or even on your Sparrow).

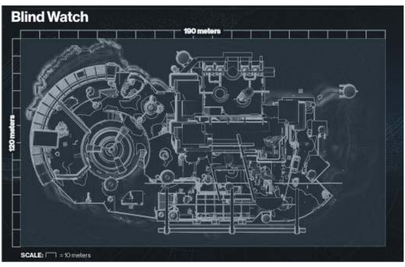
On the flip side, while you're hanging out in the interiors, it is usually fairly easy to tell when an adversary is getting close to your position. However, be careful about false positives, as an enemy hugging the walls nearby can show up in the same wedge as a player that is actually moving into your space.

In some of the longer stretches outside, enemies can be far past the range that your Motion Tracker can detect… but watch for the telltale gleam of sniper scopes in the distance.



CRUCIBLE

MAP: BLIND WATCH



LAYOUT

Blind Watch is set on the rooftops of a former human city on Mars.

Located in a hydroponics and water processing facility, Blind Watch has a mix of open exterior areas, tight interiors, and changing elevations.

The exterior is located near a giant turbine that still rotates, albeit slowly. Its shifting movements can block lines of sight through it from one end of the exterior to the other.

Beside the turbine and close to the desiccated remnants of the garden is a small building that provides some cover from the battles outside.

You can also drop down into the water below the turbine and make your way around the turbine, or you can jump up into (or onto) the interior of the structure that houses the turbine itself.

From outside, you can travel into the larger interior building that makes up the rest of the map. In fact, there are quite a few ways between the two: there's a door that opens directly onto the exterior, an upper ledge that leads to an upper hallway, and a smaller covered garden area that leads to the rear.

The interior is made up of a few connecting hallways and a slightly larger room containing a few tanks. This larger room is the hub for the building, and from it, you can travel to any of the exits to the exterior.

TACTICS

Blind Watch rewards a flexible play style, as you can be involved in long-range peekaboo firefights or close-quarters brawls within seconds of each other.

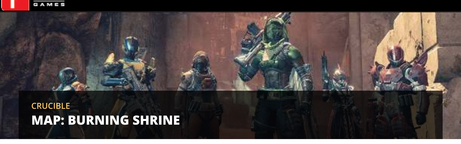
Bring a loadout that gives you a Primary Weapon and a Special Weapon option suitable to different parts of the map, and switch as needed. The outer area tends to see a lot of conflict, and it is most dangerous near the center of the level, where the exterior and several exits from the building's interior meet.

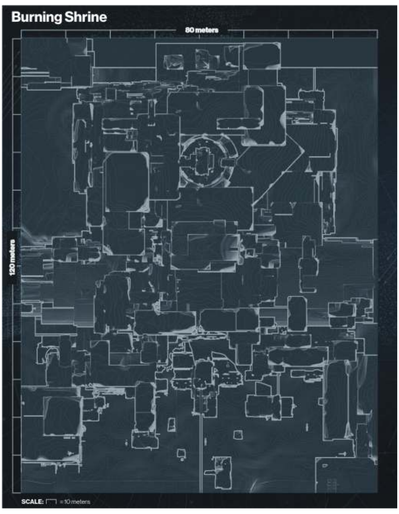
Rather than freely engaging in raging firefights in the center, if you are more careful and patrol the edges of the map, you can minimize the number of routes you must cover and focus on eliminating enemies in front of you.

MOTION TRACKER

You can make good use of the Motion Tracker inside the building, as the defined hallways make it fairly easy to guess an opponent's position. Watch out for the elevation changes near the lower garden, as there are a few different places where you can travel high or low in the same general area.

Outside, use the Motion Tracker to get a rough bead on enemy presence, but don't rely on it for specific location. There's a fair amount of cover, and with jumping abilities, it's possible to shift positions rapidly. In particular, keep your eyes peeled for targets out on the rooftop. If you're near the center of the map, expect to have your Motion Tracker lighting up with enemy presence regularly, possibly all around you if your team doesn't have one side of the map locked down.





LAYOUT

Burning Shrine is a battleground set within a semi-functional computational structure. Within it, beams of light bisect the hallways, and active energy is visible in the walls.

The Burning Shrine is a small map, with a very limited exterior area on the burnt surface that can be safely reached. The remainder is set inside the Vex-marked hallways. These halls contain one of the major landmarks of the level: a set of rotating stone wedges acts as a moving barrier that occasionally blocks the line of sight through the main hall. Behind the rotating barriers, a smaller set of hallways leads to the "back" of the structure. The hallways throughout are roughly symmetrical, with similar spacing and shape on both sides of the main hall.

TACTICS

Close-range weaponry and combat reign in the rear of the structure, though medium-range firefights can occur in the main hallways. When traveling in the halls, be wary of corner ambushes, and always be ready for a melee fight. Watch those corners, as the sharp 90-degree turns make for easy hiding spots.

You can occasionally shake a pursuer by running out of sight into a room, crouching in a corner for a split second, and then attacking them when they sprint into the room. Even a moment's delay on your Motion Tracker signature can make you vanish from their Motion Tracker.

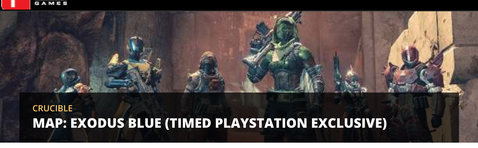
A raised hallway runs through the middle of the map. You can use this to sneak from one end of the main hall to the other, and enemies may not always detect your position until you reveal yourself.

MOTION TRACKER

Your Motion Tracker can give you a clear read on nearby threats when you are close to the edges of the structure. With a limited number of hallway approaches, it isn't hard to get a read on the rough position of nearby foes.

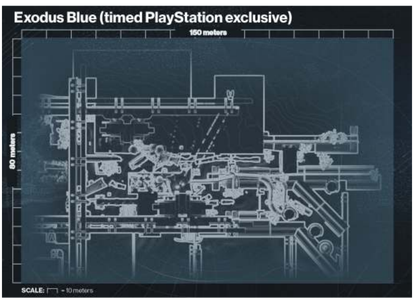
The tricky part is figuring out exactly where your opponents are located within the rooms. If you suspect an ambush, use grenades to flush out enemies rather than blindly entering a room.

Moving fast can also open up flanking opportunities if you use the different halls and passages well. Even if an adversary knows you are nearby, moving quickly enough can still let you surprise your target.



CRUCIBLE

MAP: EXODUS BLUE (TIMED PLAYSTATION EXCLUSIVE)

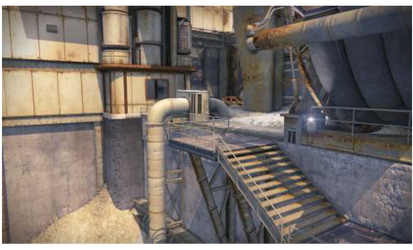


LAYOUT

Exodus Blue sees you competing in a junkyard of scrap metal, rusted-out buildings, and old fuel lines tied to a once-mighty fleet of colony ships somewhere in the Cosmodrome of Old Russia.

Exodus Blue is laid out from end to end as a fairly clean-cut rectangle. There is a large building in the center breaking up sightlines, a second building interior on one map "edge," and an opposite side with a fatal drop off the edge. There are also fuel lines that you can traverse to sneak around the outside of the level.

This map provides a lot of cover, with rusted-out vehicles and scattered debris breaking up sightlines.



TACTICS

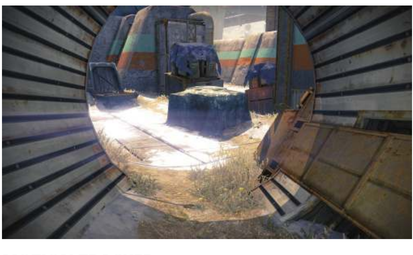
This map features a mix of engagement distances. If you stick to the building interiors, you can force close-range firefights, but if you stay outside and monitor your sightlines carefully, you can start fights at medium distance.

With the amount of cover present, it is fairly easy to duck away from a battle at a distance. You can also use the cover to close the gap with a known enemy position.

The central building is guaranteed to see a lot of traffic and conflict, particularly in objective modes. Consequently, don't move through it unless you're prepared to eat a barrage of grenades, supers, and opponents aiming at you as you exit.

The side building is a bit safer, and if you kick any defenders out, you can take it over and lock down the space to anyone who tries to enter.

The outer edge by the fuel lines has a fatal drop if you aren't careful, but if you are, you can use your Jump abilities to sneak around the outside of the map. This often proves useful for ambushing players too focused on the central map conflict.

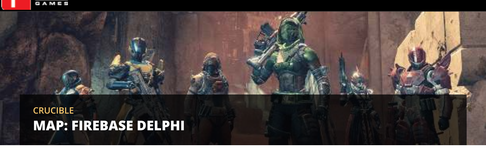


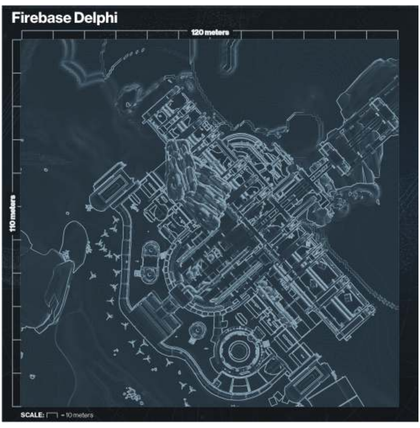
MOTION TRACKER

In this level, Motion Tracker usage is fairly easy on the edges and a bit panicked in the center.

Because of the way the map is divided up into several "lanes" that stretch across the rectangular play area, you can usually figure out where an opponent is relative to your position as long as you're on one of the edges.

If you're stationed closer to the middle or in the side building, you may get a fair amount of Motion Tracker pings from enemies nearby on the other side of a wall.





LAYOUT

Set in a Cabal outpost, Firebase Delphi hosts a mix of combat within the facility and outside on the Martian surface.

Fitting for the Cabal's size, the interior of the firebase is large, with huge hallways and doors forming a simple interconnected network.

Outside, there is a small bunker that players can enter, as well as a U-shaped arc of terrain that stretches around the front of the base.

Inside the hallways, you can travel to the back of the firebase or into a command center area at the front of the base, closer to the outer defensive wall.

The command center room is a two-level affair, with an upper portion that overlooks the front yard area and a lower level that opens to the outside and the central connecting hall inside the base.

The central hallway on the map is a very high-traffic area, with four different parts of the base converging in one spot. The only thing that keeps it from being complete suicide to enter is the hanging rack of missiles that acts as a giant platform and blocks the line of sight across the hallway.

TACTICS

Flow on this map depends heavily on the mode, with objectives forcing conflict outside and then back in again. Otherwise, conflict tends to be focused in the interior hallways, particularly at all of the points connected to the central hall.

There isn't an easy way to stick to a safe "edge" of the level. No matter where you are, there are at least two ways to reach you, and one of them is going to be at your back.

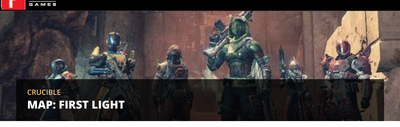
With teamwork, it is quite possible to lock down the inner hallways by covering multiple directions, but solo, you may be better off sticking close (though not too close) to teammates and focusing on jointly fighting any approaching opponents.

MOTION TRACKER

Motion Tracker usage is simple on the edges of the level where there are only a few obvious approaches, but it becomes more difficult near the center, particularly near the main intersection and the two-floor command center section.

If you're skirting the edges, you can often pick up easy kills by engaging enemies who have already joined a scrum in the center of the map, but if an objective forces you into a location with quite a few entrances and exits, only practice can teach you where adversaries are likely to attack you from.

Use the Motion Tracker to alert you of incoming foes. Even if you aren't totally certain of their position, you can use the information to back off and then re-engage when you know where they are, or push at them aggressively. As long as you stay focused on your screen and not the Motion Tracker, you shouldn't fall prey to sneaky ambushes, as most of the hallways and exterior areas are wide open.



MAP: FIRST LIGHT

LAYOUT

First Light takes place in the ruins of old human research facilities on the Moon.

A wide-open map most comparable to Bastion, First Light is the second vehicle-focused map in Crucible. With a vast lunar surface around the buildings and a huge field containing the ruins of old rockets, there is a lot of open space to cover.

The map extends from the slightly higher elevation facility at the "top" of the map near the foul green glow of the Hive emanating from a crack in the Moon's crust down to the rocket field.

In the center, one long structure stretches almost the full length of the level, and it is possible to travel inside of it for most of the way. The long structure is divided up into a centrally located two-story geodesic dome and a smaller single-floor building connected to the dome.

The last structure is located up near the Hive rift. As a small structure with a blasted-out second floor, it has fairly poor lines of sight, but it can be an important location in objective modes.

There is also a secondary two-story building located off to the side of the main dome. It is possible to get onto the roof of most of the buildings on the map, as well.

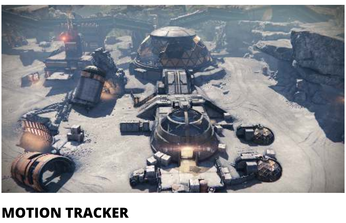
TACTICS

Be wary of snipers and long-range combat in the open. If your loadout is at all close- or medium-range focused, you should stick to the building interiors, only poking your head out to shoot at nearby targets.

The vehicles on First Light can run rampant or have almost no impact, depending on how you play. If you spend a lot of time in the open, you make a juicy target for a fast-moving Pike or Interceptor bombardment, but if you stick to the buildings, they can't do much to you.

There are also two turrets: one beside the two-story side building, and another near the caves opposite the rocket field. Both turrets can be useful for shutting down nearby vehicles if their drivers are incautious.

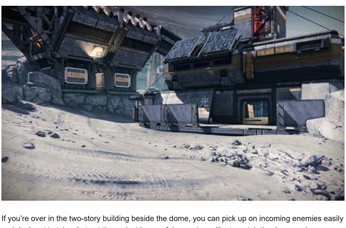
If you are using the vehicles, avoid (or destroy) the turrets and patrol the open roads, looking for any targets that expose themselves or foolishly leave the safety of their buildings. Inside the buildings, close-range weapons and grenades shine. You can deal a lot of damage to enemies who try to push into your space if you are aggressive with your grenades and melee. Shotguns and fast-charging fusion rifles are deadly in the interiors.



MOTION TRACKER

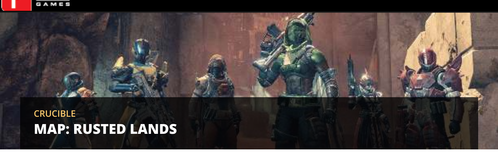
Your Motion Tracker can be tricky to read in the buildings because enemies can walk on top of them, as well as anywhere nearby outside. It's not uncommon to be inside a building with multiple wedges lighting up from enemy presence—and no certain lock on their positions.

The easiest reads tend to be attackers coming into the dome. Although it has two levels, there is only one hallway stretching from it to the connected building, and you can usually move in such a way that your target must get in front of you to engage.



If you're over in the two-story building beside the dome, you can pick up on incoming enemies easily and duck out to take shots at them. Just be careful, as snipers like to watch the doors and rooftops.

Outdoors, your Motion Tracker won't pick up distant foes. Just like Bastion, look for scope gleams in the distance. Snipers love to hang out on the outskirts of the level and pick off players leaving the buildings.



CRUCIBLE

MAP: RUSTED LANDS

LAYOUT

A ruined and overgrown old factory complex, Rusted Lands is a small- to medium-size square level with a mix of interior and exterior combat.

Combat tends to flow around a central lane that bisects the map, with a handful of multi-floor structures at the edges being focal points for conflict, particularly in objective modes.

The largest building on one side of the map contains a wrecked Hive ship that crashed through the roof. On the opposite side, smaller blasted-out buildings provide multi-floor elevation and cover.

Next to the large building is a central lane that sees the most traffic, and you can cross to both sides of the map via several different routes at either end of the lane or through the middle.

TACTICS

Rusted Lands rewards area domination and careful movement. If you lock down a corner of the map, you can use Motion Tracker reads to intercept any incoming foes, preferably from behind cover.

On the offense, use the multiple routes in and out of the middle to attack the building positions. Just don't approach a strongly defended structure alone.

The central lane is a bad place to be. Either travel through it in a large group at the edges, or avoid it when you see a lot of red in the area on your Motion Tracker.

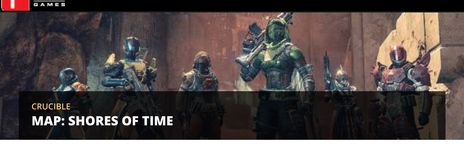
MOTION TRACKER

Rusted Lands is a poster child for Motion Tracker training: it has multiple elevations, linear lines of fire, interior and exterior areas, a central hot spot, and corners that you can use to get easy directional reads.

Use Rusted Lands to practice your Motion Tracker reads. It is easiest to use by patrolling the edges of the level and picking up on enemies ahead of you, but you can also use it while defending any strong point on the map to get a read on incoming foes.

Also, learn to pay attention to dim wedges, indicating attackers below you. While they are easy to spot due to the map layout, this will help train you in recognizing when enemies are below you from a glance at the Motion Tracker. This is very useful on some of the more complex multi-layered maps.

In the center of the map, don't be too surprised to see multiple wedges lighting up at once and coming toward your position. Even an uncoordinated team may often end up pushing on a position from multiple directions by taking different routes through the center lane.



CRUCIBLE

MAP: SHORES OF TIME

LAYOUT

A deceptively complex layout, the Shores of Time takes place in the jungles of Venus, outside a ruined human outpost.

A centrally located Vex structure dominates the landscape, while portions of a jungle, a cave complex, and a river run through the edges of the level.

Part of the map around the Vex structure consists of sheer cliffs. If you aren't careful, it is quite possible to plunge to your death during a fight on the edges.

The Vex structure is centrally located and has a circular flow in and around it. This makes it both the fastest way from one side of the map to the other and a very dangerous place to linger, as traffic flows through it constantly.

While this level initially appears to have very constrained sightlines, there are some surprisingly long lines of sight around the edges of the level. Well-positioned snipers can cover lines from "corners" of the level, so be careful when pushing around the outside of the map.

The cave area contains several objectives and one of the heavy ammo spawns, so even though it is somewhat out of the way, it tends to see traffic in objective play.

TACTICS

There are several ways to play Shores of Time effectively. You can post up on the outskirts of the map and attempt to lock down the area, intercepting anyone who approaches.

Alternately, with a close-range setup and build, you can sweep through the center of the map, clearing it out and poking out briefly to attack anyone on any side of the level.

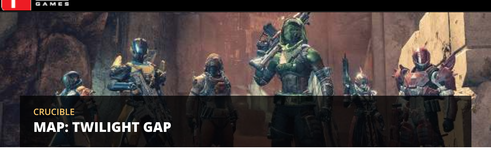
A balanced playstyle will see you roaming the map, only occasionally passing through the center to bypass a tough enemy position.

If you are playing with an organized team, coordinating a push on any edge of the level by having one player move on the outside and one player move through the center can give you a powerful advantage, with one player drawing fire and the second flanking the occupied enemies.

MOTION TRACKER

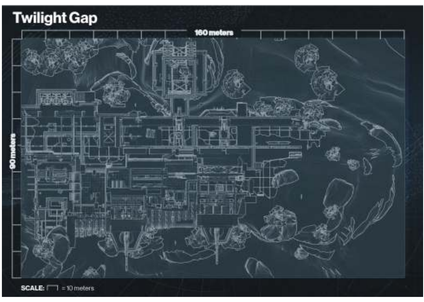
Motion Tracker usage is fairly easy on this level. Just be careful in the middle, as high traffic nearby can give you confused reads.

On the outskirts, spotting incoming enemies from a distance on the Motion Tracker is easy, and this is one of the few levels where crouching behind cover can still provide good protection and a line of sight with little fear of an ambush. Doing so dampens your own Motion Tracker signature and gives you a chance at an ambush.



CRUCIBLE

MAP: TWILIGHT GAP



LAYOUT

Sitting along the battered edge of the massive wall that rings the Tower and the City, the Traveler is visible hanging in the sky not far from the battlegrounds of Twilight Gap.

Twilight Gap is a fortified defensive structure and the site of a major battle against forces seeking to penetrate the City's defensive line and devastate the Guardians' last stronghold. Twilight Gap is a multi-level complex, built into a mountaintop. Parts of the level are outside the complex amongst the boulders and snow.

The structure itself consists of a "front" side business end with multiple cannons aimed into the distance. Behind the cannons, a series of loading arms and service catwalks makes up the multi-level support facility. There is also a small radar facility at the "back" of the map, which is connected to a cable car that leads back down to the City. The overall shape of the map is roughly rectangular, running end to end behind the cannons. The catwalks and the second floor of the facility add multiple levels of elevation from the front cannons to the rear radar building.

TACTICS

Twilight Gap heavily rewards team play and severely punishes lone wolf assaults.

Because there are multiple routes (and multiple elevations) connecting almost any part of the map center, it is very easy to finish a fight and get ambushed from the flank or rear.

If you fight near teammates, even though you are still likely to draw attention, sometimes from an awkward angle, you have much better odds of coming out on top.

If you insist on running alone, stick to the edges of the map. The two outer areas in the rocks and trees and the radar room can all give you lines of sight and clean Motion Tracker reads on nearby foes.

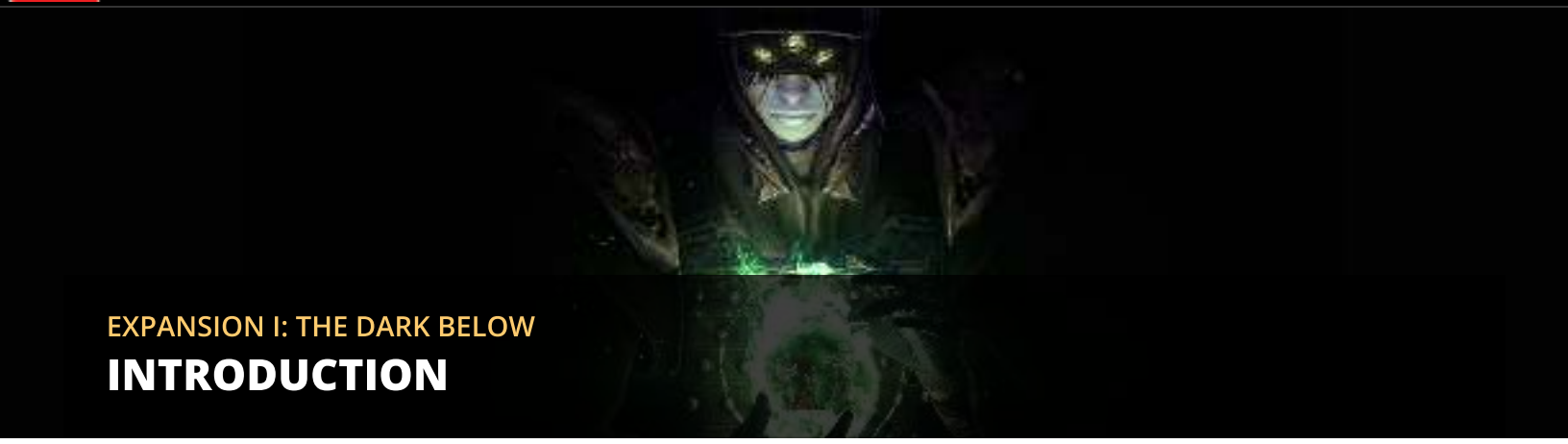
When moving through the interior of the facility, don't linger in any place that has multiple routes in and out. You want to get to an objective area or dislodge an enemy position and move on before reinforcements can arrive.

MOTION TRACKER

Motion Tracker reads can be rough on Twilight Gap. If you are anywhere in the middle of the map, your Motion Tracker can light up in a confused mass of red.

To dull the confusion, stick to the outer edges of the map, and when pushing through the middle, focus on the presence and rough direction of your opponents. Keep your eyes on the screen, not on the Motion Tracker.

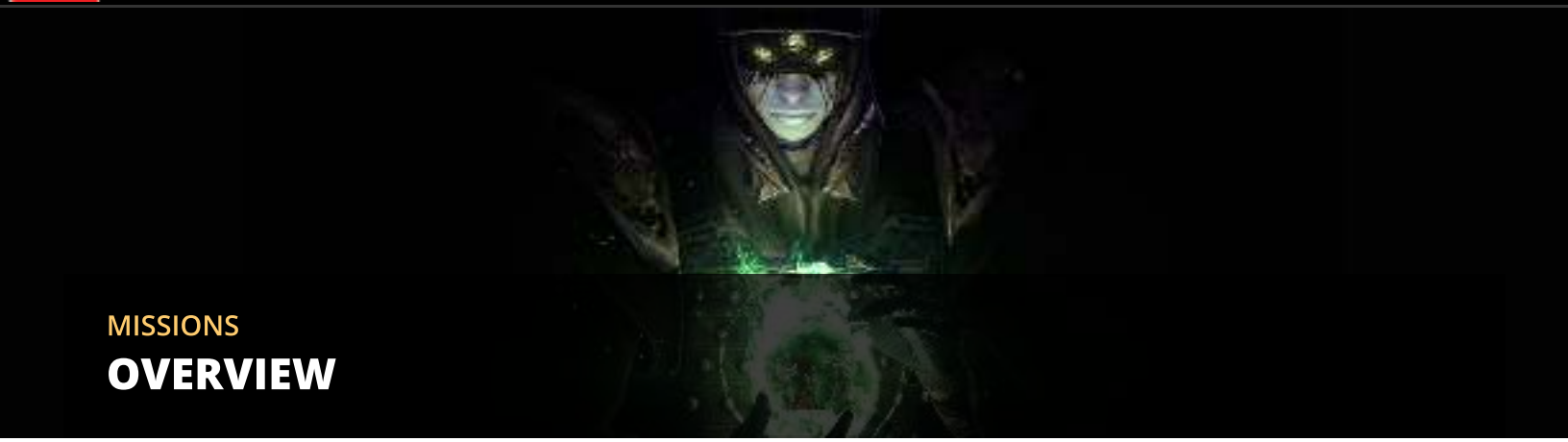
With practice, determining enemy positions gets easier, but the multi-level nature of the center and the multiple routes never make it 100% against evasive and mobile adversaries. Learn to use the Motion Tracker to narrow down the likely options, rather than assuming that any are fully eliminated.



EXPANSION I: THE DARK BELOW

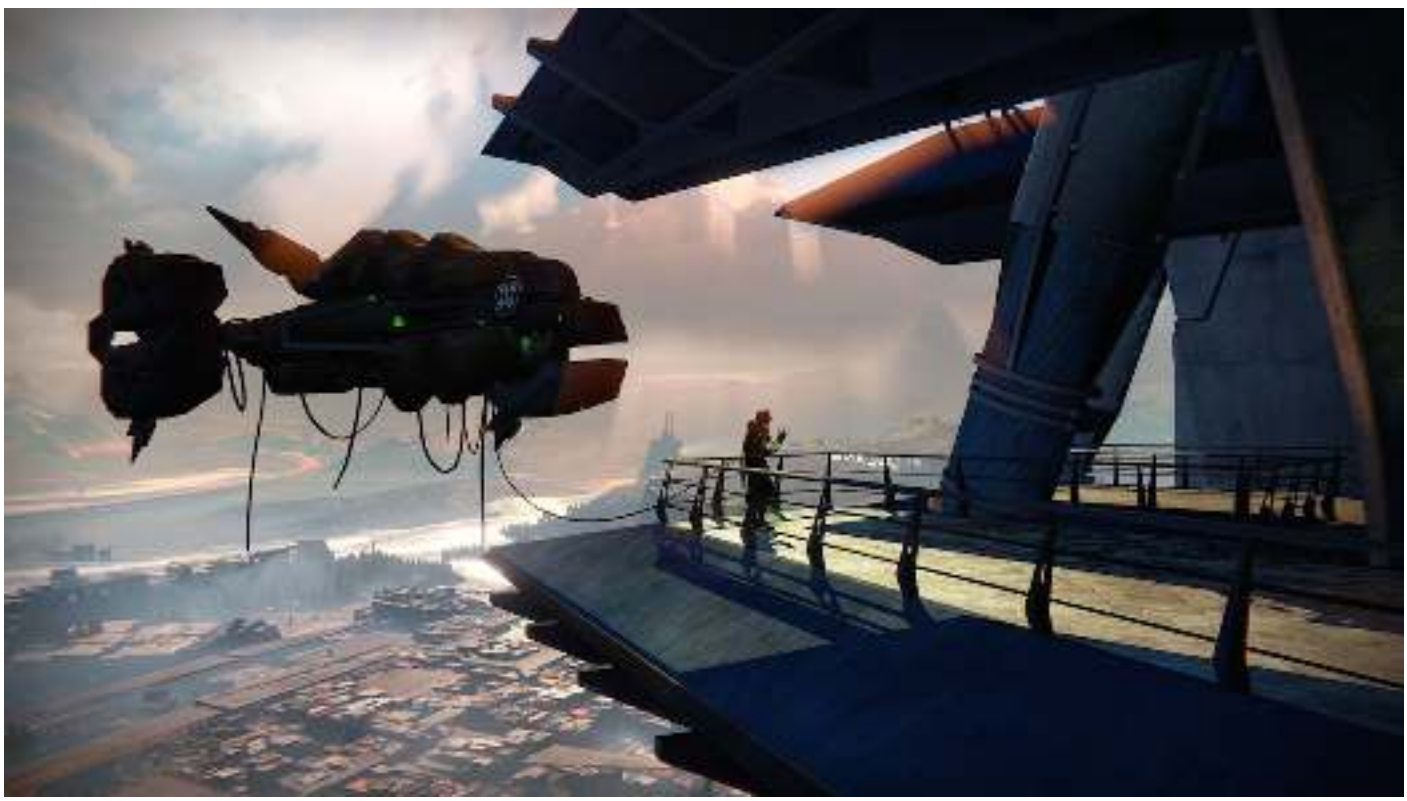
INTRODUCTION

After years of hiding amongst the Hive shadows, a new character, Eris, has come forth bearing an ominous warning: The Hive seek to summon a god, Crota, to destroy the Earth. Find her in the Tower to complete her quests and three new story missions, increase your Guardian's Light, and earn the weapons and armor needed to face what awaits in the Dark Below.

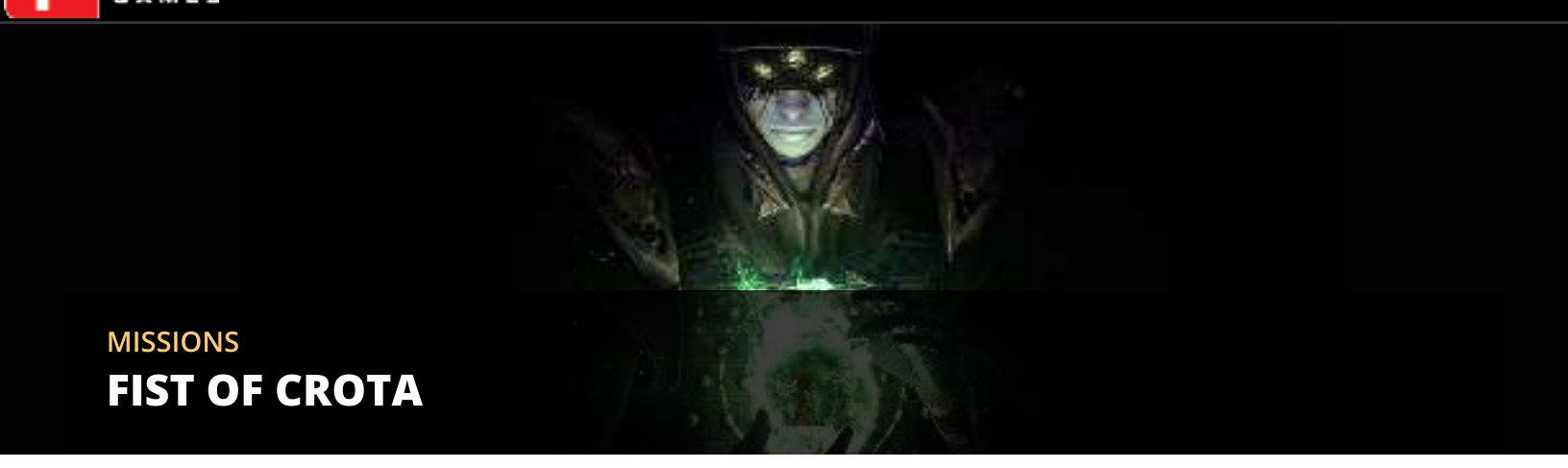


MISSIONS

OVERVIEW



The Dark Below Expansion contains three new story missions that take place on the Earth and its Moon. To begin the story missions, simply visit Eris Morn in the Tower to the left of the Tower North entrance.



MISSIONS

FIST OF CROTA

FIST OF CROTA

Level 24 Story / Old Russia, Earth

Enemy Races: Hive, Fallen

Suggested Damage Type: Solar, Arc

Rewards: Armor Upgrade, Cryptarch Engram, XP Bonus

Objective: Find Sardon, The Fist of Crota

Location: The Blast

The player starts in The Blast and fights Omnigul for the first time. Eris Morn guides the player through the familiar ground where the Fallen and Hive are battling each other. Eliminate them all and push forward into the Refinery. Once inside the Refinery, there are a few Acolytes performing a ritual that summons a Hive Knight known as a Blade of Crota.

Omnigul

Omnigul cannot be defeated in this fight. Causing damage to her spawns more enemies and forces her to teleport away.

Once inside the Refinery, you'll encounter a few Acolytes performing a ritual that will summon a Hive Knight know as the Blade of Crota.

The Blade of Crota has a shield that is vulnerable to Arc damage. Destroy the Knight to retrieve his Sword of Crota. Use the Sword to defeat the remaining enemies along the path to the Grottos. Once in The Grottos, locate a floating orb and move close to it to summon the Fist of Crota.

Objective: Kill Sardon, The Fist of Crota

Location: The Grottos

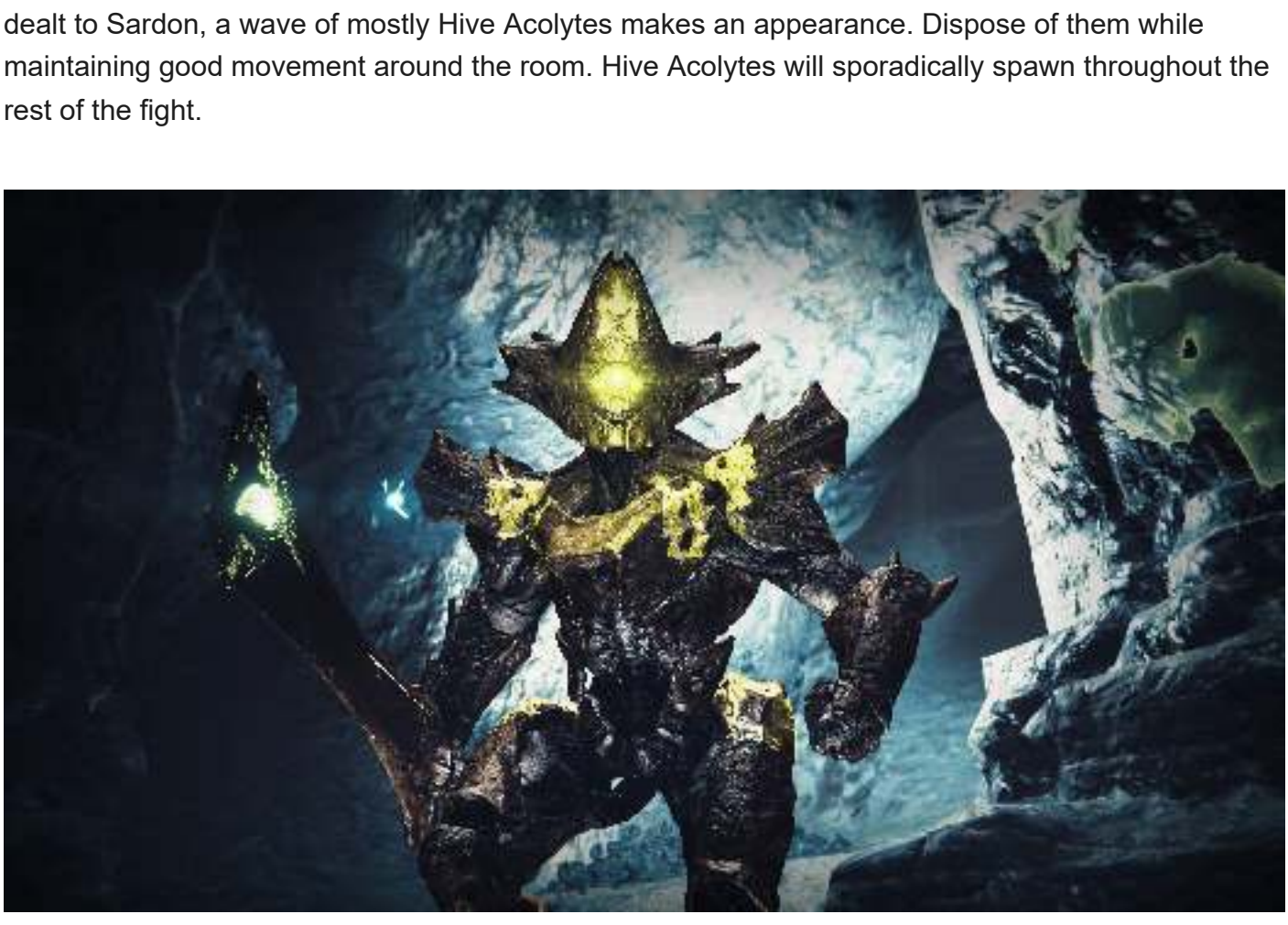
The only Darkness Zone in this mission begins in The Grottos. As soon as Sardon is summoned, "A Dark Burden" begins to weigh on the Guardians' Light, stripping the players of their ability to double jump. Sardon, The Fist of Crota, is a super-charged Hive Knight that slams the ground with his sword, sending out a directional shockwave that deals heavy damage.

Keep It Moving!

Constant movement is the key to staying alive in this fight. Since you can't jump high enough to dodge Sardon's main attack, jump sideways to completely avoid its attack.

Circle around The Grotto, sprinting away and turning to fight Sardon when at a safe distance. Avoid the boxes in the center, or Crota's power will begin to pollute the air, causing a poison cloud to appear on top of the player.

The first wave consists of Thrall, so use a grenade to quickly eliminate them. As more damage is dealt to Sardon, a wave of mostly Hive Acolytes makes an appearance. Dispose of them while maintaining good movement around the room. Hive Acolytes will sporadically spawn throughout the rest of the fight.



Once Sardon is eliminated, the mission ends and the player may return to the Tower to turn in the "Fist of Crota" quest. Upon completion, Eris will provide the player with 5 Black Wax Idols and 50 reputation for Crota's Bane.

MISSIONS

SIEGE OF THE WARMIND

SIEGE OF THE WARMIND

Level 25 Story / Old Russia, Earth

Enemy Races: Hive, Fallen

Suggested Damage Type: Solar

Rewards: Armor Upgrade, Cyrptarch Engram, XP Bonus, Ascendent Materials (level 30 only)

Objective: Find the Warmind

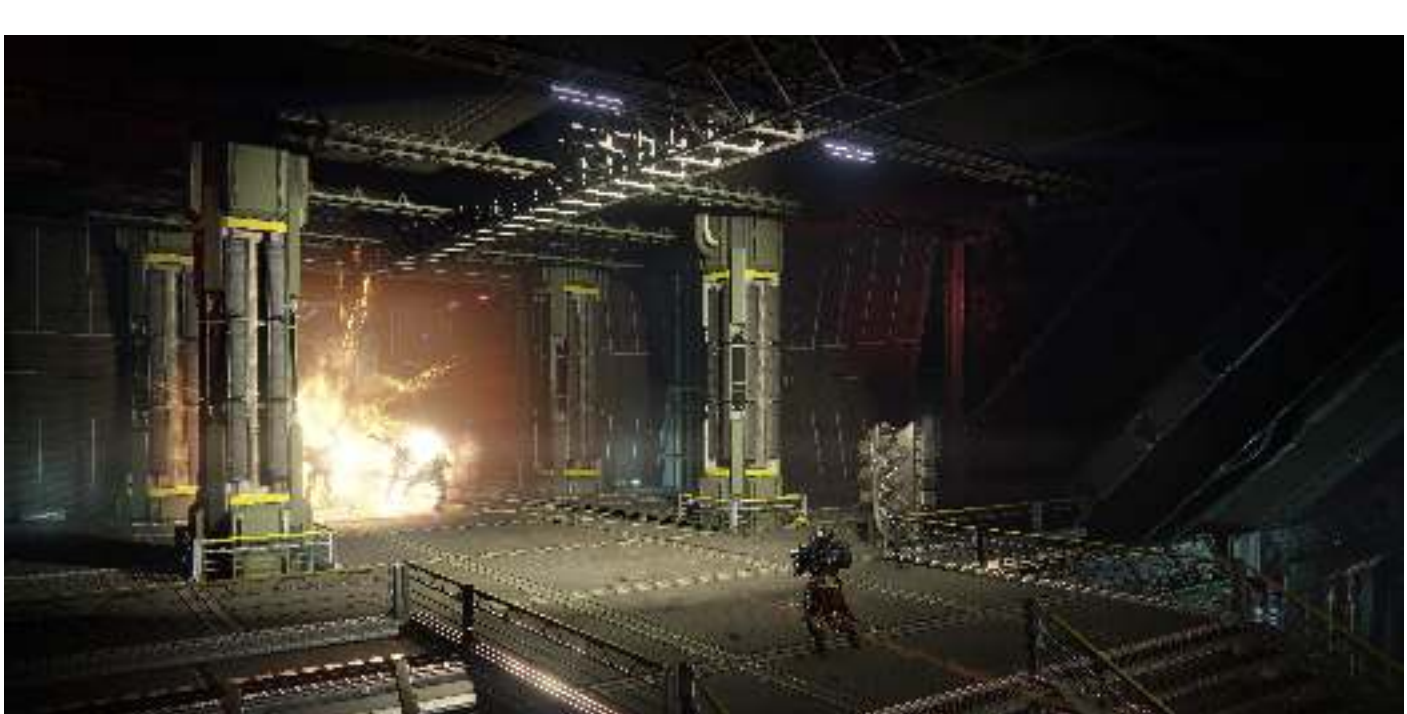
Location: Mothyards

Beginning in the Mothyards, head to the Forgotten Shore. Once there, follow the waypoint towards a destroyed building on the hill. Eliminate the low-level Fallen patrolling in the area, then head down into Bunker RA5-2.

Objective: Examine the Warmind

Location: Bunker RA5-2

The diamond-shaped black door opens to reveal an entrance into the depths. After a short walk, the Guardians will enter The Seraphim Vault, a Darkness Zone, and a wave of Hive Knights, Acolytes, and Thrall will spawn. You must defeat a Hallowed Knight before you can proceed into the Seraphim Vault where the main conflict of the mission takes place.



Objective: Exterminate the Hive

Location: Seraphim Vault

Omnigul materializes inside the vault. After taking damage from Guardians, she will summon a wave of Thrall before quickly teleporting away into the room that overlooks the chamber. She will then summon a group of Hive Knights and Acolytes and a Watcher of Crota. The Watchers can flit around the room and, if not eliminated quickly, they will summon Vestiges around the chamber. The Vestiges are green circles on the ground that that deal massive damage to Guardians when stepped on.

Circle the Room

Circle around the room to keep the enemy in the center. This should provide plenty of time to eliminate them without worrying about getting flanked.

After the third wave of enemies, an Ogre that serves as the Might of Crota will spawn. Destroy it quickly before Omnigul sends more Hive Knights and Acolytes.

Maneuver around the room so the central pillar or other structure is between you and the Ogre to block its deadly beams. Acolytes will precede the arrival of Knights and Hallowed Knights who will do their best to flush you from cover. Once you've dispatched them, shift your focus to fighting the Might of Crota. Using a pillar for cover, shoot from each side, changing sides when the Ogre unleashes its attacks. Be on the lookout for the Vestiges, as they are still active during this portion of the fight. With the Might of Crota eliminated, the mission will end. Return to Eris in the Tower to complete the Siege of the Warmind Quest Step, granting you 2 rare engrams as well as 50 Reputation with Eris.

THE WAKENING

Level 26 Story / Ocean of Storms, Earth's Moon

Enemy Races: Hive, Fallen

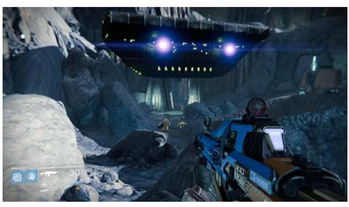
Suggested Damage Type: Solar

Rewards: Cyrptarch Engram, XP Bonus, Ascendent Materials (level 30 only)

Objective: Enter the Temple of Crota

Location: Archer's Line

Take the path to the right from Archer's Line into the Anchor of Light. From there, stay to the right to find the path to the Temple of Crota. Be ready for a fight, though, as a ship will warp in and spawn a couple of Wizards and a small squad of Acolytes.



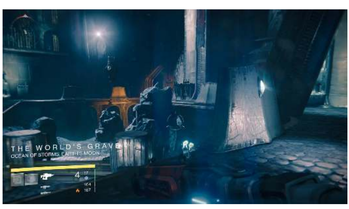
Dodging Damage

The Hive ship will send a volley of Void damage your way, so be ready to dodge it!

Before entering the Temple, make sure to stock up on ammo, as there are groups of enemies awaiting the Guardians' arrival. Move from cover to cover and line up critical hits to increase your odds of surviving the encounters inside.

Location: Temple of Crota

Once inside The World's Grave, the Guardians will be tasked with defeating a Shrieker, as well as group after group of Cursed Thrall.



Cursed Thrall

Killing a Cursed Thrall causes an explosion that can cause a chain reaction exploding other Cursed Thrall and damaging all nearby enemies.

The rest of The World's Grave is completely void of light; eventually, you will step into the Chamber of Night, which is a Darkness Zone so be ready for a battle. Vestige's litter the chamber, complicating the battle on your push to find Crota. A considerable number of Thrall will attack once you enter the second area in the Chamber Of Night, so stay behind the rocks and take out the Thrall before moving forward to fight the Acolytes.

Objective: Find The Wakening Ritual

Location: The Chamber of Night

When the mission objective appears, you'll already be fighting a few Hive Knights and their accompanying Acolytes. Pushing forward after that fight, a few Thrall will attack. Defeat them and prepare to fight a Hallowed Ogre. When the Ogre is spotted, retreat slightly down the stairs while maintaining a line of sight on the target. Use columns to get in position, preventing the Ogre from landing hits on you.

After the Ogre is defeated, all that's left is the final battle to stop the Wakening Ritual.

Objective: Destroy Crota's Soul

Location: The Chamber of Night

When the Guardians enter the final chamber, a Vestige will immediately be summoned in the "Hallway" from which you came. Dispose of the four Hive Knights before engaging the Wakers of Crota.

Using a Super or Heavy Weapon on the unsuspecting Wakers can eliminate one or two of them right away. A few Thralls and Cursed Thralls will spawn during this fight so stay on the move. Head towards the opposite side of the entrance into a small cave-like area to find cover.

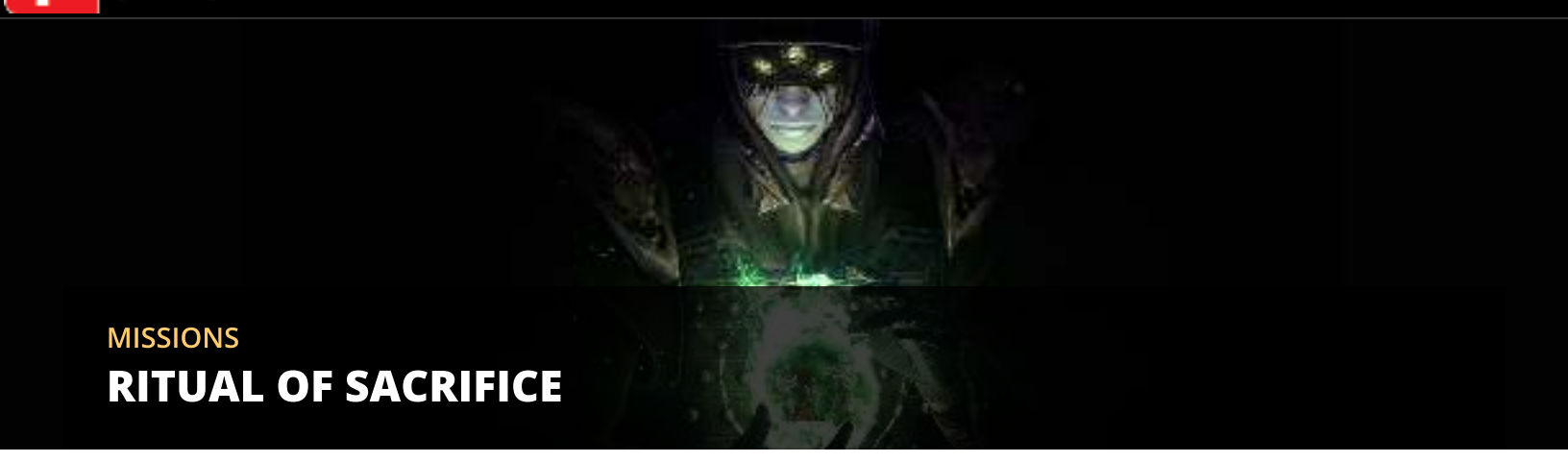
After defeating the fourth Waker of Crota, the crystal containing the Soul of Crota rises from the ground. Start hammering away on the Soul, but watch out for a spawn of enemies.

Soul of Crota

When using your Super or Rocket Launcher against Crota, be on the lookout for the rock fragments that orbit him. They will completely block the attack, resulting in no direct damage to Crota.

The Soul of Crota will attack with a slow moving green orb that deals heavy damage to the Guardians. Staying in the previously mentioned cave area will help negate this attack, as most of them will hit the roof.

Once the crystal is shattered, the Soul of Crota will be destroyed and peace will return to the Chamber of Night. Completion will grant rare engrams for a primary and special weapon. Return to Eris in the tower to complete The Wakening Quest Step and receive Murmur, a Fusion Rifle that can swap between Solar and Arc Damage.



RITUAL OF SACRIFICE

Level 26 Quest / Ocean of Storms, Earth's Moon

Enemy Races: Hive

Suggested Damage Type: Solar

Rewards: Cyrptarch Engram, XP Bonus,5 Motes of Light, 10 vanguard marks (level 30 only)

Objective: Enter the Temple of Crota

Location: Hellmouth

Head straight into the temple and fight off the low-level Hive enemies. Moving through The Gatehouse, the Guardians will encounter high-level enemies; fight through the Circle of Bones and into The World's Grave.

Objective: Summon the Forsaken

Location: The World's Grave

Entering The World's Grave puts the Guardians in the first Darkness Zone of this mission. Be prepared to turn around upon entering the first room of The World's Grave, as the enemies will be on the balcony behind the Guardians. Moving up the stairs, be prepared to fight a few Acolytes and Hive Knights.

Motion Tracker

Keep an eye on the Motion Tracker on the top left of the screen. It will alert you to the position of enemies, even those behind you.

Once the Guardians enter the room containing a cauldron, they all must stand on the cauldron to activate it.

After doing so, a massive wave of Thrall swarm the area. Grab a sword next to the cauldron, or enter one of the doorways to bottleneck the Thrall and eliminate them. If you head to a doorway, be advised that enemies will spawn from the doors behind the Guardian. During this fight, Vestiges will also spawn all around the room.

Heavy Damage

Be careful when fighting the Cursed Thralls, as they will explode causing heavy damage and detonation of other nearby Cursed Thralls.

Just as the wave of Thralls is defeated, several Acolytes will spawn. Dropping the sword in favor of a ranged weapon is key in this fight, as more swords can be found later in the center of the room. Clear out one corner and slowly work around the edge of the room eliminating Acolytes.

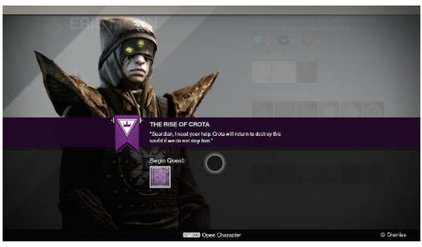
When the Acolytes are defeated, a wave of sword-bearing Knights will rush the Guardians. These Knights are immediately reinforced by Hallowed Knights carrying ranged weapons. Work around the room while defeating the melee focused Knights, engaging the ranged Knights when necessary.

"The Sullen Hearts will begin to crack and scream" will appear on the screen when the Hive Knights are defeated, signaling the spawn of a few Wizards. Try to engage the Wizards one at a time. Remember that you can use the swords to quickly change your aerial direction.

Once the Wizards are defeated, two Ogres will spawn. Push out and eliminate the first Ogre before the other one can enter the room. Killing the Ogres before they can group up is key to getting past this wave of enemies. If the Ogres form together, their accumulative damage will essentially "one-shot" a guardian. With the two Ogres defeated, the mission ends and the Urn of Sacrifice is ready to return to Xur in The Tower.

ERIS MORN QUESTS

DISCIPLES OF CROTA


THE RISE OF CROTA
"Guardian, I could use your help. Crota will return to destroy this world if we do not stop him."
Begin Quest:
Open Character
Dismiss

This quest chain focuses on missions in the Cosmodrome. Although you can do these encounters more than once, you will only gain additional Crota's Bane Reputation one time. Completing this quest chain will unlock the Will of Crota Strike and award a Class Item for the player's class.

The Extermination

Once this quest is accepted, the Guardian is tasked with eliminating 25 Hive Knights and Wizards and bring proof of their demise to Eris. Knight and Wizard kills are accumulative and can be accrued in any location. A good number of Knights can be found in the Rocketyard while doing Patrol missions on the Earth. Return to Eris after completing the quest to gain 50 Crota's Bane Reputation. Note that you can now participate in the Eyes, Hand and Heart of Crota bounties.

Eyes of Crota

Enter the Terrestrial Complex from the Forgotten Shore, working through the complex until an outdoor area is reached. Once there, eliminate the lower level enemies before locating a Servant of the Eyes (a high-powered Hive Knight). Kill the Servant and steal the treasure that it guards. A ship will immediately warp in dropping three Eyes of Crota (Hive Acolytes), a Servant of the Eyes, and some Chosen Thrall. Eliminating the the Eyes of Crota will fulfill the quest requirements, requiring the player to return to Eris for completion and granting 50 Crota's Bane Reputation.

Hand of Crota

Tucked away in a dark room of the Lunar Complex in the Cosmodrome, the Servant of the Hand is found hiding in a corner. Once the Servant of the Hand is disturbed, the room will begin to fill with Chosen and Cursed Thrall. The Hand of Crota (an Elite Knight) will spawn with all of the Thrall and attempt to attack the Guardian. Stay on the move to avoid being blown up by the Cursed Thrall and eliminate the Hand of Crota to fulfill the quest requirements. Once completed, return the Quest to Eris for 50 Crota's Bane Reputation.

Heart of Crota

The Heart of Crota can be found in the Refinery when patrolling the Earth. The Guardian will stumble upon a Servant of the Heart kneeling before a floating green orb. Once the Guardian attacks or approaches the servant, the Heart of Crota will be summoned with a swarm of Acolytes and Thrall. Once the Heart of Crota is eliminated, return to Eris in the Tower to complete the quest and gain 50 Crota's Bane Reputation.

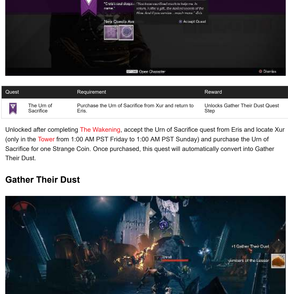
Will of Crota

Note that you must complete the Eyes, Hand and Heart of Crota bounties first before starting the Will of Crota. Kill Omnigul in the Will of Crota Strike. (View the Will of Crota strike walkthrough), then return to Eris for a Legendary Eris Class Item and 100 Crota's Bane Reputation.

ERIS MORN QUESTS

THE URN OF SACRIFICE

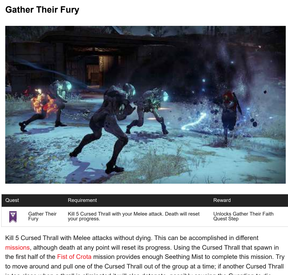
The Urn of Sacrifice


URN OF SACRIFICE
CROTA STILL H... Don't see the Urn of Sacrifice from Xûr.
"Crota's evil disapp... Then how can I find a hero to help me to
name. unlock Urn Light, the darkest corners of the
Crota, the Fallen worship... now."
Hide Quest(s) Also
R Accept Quest
Open Character
Stanley

Quest	Requirement	Reward
The Urn of Sacrifice	Purchase the Urn of Sacrifice from Xur and return to Eris.	Unlocks Gather Their Dust Quest Step

Unlocked after completing The Wakening, accept the Urn of Sacrifice quest from Eris and locate Xur (only in the Tower from 1:00 AM PST Friday to 1:00 AM PST Sunday) and purchase the Urn of Sacrifice for one Strange Coin. Once purchased, this quest will automatically convert into Gather Their Dust.

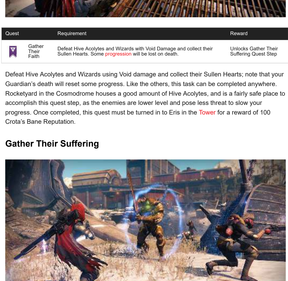
Gather Their Dust



Quest	Requirement	Reward
Gather Their Dust	Kill 25 Thrall with Solar damage from a Fusion Rifle and collect the Embers they drop.	Unlocks Gather Their Fury Quest Step

Kill 25 Thrall using Solar damage from a Fusion Rifle and collect the Embers of the Lesser they drop. This can be done in any activity and does not have to be completed all at once. The Guardian should be in possession of Murmur (earned from The Wakening), a Fusion Rifle that can deal Solar or Arc damage, the perfect weapon to complete Gather Their Dust and proceed to Gather Their Fury.

Gather Their Fury



Quest	Requirement	Reward
Gather Their Fury	Kill 5 Cursed Thrall with your Melee attack. Death will reset your progress.	Unlocks Gather Their Faith Quest Step

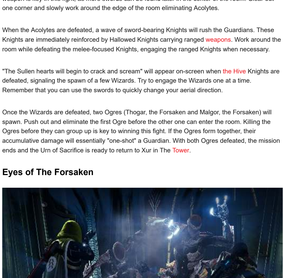
Kill 5 Cursed Thrall with Melee attacks without dying. This can be accomplished in different missions, although death at any point will reset its progress. Using the Cursed Thrall that spawn in the first half of the Fist of Crota mission provides enough Seething Mist to complete this mission. Try to move around and pull one of the Cursed Thrall out of the group at a time; if another Cursed Thrall is too close when a thrall is eliminated it will also detonate, possibly causing the Guardian to die. Now it's on to Gather Their Faith.

Gather Their Faith

Quest	Requirement	Reward
Gather Their Faith	Defeat Hive Acolytes and Wizards with Void Damage and collect their Sullen Hearts. Some progression will be lost on death.	Unlocks Gather Their Suffering Quest Step

Defeat Hive Acolytes and Wizards using Void damage and collect their Sullen Hearts; note that your Guardian's death will reset some progress. Like the others, this task can be completed anywhere. Rocketyard in the Cosmodrome houses a good amount of Hive Acolytes, and is a fairly safe place to accomplish this quest step, as the enemies are lower level and pose less threat to slow your progress. Once completed, this quest must be turned in to Eris in the Tower for a reward of 100 Crota's Bane Reputation.

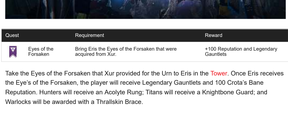
Gather Their Suffering

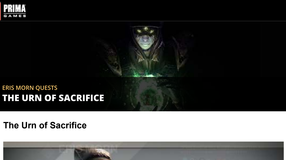


Quest	Requirement	Reward
Gather Their Suffering	Kill Urzok the Hated in Earth's Skywatch during Public Events.	Unlocks Ritual Of The Forsaken Quest Step

This quest step requires the player to fight Urzok the Hated, a powerful knight who is hard to solo. Urzok will only spawn during a public event or when you see the prompt "The enemy is moving against each other." A team of Guardians is recommended to take down Urzok as he will not spawn alone and his Arc shield regenerates extremely fast when he isn't taking damage, so equip your Guardian accordingly. There is no way to influence the spawn rate of Urzok, so waiting may take a while. Do not let this discourage you; instead, pass the time by searching for Chests and Spinmetal spawns. Note that Urzok will disappear if not defeated before the public event ends. When Urzok Spawns, head for high ground to help the Guardians avoid his attacks. However, he may venture into areas that cannot be seen, forcing the players down to his level to fight. Once eliminated, return the Urn to Eris to receive 100 Crota's Bane Reputation and unlock the next quest step.

Ritual of The Forsaken





Quest	Requirement	Reward
Gather Their Suffering	Kill Urzok the Hated in Earth's Skywatch during Public Events.	Unlocks Ritual Of The Forsaken Quest Step

Entering The World's Grave puts the Guardians in the first Darkness Zone of this mission. Be prepared to turn around upon entering the first room of The World's Grave, as the enemies will be on the balcony behind the Guardians. While moving up the stairs, be prepared to fight a few Acolytes and Hive Knights.

Once the Guardians enter the room containing the cauldron to activate it. After doing so, a massive wave of Thrall swarm the area. Grab a sword next to the cauldron, or enter one of the doorways to bottleneck the Thrall and eliminate them. If you head to a doorway, be advised that enemies will spawn from the doors behind the Guardian. During this fight, vestiges will also spawn in the room.

After the Thralls are defeated, several Acolytes will spawn. Dropping the sword in favor of a ranged weapon is key in this fight, as more swords can be found later in the center of the room. Clear out one corner and slowly work around the edge of the room eliminating Acolytes.

When the Acolytes are defeated, a wave of sword-bearing Knights will rush the Guardians. These Knights are immediately reinforced by Hallowed Knights carrying ranged weapons. Work around the room while defeating the melee-focused Knights, engaging the ranged Knights when necessary.

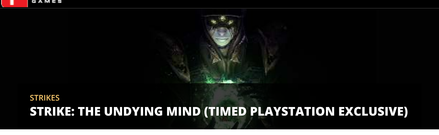
"The Sullen hearts will begin to crack and scream" will appear on-screen when the Hive Knights are defeated, signaling the spawn of a few Wizards. Try to engage the Wizards one at a time. Remember that you can use the swords to quickly change your aerial direction.

Once the Wizards are defeated, two Ogres (Thogar, the Forsaken and Malgor, the Forsaken) will spawn. Push out and eliminate the first Ogre before the other one can enter the room. Killing the Ogres before they can group up is key to winning this fight. If the Ogres form together, their accumulative damage will essentially "one-shot" a Guardian. With both Ogres defeated, the mission ends and the Urn of Sacrifice is ready to return to Xur in The Tower.

Eyes of The Forsaken

Quest	Requirement	Reward
Eyes of the Forsaken	Bring Eris the Eyes of the Forsaken that were acquired from Xur.	+100 Reputation and Legendary Gauntlets

Take the Eyes of the Forsaken that Xur provided for the Urn to Eris in the Tower. Once Eris receives the Eye's of the Forsaken, the player will receive Legendary Gauntlets and 100 Crota's Bane Reputation. Hunters will receive an Acolyte Rung; Titans will receive a Knightbone Guard; and Warlocks will be awarded with a Thrallskin Brace.



STRIKE: THE UNDYING MIND (LEVEL 20) (TIMED PLAYSTATION EXCLUSIVE)

Level 20 Strike / Meridian Bay, Mars

Enemy Races: Vex

Suggested Damage Type: Void

Reward: Armor Upgrade

Objective: Find The Undying Mind

Location: Meridian Bay, Mars

Moving forward up the steps, the Guardians will enter the first phase on the Strike against multiple waves of Goblins, Minotaurs and Hobgoblins.

Once the initial wave is defeated, a second wave of Vex enter the fray, this time with added Harpys and greater numbers. Eliminate the Vex from the entrance area, then use the entrance as cover to destroy the remaining enemies. The third wave spawns with two Hydras, as well as an onslaught of other Vex minions.

Vex Headshot

Shooting the Vex in the head area will not cause critical damage; in fact, it may cause them to be more aggressive!

Objective: Reach the Mind

Next, scavenge for some ammo before continuing on to The Undying Mind. Head directly across from the entrance and follow the hallways. After a brief run, you will be fighting Vex up a long staircase.

Objective: Eliminate the Precursors

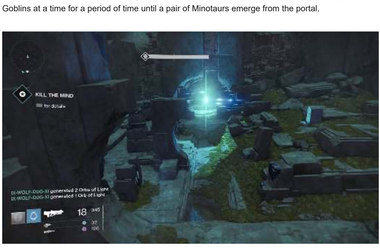
At the top of the staircase, the guardians will be confronted with a new type of Vex--the Precursor and Depraved Goblins and the Precursor Minotaur. These foes are stronger than the standard ones and more aggressive. Stay behind the center column for this fight to force the Vex to attack one by one, rather than facing them all at the same time.

After the initial wave is history, the hallway previously blocked by a forcefield will open, spawning more enemies as well as some Precursor Hobgoblins. Near the top of the steps, look out for a large Harpy called the Divisive Oculator. The Divisive Oculator can lob large orbs of energy, so take cover while eliminating lesser enemies before taking it on. Aim for the eye!

Objective: Fight to the Mind

With the Divisive Oculator defeated, the Guardians will no longer be in a Darkness Zone, but this doesn't last for long. Heading up towards the defeated Oculator's remains, defeat all the Vex and continue to the left towards the outside. After that short fight, the Vex will not appear until just before the final battle. Use this time to use an Ammo Synthesis, if needed.

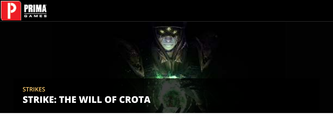
Just before contact with the Vex, the Guardians will enter a Darkness Zone. This battle takes place just outside the room that will soon contain The Undying Mind. Eliminate the Goblins and Minotaurs, then enter the next room. Once the portal on the far side of the room activates, it spawns two Goblins at a time for a period of time until a pair of Minotaurs emerge from the portal.



When the Minotaurs are defeated, the portal will begin to pulse and The Undying Mind will begin to summon. Spread out to different sides of the room, reload your weapons, and prepare to fight!

The Undying Mind has three rotating shields that cannot be disabled, but it also has three vulnerable openings. Have one Guardian attempt to inflict damage at all times. When the Mind appears, it will spawn with a small number of Goblins and Hobgoblins.

When The Undying Mind reaches approximately 50% health, a wave of Precursor Vex will be summoned on all sides of the room. This is a good time to use a Super to quickly dispatch the enemies and return focus to The Undying Mind. Another wave of Precursor Vex will materialize as The Undying Mind reaches about 20 to 25% health. Once the final wave of Vex is eliminated, all that stands between the Guardians and victory is The Undying Mind. Eliminate it and claim your reward!



STRIKE: THE WILL OF CROTA

Level 28 Strike / Old Russia, Earth

Enemy Races: Fallen, Hive

Suggested Damage Types: Arc, Solar

Reward: Armor Upgrade

Objective: Track Omnigul

Location: Forgotten Shore

Begin the search for Omnigul in the Forgotten Shores. Head up the road to the Terrestrial Complex and into the first Darkness Zone of the strike

Objective: Search the Terrestrial Complex

Location: Terrestrial Complex

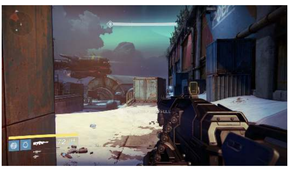
The Terrestrial Complex houses the first Darkness Zone for this strike. Upon entry, the Guardians get rushed by some Reaver Captains. Take them out quickly and try to stay near the top of the steps in the main combat room. Dregs, Vandals and additional Captains will lie in wait in the big room. Take out snipers that can hit you through the left and right doorways before the wave of Shanks descend upon you.

Following the wave of Shanks, a group of Stealth Vandals will start to attack. Utilize a Shotgun or Fusion Rifle to quickly dispose of them. Retreating down the staircase may force the enemy to retreat temporarily, granting the Guardians time to reload and use some Ammo Synthesis if necessary.

After eliminating a number of Fallen, Eris warns that the Hive are coming. Thrall will enter the big room, attacking the Fallen and rush your hiding place. Back away or retreat into the staircase and dispose of them before attempting to fight the remaining Hive and Fallen.

Objective: Eliminate the Fallen

The battle on the inside of the Terrestrial Complex may have ended, but the war still rages on outside. Take on the Fallen army just outside the Terrestrial Complex's walls. Do not extend too far in the beginning of the battle, as Dropships will unload more Fallen. Also, be on the lookout for Shanks sneaking into the room.



Vandal Sniper

When exiting towards the outside, check the ledge above you when stepping out. There will most likely be a Vandal waiting to snipe your Guardian from behind.

The last Dropship will release King Baron Physkin, as well as two Elder Captains. Eliminate them and the door will open to the next area and end the Darkness Zone.

Objective: Breach the Jovian Complex

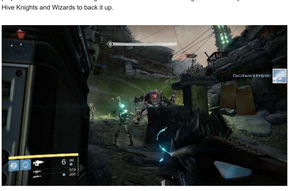
Location: Skywatch

Exit the Terrestrial Complex and head into Skywatch. This is a public area, so you may see a few weak enemies that should pose little threat. Look for the entrance inside of the glowing green and black spire to the right upon entering Skywatch. Follow the path down to a door with a keypad next to it. Use your Ghost to hack the keypad and gain entry into the Jovian Complex.

Objective: Find Omnigul

Location: Jovian Complex

Contact with Omnigul happens almost immediately as the Guardians enter the door. Do a little damage to scare off Omnigul and prepare for a fight! With a screeching sound, Omnigul will summon Thrall, Hallowed Knights and Cursed Thrall. Retreat towards the entrance if needed to prepare for another attack. An Ogre will shamble down the broken ground towards you with a few Hive Knights and Wizards to back it up.



Work your way up the incline, staying to the right and using cover to take out the remaining Hive Knights and Acolytes.

Objective: Kill Omnigul

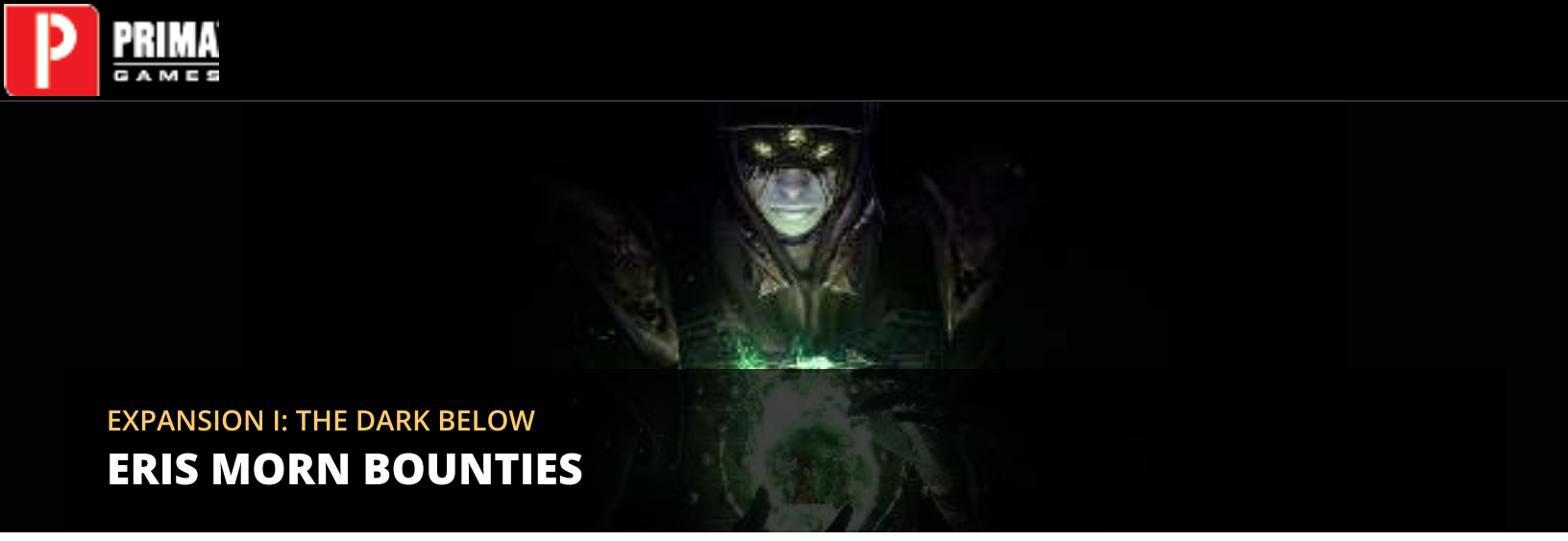
Once at the top of the incline, the objective changes to kill Omnigul. The room that the Guardians enter at the top of this hill is crucial in the battle to defeat her. There is only enemies that spawn in this room are Cursed or Hallowed Thrall.

Omnigul will stay on the platform in the center of the main room, so use this to your advantage by staying out of her line of sight while eliminating all of the lesser enemies. Once that is accomplished, take out her shields and unload your heavy weapons onto Omnigul.

Lower Omnigul's Shields

Omnigul's shield is Arc based, so use Arc-type weapons to lower it, then hammer away with your best weapons!

There are three waves of enemies after the initial rush that greets the Guardians when entering the last room of the Jovian Complex. Each wave starts with Omnigul's trademark screech. When you hear the screech, quickly move to a safe position to fight the spawning enemies. When Omnigul is eliminated, the strike ends and the Guardians are victorious!

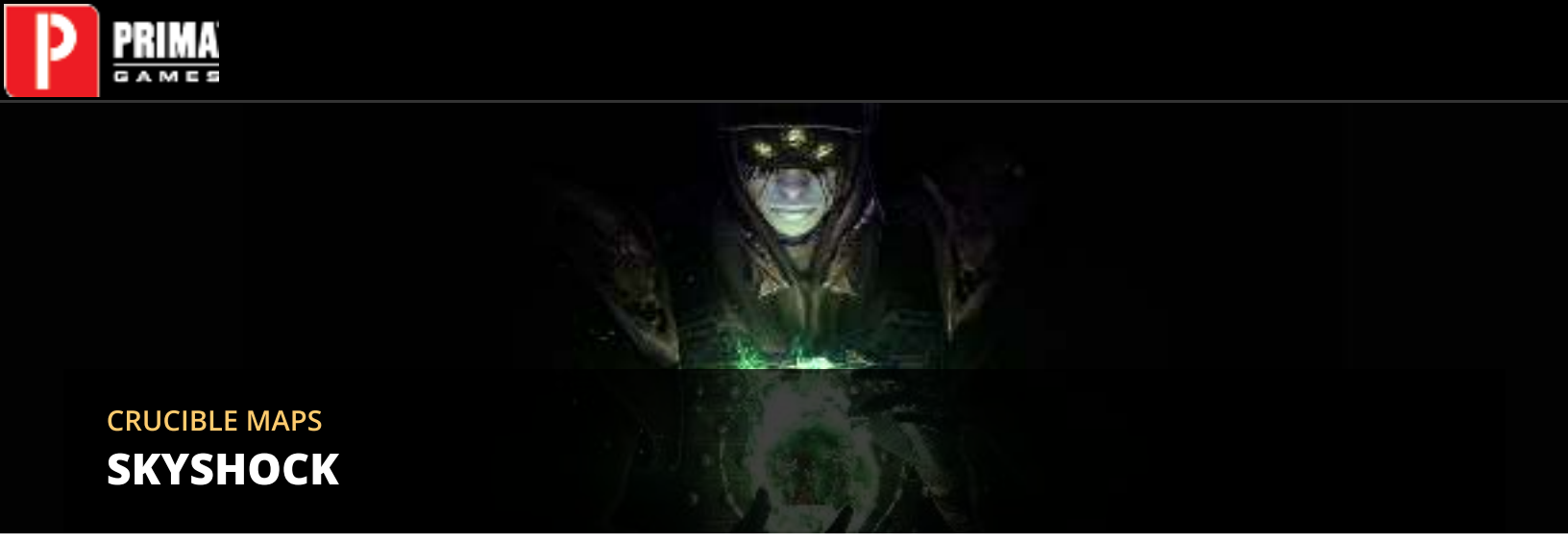


EXPANSION I: THE DARK BELOW

ERIS MORN BOUNTIES

Eris Morn Bounty List

Bounty		Requirement	Experience	Crota's Bane Reputation	Other Award
	Siege of the Warmind	Defend Rasputin in the "Siege of the Warmind" mission on Earth with the heroic modifier active. (**Only appears if the player previously completed in story mode.*)	+5000	+100	N/A
	Blades of Crota	Hunt the Knights who serve as the Blades of Crota on Earth and the Moon.	+3750	+75	N/A
	Out of Sight	Kill Hive from behind.	+3750	+75	N/A
	The Unseen*	While invisible, land the killing blow on a Hive Wizard with a Sniper Rifle. **requires Hunter Class*	+3750	+75	N/A
	The Cleansing	Kill any Majors of Ultras in a Nightfall Activity.	+5000	+100	3 motes of light
	Cut Them Down	Kill Hive using a Blade's sword on Earth.	+3750	+75	N/A
	Hard Fall	Rapidly kill 4 Hive with a heavy weapon 5 times. Death will reset your progress.	+3750	+75	Heavy Ammo Synthesis
	Husk Reaper	Collect Husk Shards by defeating Hive on any destination.	+3750	+75	N/A
	Sleight of Hand*	Defeat Hive with precision damage using your throwing knife. **requires Hunter Class*	+3750	+75	N/A
	Let's Dance	Rapidly kill 7 enemies with melee.	+3750	+75	N/A
	The Will of Crota	Exterminate Omnigul and her spawn in The Will of Crota Strike on Earth. **Only appears if the player previously completed in story mode.*	+5000	+100	Quest bounty
	Atonement	Rapidly kill 3 Hive with a special weapon 5 times. Death will reset your progress.	+3750	+75	Special Ammo Synthesis
	Chase the Dark*	Kill Hive with Axion Bolt **requires Warlock Class*	+3750	+75	N/A
	Shine A Light	Use Solar or Arc ability to kill any enemy.	+3750	+75	N/A
	Deadshot Collector	Kill Hive with precision damage while under the effect of a Black Wax Idol.	+3750	+75	N/A
	Cut to the Quick*	Rapidly kill 10 Hive with Arc Blade. **requires Hunter Class*	+3750	+75	N/A
	Fist of Crota*	Find and Eliminate Sardon in "The Fist of Crota" mission on Earth with the Heroic modifier active. **Only appears if previously completed in the story.*	+5000	+100	N/A
	The Wakening*	Stop the Hive from summoning Crota's soul in "The Wakening" on the Moon with the Heroic modifier active. **Only appears if previously completed in the story.*	+5000	+100	N/A
	Bonebreaker*	Find and Eliminate Sardon in "The Fist of Crota" mission on Earth with the Heroic modifier active. **requires Titan Class.*	+3750	+75	N/A
	Boneshaker*	Kill 7 Hive at once with Fist of Havoc. **requires Titan Class*	+3750	+75	N/A
	The Cleansing	Kill Hive Majors or Ultras in a Nightfall activity.	+5000	+100	N/A
	Purifier*	Kill 7 Hive at once with Nova Bomb. **requires Warlock Class*	+3750	+75	N/A
	One of Us	Kill Hive Majors or Ultras with any of Eris' class items equipped.	+3750	+75	N/A
	Light the Dark*	Rapidly kill 10 Hive with Grenade Abilities while under the ffect of Radiance. **requires Warlock Class*	+3750	+75	N/A
	Illuminator	Generate 50 orbs of Light.	+3750	+75	N/A
	Unwavering Light	Complete 5 Bounties in a single day.	+3750	+75	N/A



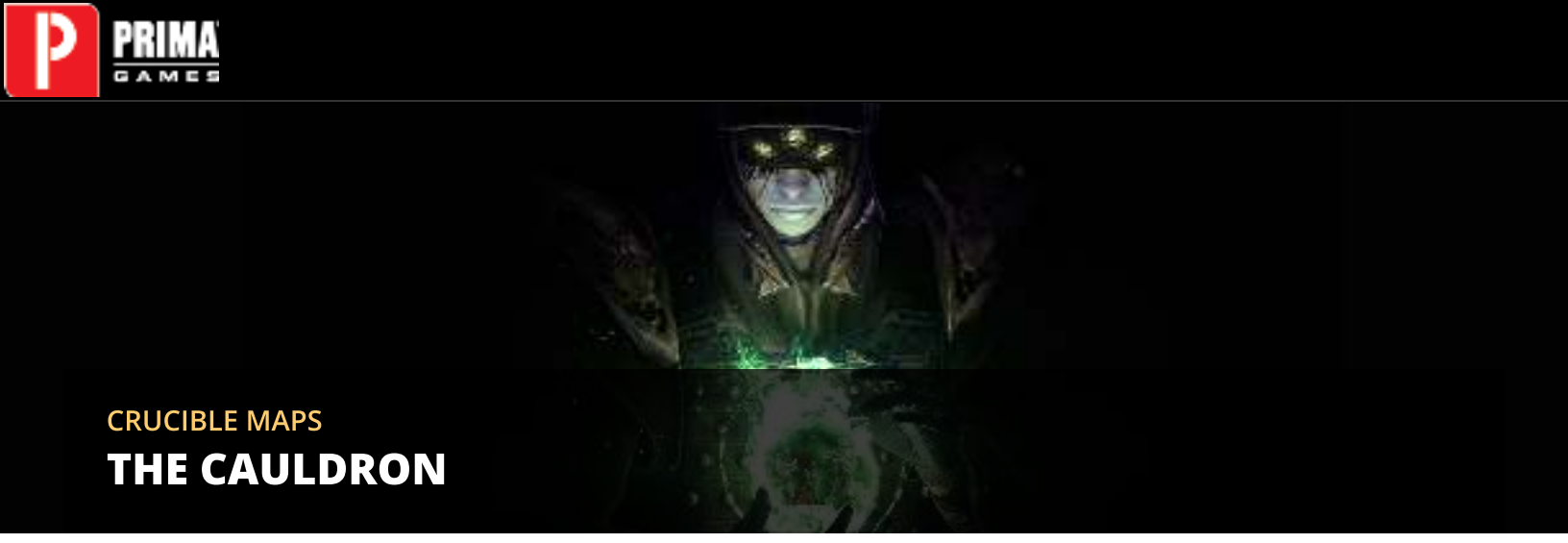
CRUCIBLE MAPS

SKYSHOCK

Skyshock is arguably the biggest map in PvP. It has wide open plains, close quarters building combat, and some planes rusting away near the edge of the map, making this map a tactical nightmare if you lack a team.

At the start of the match decide if you want to rush and attempt to flank the enemy, or focus on getting a tactical advantage for the middle objective fight. The middle objective is located far to the side of the map, opposite the downed planes, drawing most of the combat to the center buildings. With all the fight happening near the objectives, try weaving through the planes to conceal your movement while working towards the enemies' flank.

There are three heavy ammo spawns on this map, all of them next to the 3 control objectives, if the enemies are taking an objective, grab ammo and rush in. Taking the ammo will not only increase your odds of clearing the objective, but it will also take the majority of it away from the enemies that are capturing the objectives. Experienced players will benefit from using a Scout Rifle for the outdoor areas and a shotgun or fusion rifle for indoors. Newer players may wants to use a Sniper Rifle to get one shot kills from a distance, then use an Auto Rifle when moving into close quarters areas.



CRUCIBLE MAPS

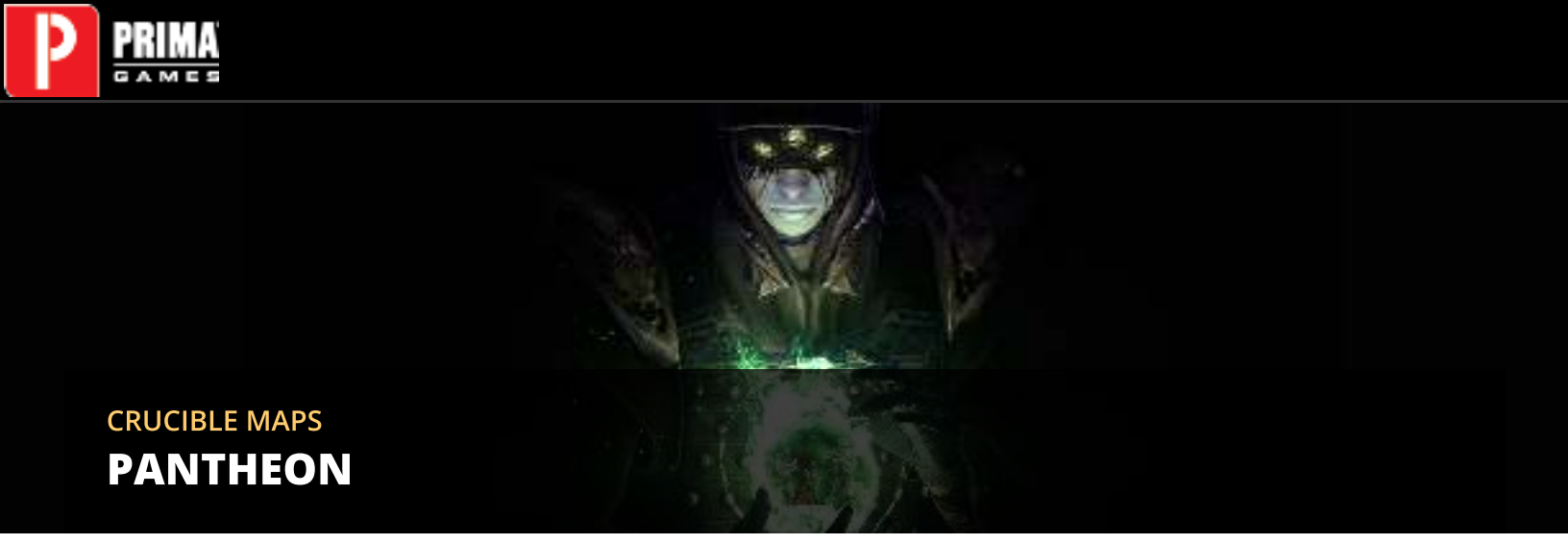
THE CAULDRON

Cauldron has two main parts, a circular center area, and an outdoor area that provide most of the action for thegame.

The two spawns start on opposing sides of the map, each with its own significant color scheme of orange or green. Use this to quickly communicate and plan your teams attack. Most outdoor areas are a good spot for snipers, however, due to the “C” shape of this outdoor area, snipers are less effective.

Using a Fusion Rifle if best for this map as most engagements will take place from a medium range across the main room or on the outside edge of the map. Shotguns have limited effectiveness in this game due to the fact that most areas open up quickly, putting the shotgun user at a range disadvantage.

If the enemy is holding the middle area, consider shifting the focus to the outside, then push in the middle door and eliminate the enemies from behind. The doors heading into the main middle area will only open when enemies are near, use that as a sign to warn you of theirpresence.



CRUCIBLE MAPS

PANTHEON

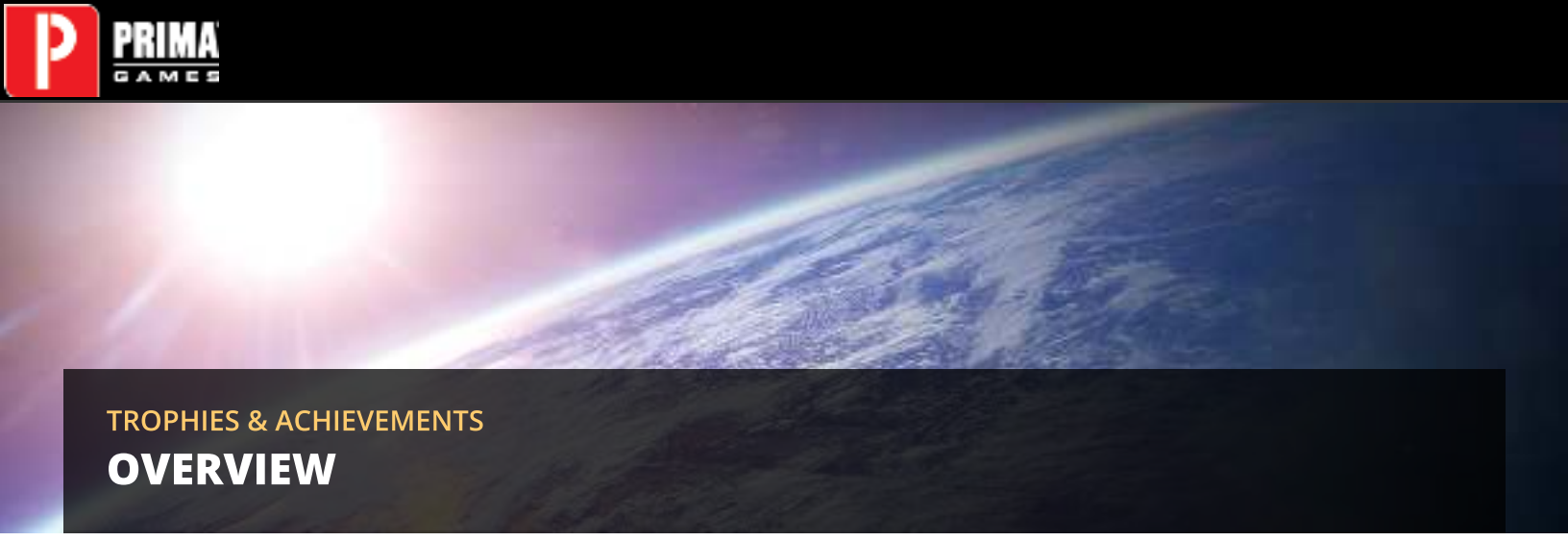
Pantheon is a small map with lots of tight corners and an outdoor flanking route. Moving as a team is a must as it is easy for the enemy to flank in the maze of hallways.

Most of the action takes place in the middle of the map, be prepared for an exchange of grenades at the beginning of the map. Try to push around the inside of the map early game. Using the hallways may take a bit of extra time to cross the map compared to the outside path. The outer path is much more exposed from multiple angles, making it a high risk area when running solo.

Although the outdoor area is exposed, it is good to maintain control of it as there is a heavy ammo spawn, and easy access to the center of the map. This is the only area that a sniper rifle is effective, however most players tend to stay out of this area so carrying a sniper rifle will put you at a disadvantage in the other map areas.

Before entering on of the larger map areas, or nearing the end of a hallway, consider crouching to help catch the enemy off guard and prevent “corner campers”.

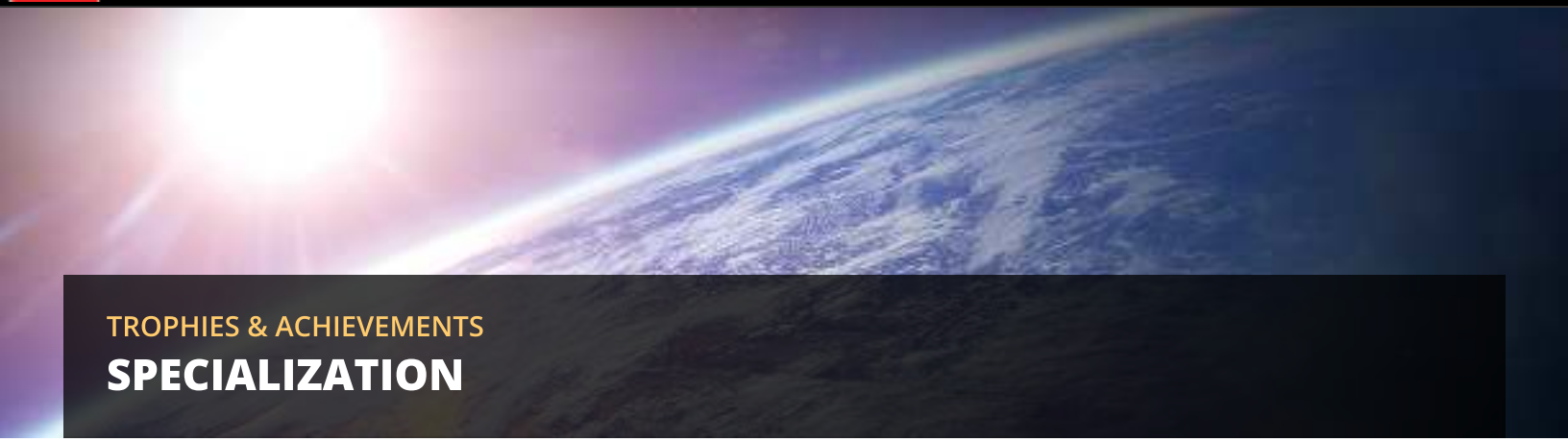
To help call out the enemy position there are a few landmarks that can be spotted on the map. Half of the map has orange lighting effects, while the other side has a light blue lighting effect. The waterfall and large glowing cube signify the middle of the map, so once you determine which side you are on communicate that to your team and work towards the enemy spawns.



TROPHIES & ACHIEVEMENTS

OVERVIEW

The Trophies and Achievements for Destiny are as varied as the game. You can earn several by upgrading your character through specialization and gear, while you acquire most through the many cooperative and competitive gameplay modes. Feats that require completing an objective a predetermined number of times are tracked as you make progress toward them. As you hit milestones, a message lets you know where you stand.



TROPHIES & ACHIEVEMENTS

SPECIALIZATION

Unlock every node of one subclass for Hunter, Titan, and Warlock to earn three awards. This requires having one of each class on the three character slots, and then earning enough experience to complete one of their specializations. There are several groups of three nodes, where only one can be selected at a time—this gives you some freedom to customize your character to your liking. Once you have the option of two grenade abilities, switch between the two to earn Change of Heart.

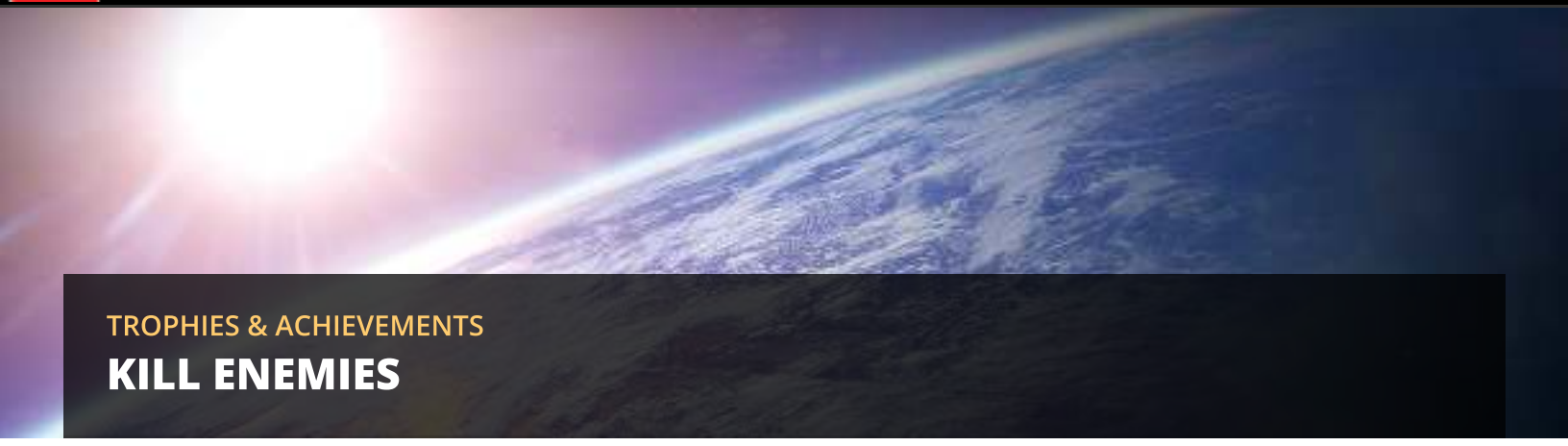
Emblem	Name	Description	Trophy	Gamer Score
	Change of Heart	Reverse a decision you made in an upgrade grid.	Bronze	20
	Hunter Mastery	Fully upgrade a Hunter subclass.	Silver	30
	Titan Mastery	Fully upgrade a Titan subclass.	Silver	30
	Warlock Mastery	Fully upgrade a Warlock subclass.	Silver	30

TROPHIES & ACHIEVEMENTS

GEAR AND VEHICLES

Inspector is the easiest Trophy/Achievement to acquire. Simply look at another player and press in on the Right Stick to inspect their Guardian. You earn the rest of these by collecting gear and acquiring vehicles. Turn in any Engrams you find to the Cryptarch and dismantle equipment you no longer want. Legendary and Exotic gear are the rarest finds in the game, so expect to spend many hours completing these feats.

Emblem	Name	Description	Trophy	Gamer Score
	Inspector	Inspect another player.	Bronze	20
	Decryptologist	Decrypt 25 Engrams.	Bronze	20
	Use of Weapons	Dismantle 50 pieces of armor or weapons.	Bronze	20
	Fully Weaponized	Fully upgrade a Legendary weapon.	Silver	30
	Packing Heat	Fully upgrade an Exotic weapon.	Silver	30
	The Life Exotic	Obtain and equip a piece of Exotic gear.	Silver	20
	Suited for War	Have all armor and weapon slots equipped with Legendary or Exotic gear.	Silver	30
	Ship Rite	Rebuild a jumpship.	Bronze	20
	A New Steed	Obtain and equip a new personal vehicle.	Bronze	20



TROPHIES & ACHIEVEMENTS

KILL ENEMIES

Complete the following feats by killing enemies throughout the Story and Strike missions. Precision kills are required for the first four. Find a tight group of foes and use a strong explosive attack on them to get Blink of an Eye. Simply take down Riksis during the Restoration mission on Earth to get Dragon Slayer.

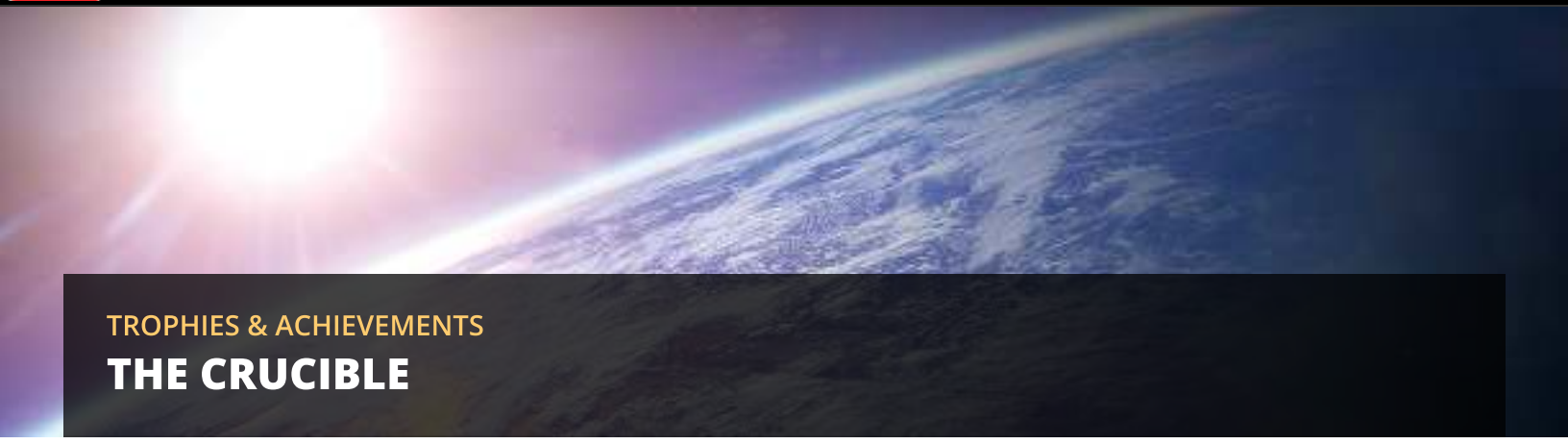
Emblem	Name	Description	Trophy	Gamer Score
	Bane of the Kell	Kill 25 Fallen with precision shots in 1 mission without dying.	Bronze	20
	Bane of the Dead	Kill 25 Hive with precision shots in 1 mission without dying.	Bronze	20
	Bane of the Machines	Kill 25 Vex with precision shots in 1 mission without dying.	Bronze	20
	Bane of the Emperor	Kill 25 Cabal with precision shots in 1 mission without dying.	Bronze	20
	Blink of an Eye	Kill 5 enemies in 3 seconds.	Bronze	20
	Dragon Slayer	Kill a champion of the Dark.	Bronze	20

TROPHIES & ACHIEVEMENTS

STRIKES AND RAID

Completing Strikes and the Raid with clan members and without dying earns you several accomplishments. The Raid is difficult enough by itself, but you need to complete it on Hard difficulty to earn Epic Raider. Find a good team to help with these. You earn A Friend Indeed by resurrecting five fallen Guardians in any mode.

Emblem	Name	Description	Trophy	Gamer Score
	A Friend Indeed	Resurrect 5 fallen players.	Bronze	20
	Rising Vanguard	Complete a Strike.	Bronze	20
	Strength of the Pack	Complete a Strike with a full Fireteam consisting of only your clan members.	Bronze	20
	Flawless Striker	Complete a Strike without anyone in your Fireteam dying.	Bronze	20
	Raider	Complete a Raid.	Silver	30
	Raiding Party	Complete a Raid with a full Fireteam consisting of only your clan members.	Silver	30
	Epic Raider	Complete a Raid on Hard difficulty.	Gold	45
	Flawless Raider	Complete a Raid without anyone in your Fireteam dying.	Gold	65



TROPHIES & ACHIEVEMENTS

THE CRUCIBLE

Jump into PvP and throw down with your fellow Guardians to earn the following awards. Complete Crucible bounties to build your reputation and reach the maximum weekly score.

Emblem	Name	Description	Trophy	Gamer Score
	Ask Questions Later	Earn a first strike kill in PvP.	Bronze	20
	Notorious	Earn the maximum weekly Crucible score.	Silver	30
	Finders Keepers	Assist in capturing 50 capture points in Control.	Bronze	20
	Relic Hunter	Assist in capturing 20 capture points in Salvage.	Bronze	20
	Excessive Force	Register 25 kills in PvP with heavy weapons.	Bronze	20
	Hunter Killer	Kill 100 Hunters in PvP.	Bronze	20
	Giant Slayer	Kill 100 Titans in PvP.	Bronze	20
	Witch Hunt	Kill 100 Warlocks in PvP.	Bronze	20
	Triple Play	Kill a Hunter, Titan, and Warlock without dying in a PvP match.	Silver	30